Class IX

SOCIAL SCIENCE

Class IX

SOCIAL SCIENCE

SOCIAL SCIENCE

Class IX

BOARD OF SECONDARY EDUCATION, RAJASTHAN, AJMER

Text Book Writing Committee

Book - Social Science

Class - IX

Translators

Convener

Dr. Dev Kothari
Rtd. Professor
Varad Poonam
8-9 Navlok Colony
Navratan Complex, Udaipur

Members

O. P. Kabra
Ex. Lecturer
64-65 Ashok Vihar, Near Jain Mandir
Street, Hiranmagri, Sec.-3 , Udaipur

Miss Aaisha Banu
Principal
Govt. Sr. Sec. School,
Balwanta, Ajmer

Bhagwan Singh Shekhawat
Lecturer
Govt. Sr. Secondary School
Vaishalinagar, Ajmer

Narendra Singh Rathore
Senior Teacher
Govt. Subhash Secondary School
Ganj, Ajmer

Text Book Syllabus Committee

Book - Social Science

Class - IX

Convener :

Dr. Dev Kothari
Rtd. Professor
Varad Poonam
8-9 Navlok Colony
Navratan Complex, Udaipur

Members :

Dr. Kamal Singh Kothari
Associate Professor, History
Govt. College, Churu

Dr. Chandra Shekhar Kachhawa
Associate Professor, History
Govt. Doongar Collage, Bikaner

Dr. Kashmir Bhatt
Assistant Professor, Geography
Govt. M.L.V. College, Bhilwara

Dr. Manoj Awasthi
Associate Professor, Political Science
S.P.C. Govt. Collage, Ajmer

Shri Prahlad Sharma
D.E.O. (Secondary Education)
Jaipur

Shri Durga Shankar Pareek
Dy. Inspector
Sanskrit Education, Topdara, Ajmer

Shri Dev Lal Gochar
Education Cell Officer
Distt. Education Officer
Elementry Education, Kota

Shri Jhabar Singh
Lecturer, Economics
Govt. Sn. Secondary School, Sanganer, Jaipur

Shri Mahendra Singh choudhary
Senior Teacher
Govt. Secondary School, Bajhera, Bharatpur

Shri Bhom Singh Chundawat
Senior Teacher
Govt. Sr. Secondary School. Fatehnagar, Udaipur

Preface

This book 'Social Science' class IX has been written on the basis of latest curriculum approved by the Board of Secondary Education Rajasthan, Ajmer. This book contains all that information related to History, Political Science, Geography, Economics, and the subject of commerce which will help grow general knowledge of students. This book will guide the students in the selection of the subjects according to their choice. It is hoped that the contents of the book will help the students grow the level of understanding of various subjects of social study.

In this book such kind of content has been incorporated as disaster management, road safety and legal awareness, so that students can carry out the responsibility of future responsible citizen. Besides it, the content of the book will be helpful to the society, administration and government and in addition to that students will also be able to develop their personality.

The convener and the authors are thankful to those learned persons from whose creations the book has been ornamented and they also express their deep gratitude towards the curriculum framing committee.

Convener

Social Science Syllabus

Time 3.15 Hours **Maximum Marks 100**

Chapter number	Chapter name	Marks Weight
	Part-First	**50**
	History and Civics	
1.	World`s Ancient Civilizations	5
2.	World`s leading philosophies	5
3.	Ancient India and the world	5
4.	Social reforms and religious renaissance in India	5
5.	Major events of the world	5
6.	Nationality in India	5
7.	The Prides of Rajasthan	5
8.	Political development in India	5
9.	The Constitution of India	5
10.	Local self government	5
11.	Foreign relations	5
	Part-Second	**50**
	Geography, Economics and Commerce etc.	
12.	Physiography of India	5
13.	Rivers and lakes of India	5
14.	Climate of India	5
15.	Natural vegetation and Soils of India	5
16.	Development of Economics	5
17.	Agriculture in Indian Economy	5
18.	Business and Commercial Activities	5
19.	Book Keeping	5
20.	Disaster Management	5
21.	Road Safety	2
22.	Legal Awareness	3

Social Science
Part-I
History and civics

Marks

1. **Chapter -1 World's Ancient Civilization** **05**
   (i) Indus Valley civilization, civilizations of Egypt, China and Greek.
   (ii) Old civilizations of Rajasthan- Ahad, KaliBanga, Sunari, Chandravati
2. **Chapter- 2 World's leading philosophies** **04**
   (i) Vedic, Buddhist, Jain, Islam, Christian, Parsian philosophies

3. Chapter- 3 Ancient India and the World **04**

(i) Greater India Trade, Commerce, Industry, Financial Institution,
(ii) Art, Literature, Science, Maths, Astrology, Ayurveda,

4. Chapter- 4 Social Reformation and Religious renaissance in India **04**

(i) Shaiv, Vaishnav, Sufi
(ii) Brahma Samaj, Arya Samaj, Ramakrishna Mission, Anuvrat Movemnet

5. Chapter- 5 Major Events of the world **05**

(i) Revolution of France, Russia
(ii) West Colonial imperialistic expansion
(iii) First and Second World War
(iv) United Nations, Establishment, Arab Spring Cause and Effects

6. Chapter- 6 Nationality in India **04**

(i) Emergence and development (from Past to Present)
(ii) Freedom struggle of 1857 special reference to Rajasthan

7. Chapter- 7 Prides of Rajasthan **04**

(i) Generator : Bappa Rawal, Prithvi Raj Chauhan, Veer Durgadas, Maharana Sanga, Maldev, Maharaja Surajmal, Amrita Devi, Govind Guru, Jan Nayika Mira, Pannadhay, Kali Bai.

(ii) Folk Deities, Gogaji, Tejaji,, Ramdev, Pabuji, Devnarayan
(iii) Social Reformer: Dadu, Jasnath, Acharya Bhikshu, Jambhoji, Ramcharan ji, Saint Pipaji

8. Chapter- 8 Political Development in India **04**

(i) Pre- independence Status
(ii) Integration of Princely States (Jammu Kashmir, Hyderabad, Goa, Pondicherry)
(iii) Reconstitution of States: 26 Jan-1950 to Present (Capital, Population, Language, Field, Industry etc. with latest dates)

9. Chapter- 9 Constitution Of India **06**

(i) Constitution building, Features
(ii) Fundamental rights and Duties
(iii) Directive principles of state policy

10. Chapter- 10 Local Self Government **05**

(i) Ancient republican system
(ii) Development of Local Self- government in Rajasthan
(iii) Gram Sabha, Gram Panchayat, Panchayat Samiti , Zila Prishad
(iv) Municipal corporation, City Council, Municipal Chhawani Board (with the latest datas of Rajasthan)

11. Chapter- 11 Foreign Relations **05**

(i) Ideal of Indian Foreign Policy (From Past to Present)

Peaceful Coexistence, Non-alignment, Imperialism and Role of India in Apartheid Policy

(ii) Terrorism, Nuclear Policy, SAARC (Dakhshesh)

(iii) Indian Policy in Special reference in the countries of Central Asia

Part-II Geography, Economics and Commerce etc.

12. Chapter- 12 Physiography of India **05**

(i) Introduction

(ii) Physical Territory of India

(iii) Physical Region of Rajasthan

13. Chapter- 13 Rivers and Lakes of India **05**

(i) Rivers of North India

(ii) Rivers of South India

(iii) Internal Flow (Saraswati)

(iv) Major Lakes of India

(v) Rivers and Lakes of Rajasthan.

14. Chapter- 14 Climate of India **05**

(i) Factors Affecting Climate

(ii) Major Seasons

(iii) Monsoon and Rain Distribution

(iv) Climate of Rajasthan, Rain and Seasons

15. Chapter- 15 Natural Vegetation and Soils of India **05**

(i) Natural Vegetation

(ii) Wild Creatures, Conservation of wild life (National Park, Biosphere, Reserve Sanctuary)

(iii) Soils

(iv) Natural Vegetation and Soils of Rajasthan

16. Chapter- 16 Development of Economics **05**

(i) Meaning, Economic Activities, Non-economic Activities, Means of Income (Earth, Wages, Capital, and Labour)

(ii) Types of Economy

(iii) Indian economic thoughts

17. Chapter- 17 Agriculture in Indian Economy **05**

(i) Importance, New trends, Green revolution, White revolution and their effects

(ii) Problems and Solution of Agriculture

18. Chapter- 18 Business and Types of Commercial and activities **05**

(i) Business concept, types, Manufacturing

(ii) Commercial, Trade, Banking, Insurance, Transport and communication

(iii) Information technology and service area

19.	**Chapter- 19 Pustpalan (Ledger Account)** (i) Historical background, Meaning, Features (ii) Mahajani Systems and Double entry system, principles and Stages	**05**
20.	**Chapter- 20 Disasters Management** (i) Natural disasters and Management (ii) Man-made disaster and Management	**05**
21.	**Chapter- 21 Road Safety** Road Safety	**02**
22.	**Chapter- 22 Legal Awareness** Legal Awareness	**03**

Prescribed Book :

Social Science – Board of Secondary Education Rajasthan, Ajmer

CONTENTS

S.No.	Chapter	Page No.
1.	Ancient civilizations of the world	1-12
2.	Major Philosophies of the World	13-24
3.	Ancient India and the world	23-32
4.	Social Reforms and Religious Renaissance	33-42
5.	Major Events of the World	43-60
6.	Nationality in India	61-68
7.	The Pride of Rajasthan	69-90
8.	Political Development in India	91-99
9.	The Constitution of India	100-109
10.	Local Self Government	110-122
11.	Foreign Relations	123-130
12.	Physiography of India	131-143
13.	Rivers and Lakes of India	144-152
14.	Climate of India	153-166
15.	Natural Vegetation and Soils of India	167-180
16.	Economics and Economy	181-186
17.	Agriculture In Indian Economy	187-199
18.	Business and commercial activities	200-214
19.	Book Keeping	215-222
20.	Disasters and Management	223-232
21.	National Security and Heroic Tradition	233-240
22.	Road Safety: Education	241-244
23.	Legal Awareness	245-246

Chapter-1

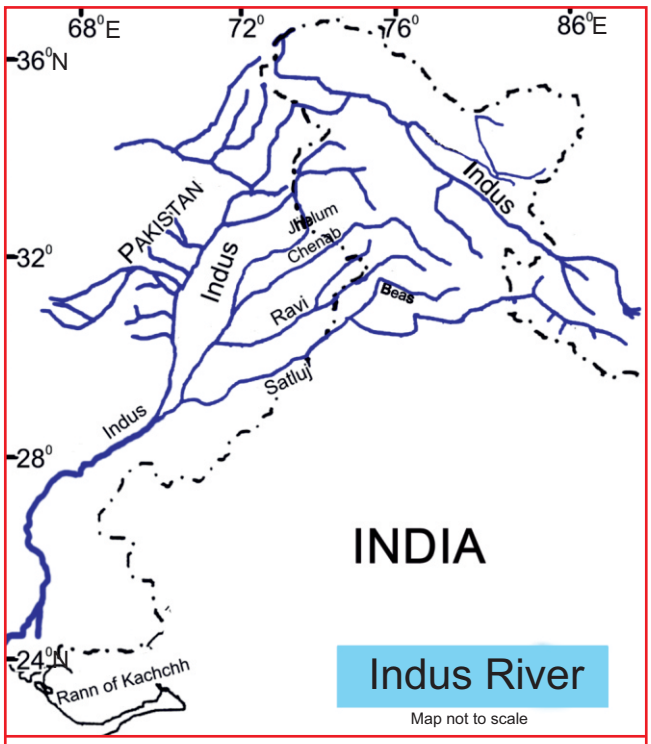
Ancient civilizations of the world

Modern civilized life is the result of long and perpetual development. There is a lot of development and downfall of many civilzations in the world since the elementary presene of humanity. The history of these civilizations is the history of humanity as well, thats why the study of all these ancient civilizations developed in the world is essential for the advanced social life. India has been a rich civilized country for thousands of years before. Mesopotamia, Egypt, China, Greece are the prominent civilization besides India.

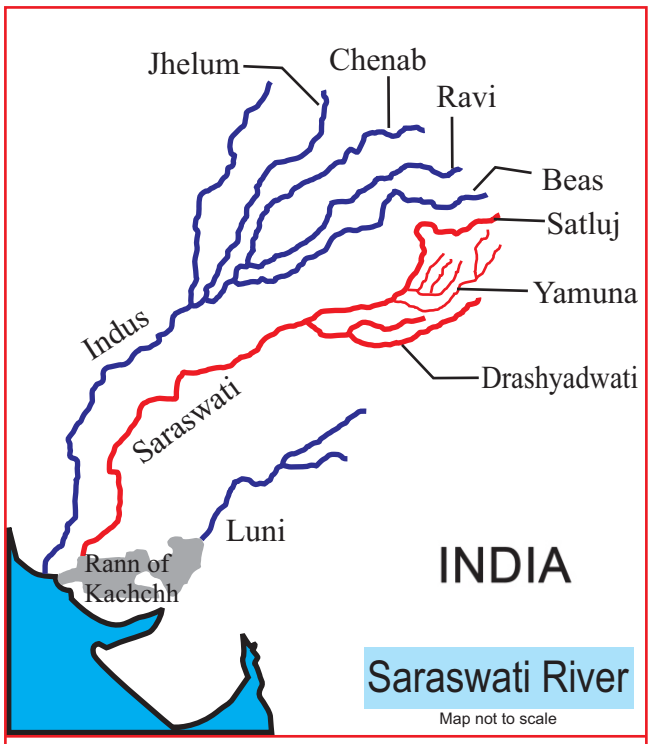
Indus Valley Civilization :

India is one of the oldest nations in the world. Our nation, posseses the very ancient history culture and civilization. On the basis of archelogical proofs the archaeologist has discovered that human groups wandering on the banks of India's prime rivers Saraswati, Indhus and its tributaries had started colonising five to seven thousand years before and they had developed an advanced culture and civilization residing over there.

The origin of river Indus is considered from Sengekhabab, Singhmukh glacier at the north of Kailash Mansarovar in Tibet. The origin of river Saraswati is perceived from the Shivalik Hills. It enters in the plains near Adibadri from here and enters in Nohar Rajasthan from Sirsa (Hariyana) while



Map 1 : Indus River



Map 2 : Saraswati River

flowing in South west along the Kurukshetra, Gagghar and Hakada, from here it fell in the ocean near Prabhas pattan by entering in to Rann of Kachh through Bikaner and Jaiselmer.

At present the river Saraswati is not in existence physically. It has become extinct due to geological changes. Some scholors consider Saraswati river as an imagery because it does not exist today, but by the help of geosatelite pictures.

The Human civilization developed on the extensive landmass at the banks of Indus and Saraswati rivers with their tributaries is known as "Indus Civilization". It was a totally unknown fact about this developed civilization whether India too has been the prominent center of an ancient civilization.

This civilization was enraped under the sand dunes. What was the time period of this civilization compressed under sand dunes. When had it been on its zenith and at which time period it was expired, Scientist have no dispute on this fact, but roughly it is considered that this Indus civilization had taken birth a long time ago and at 3950 BC it was well developed. After that in between 3250 to 2750 BC it had been reached at its zenith. Then after 2750 BC the termination started for this civilization and finally upto 1500 BC it was vanished totally.

Excavation of Indus Civilization :

In 1921 Roy Bahadur Dayaram Sahni discovered an archaelogical mound at the left bank of Ravi river, flowing near the Haddapa town of Montegomary district of Punjab in undivided India. In 1922 following Ram Bahadur Dayaram Sahni an another Indian archaeologist Rakhaldas Benarji discovered the new Mound named ''Mohan jo daro'' at the eastern bank of Indus river which flowed in the Larkana district of Sindh of undivided India. Mohan jo daro has the meaning ''The mound of dead.'' By the excavation of this mound ramnants of a well managed city which was settled and ruined nine times, were came out. In the proccess of discovery Aurlestine retraced eleven archaeological places in the dry path of Hakra river, which were the extension of India's extinct river Saraswati, are now in former Bahavalpur state of present Pakistan. 1500 places have been discovered so far related to Indus civilization, out of it 900 places are situated in India and 600 are in Pakistan. After the partition of 1947 the big archaeological sites related to Indus civilization like Hadappa, Mohan-jo-daro, Gunveriewala etc went under the teritory of Pakistan. Kalibanga, Rakhigadhi, Dholavira, Lothal, Raypur are some of the prominent archaedogical places remained at Indian side.

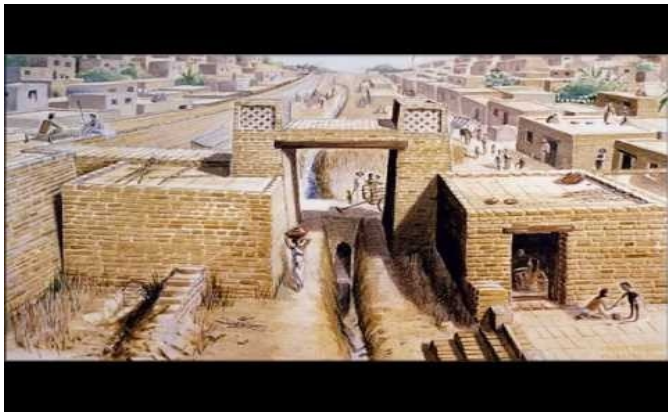
The experts and historians of archaeology in independent India started the work after 1947 in a new mode.

Many places related to Indus valley and before it, and the Saraswati Drishdwati river valley which was developed parallel to it were discovered in Punjab, Hariyana Rajasthan and Gujrat. In 1953 Amalanand Ghosh discovered at least 25 archaeolgical sites in the Bikaner division of Rajasthan in which Kalibanga is most prominent. Sindhu civilization relics are found in Ropad, Bada, Sanddhol in Punjab, Rangpur, Hothal, Rojdi in Gujrat, Rakhigdhi, Banwali, Meetathal (in Hariyana) etc.

Features of Indus Civilization

A. Town Planning : In all the relics which reveal the advanced and developed level of Sindhu civilization. The most important relics are related to the cities of this civilization. In these city based relics the Hadappa and Mohan Zo-daro (both in Pakistan), Kalibanga (Rajasthan), Rakhigadhi (Haryana), Dholavira, Lothal (Gujrat) are most important. According to these remnants it is revealed that Indians had built their cities, buildings and dwellings in cities with a planning. Their knowledge of architecture can be compared with modern civil

engineering.



Scene of Town planning

(i) Town Planning of Cities : Due to well managed road plan in the Indus civilization, a system was produced automatically in the town planning, and the towns were emerged in a well planned manner by deviding them in to many blocks and streets. Generally an open courtyard was kept amidst every house and rooms were built around that courtyard. Space for keeping water pots, toilets, bathrooms etc were distinctly constructed in almost all houses.

(ii) Road System : The roads related to the towns of Sindhu civilization were constructed straight and parallel from East to West North to South. The roads crossed each other at a rectangle where crossroad were formed, the large main roads of towns were generally ten meters wide. The small roads kept the width of 5 meters and the streets, had the width of 1 to 2 meters. There were dustbins available at the various places of roads to collect the garbage.

(iii) Cleanliness, Drainage and Sanitation Management of the town : A proper sranitation system is found in the Sindhu civilization towns and its buildings. It can be assumed easily by observing the different type of drains, gutters (made on streets roads) and main roads of towns. So an adequate system for drainage of sewer was found. Dustbins were put on the roads at regular interwals to cellect the rubbish generated by daily usage. In the sanitation system, what we see in the personal buildings and towns of the Indus civilization makes it clear that the standrad of living of Indians at that period was at a high level Those people pay more importance to facilities and utilities than pump andshow and were very consious towards heath.

(iv) Special Features : In the archaeolgical excavation of many towns of this civilization we find debris of special type of compositions & buildings. It includes safety wall around the citadel, melting places for metals, furnaces, oblation/ sacrificial Altar. Large bath rooms and huge granaries are important amongst them. These are the evidences of higher standard of living and scientific discipline of this civilization.

(B) Social life : A lot of articles are found at the excavation sites related to this civilization show that this society was comprised of people of different vocations in that period. An individual would contribute by performing proper job according to his ability to maintain the social order. Religious duties, administration, medical services safety and production were the important functions to perform.

(C) Family Planning : It was amply clear by observing the managment of buildings and houses of Indus civilization that the main unit of their society was the family. Due to so many female idols found in excavation it is considered that in this period that woman possessed a dignified place in the society. There was no use of 'Parda' (Veil on the face) by woman folk. Women put on Silver and Copper made ornaments. These people wore cotton fabrics. They had the knowledge of weapons too. Music, dance, hunting were the primary means of recreation. The people of Indus civilization used wheat, barley, rice, milk and Meat in their food.

(D) Economic life

(i) Animal Husbandry and Agriculture- There are remnants of ploughed fields found in Kalibanga. So it seems that people of this civilization perform agriculture too. According to the pictures engraved upon various things it is revealed that the people of

Indus civilization perform the farming of wheat, barley, rice, sesame etc. They also grew fruit plants, animal husbandry was the second most interested profession of the people of Indus civilization, in domestic animals the cow family had the more importance.

(ii) Trade and Commerce - The people of this civilization were dextrous in not only making tools and utensils of copper and bronze but in the art of making earthen cookwares and pots also. In the excavation of Chanhu-daro and Kalibanga the 'weights of measures' of many kinds were found. In Mohan-Jo-Daro a broken scale made up of oyster is also found. These relics are the indicatives of there advanced & developed knowledge related to trade & mathermatics. The remains of a dock found in the excavation of Lothal (Gujrat) show that it was a major center of sea trade. It had kept the close commercial ties with far off countries like Egypt, Sumer, Syria etc. The similarity amongst the excaveted items of India and Mesopotamia is a confirmation of trade between these nations Due to use of an advanced system of trade this civilization is called as the trade dominated civilization.

(E) Religious life : The people of Indus civilization were the devotees of natural powers mainly and by assuming divine powers in them. They worshiped the Earth, Peepal, Neem, water, the sun and fire etc. It is made clear by the analysis of idols and amulets found there that the customs of immolation and witch craft like superstition were also prevalent. Five blusterade found from lothal Banawali and Rakhigadi allude that Yajna and Fire worshipping were also in vogue there. Sundia was burnt to worship the idols. And worship of ''Mother Idol'' and ''Shiva'' was also performed, funeral was performed by incremation and entombing.

(F) Termination of civilization : The Indus script has not been decoded so far correctly. It is assumed that this civilization was declined due to natural reasons. Where the towns prepared with toil by the dwellers of that age, became ruins by the geographical changes but the elements of civilization and cuture developed in that past could not be destroyed. Indirect effects of those elements kept prevaling in the forth coming ages in the Indian folks. In the making of initial styles of Indian culture the Indus civilizations has made an important contribution.

The civilization of Mesopotamia :

Mesopotamia is a word of greek language which means the land between two rivers. The modern name stands for it is Irak. This state is irrigated by rivers '' Dazla'' and ''Farat''. Mesopatamia's crescentic structure and the quality of land bestowed it the nickname of ''fertile crescent'' The southern part of this state was called ''Sumer''. In ancient times it was an epicenter of the Mesopatamian civilization. The North Eastern part of Sumer was called 'Babul' (Beby-lone) and Akkad', and the Northern high land was called ''Asyeria''.

The Rise & Fall of Mesopotamian States :

In the timelapse Sumerian people came from nortern hilly regions dwelt in the Mesopotamia and they evolved an extremely prosperous civilization. Sumerian people established a government of civil state. Ur, Lagas, Erek & Aridu were the famous civil states. Sagaun I who came from Akkad approximately in 2500 B.C. had won over Sumerian people. He established a strong Kingdom by dissolving the states of Sumer and Akkad. But almost in 2100 B.C these Akkadian people also got defeated. A new Sami Kingdom was evolved in Babul or (Beby-lone). Bebylon city now became the capital of this new kingdom. The legendary king Hammurabi of Beby lonia established a tenacious kingdom by stopping the various inter civil state fightings and also by imposing a unique rule of law in all over the state. The civilization of Beby-lonia was also based on Summerian civilization. Following them Asyrian people founded their kingom almost in 1100 to 612 BC) in Mesopotamia. Asyrian people installed a large

empire by winning the states of Syria. Philisteen Phinishia etc. Following them the caldian people defeated Asyrians and formed an another powerfal Beby-lonian empire. (612 BC to 539 BC) But they had to be defeated by the Parasis in 539 BC. The civilizations of Sumeria Beby Lonia. Asyria and coldia are known altogether as the civilization of Mesopotamia.

Characteristics of Mesopotamia Civilization :

(i) Law Code of Hmmurabi : The king of Bebylone Hummurabi had made a law book for his subjects which is considered as the most ancient law book available at present time. The emperor got it engraved on a rock of 8 feet height. Tit for tat and blood for blood was the theory of punishment enacted by Hamurabi.

(ii) Social life of Mesopotamia : The king was considered as the represantative of god on the earth After the king and his family the second place was possessed by the Purohit class, which was possibly the rulers previous to the repute of monarchi. Traders, landlords and shopkeepers stood at the middle. The position of slaves was at the rock bottom. Because of contrious wars the army held an important place in the society.

(iii) Economic life

(a) Agriculture and Animal Husbandry : The chief profession of the people of this civilization was agricuture. The farmers tilled the land with ploughs and sowed seeds by the help of a funnel. For the irrigation of fields they collected the flood water of rivers in big dams by the canals. They used cattle for tilling by ploughs and they had also started the reproduction of animals by improving the breeds.

(b) Trade and Business : Mesopotamian civilization was basicaly a professional one there, the temple of God was not only a relgious place there but was a professional center also. Here the banking system developed at first. Mesopotamia had the trade relations with Indus civilisation. A lot of items of Indus civilisation were found in the excavation of 'UR' town of Mesopotamia.

(iv) Relgious Beliefs : Mesopotamian people kept faith in many deities. Every town had its own gaurdian deity, They Called him Jigurat which means the Hill of heaven. The UR town was amongst the biggest towns of Mesopotamia. In UR town the Jigurat was constructed upon an artificial hill by bricks. The Jigurat of UR had three floors and its height was more than 20 meters. Mesopotamian people kept more intrest in present world than the world after death that is called paradise. Their attention was focussed on the feasible problems of the life in the present world. There priests alsp kept themselves indulged in their businesses.

(v) Scientific Knowledge : The achievements of Mesopotamian people in the field of science were important. In the field of Astronomy they had made lot of a progress. They had calculated the correct timings of sunrise, sunset, moonrise and moonset too. They calculated the time taken in a day and night and devided the whole day in 24 hours. The division of a minute in 60 seconds and an hour of 60 minutes was only given by them primarly. They started deviding the circle of geometry in to 360 degree. Thus the residents of Mesopotamia were aware of the traditions of maths and science.

(vi) Architecture : The artists of Mesopotamia had discovered the vault or arch. The vault was a great discovery of archetechture because it can bear a great load and also looked attractive.

(vii) Cunieform Script : The first script of Mesopotamia was developed in Sumer to maintain their records, Sumerian businessmen developed the art of writing by making the sign of spikes. It is called cuneiform or keelakshar

Egyptian civilization :

The civilization of Egypt was evolved around the valley of the river ''Neil''. African people considered the Neil river sacred as 'Ganga', because in the ancient times the reason for the prosperity of

Egypt has been credited to the river Neil.

The civilisation of Egypt was very pristine but no fair amount of indications are availabe to confirm this fact. We can find the knowledge about the political history of Egypt since 3400 BC authentically.

The ruler named Mineers mounted the political frame of Egypt in 3400 BC. This civilisation was formed by the people of Ethiopee, Noobi and Neeliam races . The Pyramid Age, feudal age and Imperialistic age are specially remarkable in the history of Egyptian civilization. The Pyramid age was most prestigious in all.

Major charactraistics of Egyptiaan civilization :

(i) Social Life in Egypt : The rulers of Egypt were called Farao and their authority on the subjects was despotic. People considered them the representatives of God. In higher class there were feudal lords and priests, in middle class the traders businessmen and in the lower class farmers and slaves possessed the social level. The people of higher class put on the ornaments. Music, dance aerobatics, animals, Gambling etc. were their means of recreation. The edifices of feudal lords were graced by tables decorated with elephant tusks, chairs , costly curtains and the carpets.

(ii) Economic life

(A) Agriculture and Animal Husbandry : The prime profession of the people of Egypt was farming: Barley, onion, millet & cotton were produced mainly Egypt was called as the store house in ancient world because annually three crops were grown there goats, donkeys dogs, cows, camels and pigs were the pet animals.

(B) Trade and Industry : There were skilled artist available in Egypt in the field of metal, timber, clay, glass, paper and cloths. Egyptians had to send for the other metals except copper from outside, they were familiar to the works of engraving on timber and the drawing work on the glass too. Exchange was the means of commerce. They kept trade relations with Arab and Ithiopia.

(iii) Religous activities : Ra (The Sun) Osarim (The river Neil) and Cin (The moon) were the prinicpal deities of Egyptian people

There deities were the emblems of natural powers. In the elementry period of civilization Egyptians were polytheistic but the farao named Akhanatan in the imperialistic age gave the importance to the ideology of monotheism and started worshipping the sun.

(iv) Knowledge of Science : Egyptian people had made thier own calanedar on the basis of the stars and the sun, and also had calcualted 360 day in an year. They had invented the Solarium too. They had also made the paper from the pepiras tree after evolving their own aphabet.

(v) Pyramides : Egyptian people believed that the soul dwells in the body still after the death. So they started anointing a special oil on the dead body. By the effect of this anointment the deadbody wouldn't deeay for years. Mausoleums were made for the safety of the corpses which were called pyramids by them. The dead body kept inside the Pyramids was called Mummy.

Pyramid of Giza

According to ancient architecture the pyramid of Giza is the optimal artifact. amongst the pyramids of Egypt. This pyramid of Giza has a height of 481 feet. High having a width of 755 feet, 23 lakh pieces of stones weighing two and half tones each are kept in it. A huge sculpture of Nrisingh which is called sphinx is made out side of it. The pyramids are the

evidences of knowledge of Mathematics and Geomatry by Egyption people. A lot of pyramids still exist in the Egypt.

Chinese Civilization

The ancient chinese civilisation was developed in the valley of Hwang Ho and Chanziang (Yangtickyang) rivers. Chinese script was graphical in the enitial stage Gradually it evolved its own alphabet. The Mangol people gave birth to this civilisation & helped in its development. By the scientific analysis of available historical facts the orderly political history of China starts from the ruler named Phoosi in 2852 BC. The premier dynasties of rulers of china include shang. Chau, Han, Suie, Tang and the Shung dynasties.

Features of chinese civilization

(i) Social life : The primitive society of China was devided into the classes of Mandarin, farmer, Artisan, trader and soldier. The people recruited in the army were very poor and not hard working and also considered having an undesirable character in the society. H.A. Devis says that, the China among the oldest civilisations is the only country which remained united for the sake of peace, and the existence of army rule there was considered derogatory. The practice of joint family was present in chinese civilisation. The oldest person of the family was considered as the chief. Special attention was given to the morality in life. Ladies would not get any prestigious place in the society. The pardah (veil) and Talaq (divorce) were also prevalent.

(ii) Economic life :

(a) Agriculture and Animal Husbandry : Farming was the prime vocation of chinese people the farming of rice and tea was done abundantly. Irrigation was done by canals. Sheep, pigs, cows, oxen, dogs etc were the domestic animals reared up.

(b) Trade and Industry : Producing silk and weaving of cloths were the chief works seen under the chihese handicraft & industry. Making pots by china clay was an onther important industry. The merchandise of salt, fish, lome (fur) cotton and silk cloths was prominant Chinese people had traded in many commodities with ancient Babilone, Egypt and India.

(iii) Religious life : Chinese were the worshippers of nature they worshiped the Sun, the space, the earth, rain etc. In china the king was considered as the son of the supreme being. They believed in the withcraft and sacrifice too In the timelaps the religous ideology of chinese people got influenced by the reformist monotheism Confusious and sempiternal sprits by laotsey and by the Buddhism consistently.

(iv) Knowledge and science : Sciene and knowledge flourished very well in ancient China, paper, printing machine, Ink, Gun powder , Drawing and compass were discovered first of all in china only. Confusius and laotsey were the great thinkers of China. Liyo was the famous poet there.

(v) The Great Wall of China : The wall of china is the wold fame specimen of chinese architecture.

Great wall of China

It was built by chinese ruler Shihvangwati in the defence of continious attacks by Hoonas. This wall keeps the hight and width of 20 feet each, and the length is 1800 miles. The bastion like towers are built on it at regular intervals.

Greek civilization :

Greece was the first Europian nation regarding to the deveolpment of civilisation.

According to the opinion of Historians the tribal Maonium people were made slaves after their defeat. They built a great civilisation and culture with the help of their premordial thinking and dedication. It is estimated that Greek civilisation was born in 1500 BC. Due to different Mountains and moats the peopleof ancient Greece could not establish a united nation ever. Two city states Athens and Sparta were leading among the various city states in whole Greece. Sparta was controlled by military and Athens was ruled under democracy. Rest of the city states were ruled as Athens or followed the Sparta.

Major Features of Greek Civilization :

(i) Life in Sparta : The city state of Sparta always received constant threats and attacks by neighbouring countries. Thats why the army ruled there. The head of the state of Sparta was lecentious. Licomer's was the first manager and propounder of Sparta. To keep people of Sparta is strict discipline. The children were taught to face the hardships. The weaker kids were killed after throwing down from the hilltop of Tesitus.

Sparta had definitely got the success in making brave crusaders and citizens with blind folded obedience but the contribution in philosophy, literature art and science was negligible.

(ii) Life in Athens : The city state of Athens was totally defferent from the city state of Sparta. Athens held the democratic regime. The king possessed a lot of respect. Megistrate Drako prepared a collection of laws written in 621 BC His laws were made in the defence of the intrest of higher classes.

After that Clysthenise got the roots of democracy fixed in Athens.

The ambitious emperor 'Dara' of Iran attacked on Unan after winning Greece. Athens and Iranians fought a war in the plain of Mrathon. Greece got the victory in the struggle and Greeks developed their civilisation independently.

(iii) Pericles Period : Pericles was the great democratic leader of Greece (Athens/Parachlize) made the democracy of Athens comprehensive and strong with his reforms. It was his opinion that all people must exercise the right to justice. Art, Literature, Music and philosopy flourished under his rule. Tragedy, comedy and music programmes were organised at a large scale in Athens. World famous creation of Homer, 'Iliad and oddessy' belonged to this period. Mathematics, Astronomy and philoshopy were taught in his time. In this same period the world famous philospher Sukrat stressed upon the development of character and knowledge. Philosophers like Plato and Aristotle also belonged to this same period. The temple of goddess Athina is a unique examle of architecture. Herodtes and Theusideidyes were the great historiane of this age. Pythogoras and Hippocratis were the famous mathematicians of this period as well Regarding to all these achivements the age of Paracles is considered as the golden age of the history of Greece According to professor David the age of paraclize was considered not only the golden age of history of Greece alone but also of the world history as well.

Ancient civilzations of Rajasthan :

(i) Kalibanga : In north Rajasthan 25 sites are discovered at the bank of river Gagghar related to the Sindus Saraswati civilization where the Kalibanga is one of them. This site was colonised 4500 years before at the Saraswati (Gagghar) Bank in the district of Hanumangarh. Two mounds of town planning were found is Kalibanga chiefly. One of them is Eastern Mound where evidence about the general township are found. Fortication is found in the western mound which contains the safety barricado around it.

Both mounds were surrounded by a barricado too. In Kalibanga the evidences of ploughed field are found which is oldest in the world. The walls were made by bricks and these bricks were fixed together by clay. So the walls became strong and long lasting. Individual and public drains and earthen ware as dustbins were the parts of extraordinary sanitary system of the town.

The river Gagghar flows here at present, which was known as saraswati in ancient times The

evidences of fire channels are found here as religious proofs. The sun burnt bricks were possibly used here. The script engraved upon earthenpots and seals found here is called the Saindhava Script, which is not be decoded so far. Wooden and bricked water channels are found for the drainage in Kalibanga. Many tools made up of copper too are the identification of economic progress here. The town planning of Kalibanga is considered in accordance with the town planning of Sindhu valley. Three mousoleums showing gratitude and religious sentiments to the deceased by the people of Kalibanga have been found there. Draught and changes in the course of river are considered as the reasons for the declination of this rich civilisation.

(ii) Aahar : Sistuated in present Udaipur district Aahar was the prime center of Bronze Age culture of south west Rajasthan. This culture was developed in to the valley of Banas and Beduch. It is 5000 years old. It is revealed through various levels of exacavation that, so many times the colonies here settled and desolated from their early settlement till the 18 century. It seems that, because of the availability of copper around Alwar the people of this area kept making equipments from this metal and Aahar got the good luck of being the center of bronze age. Almost 500 meter long mound of Dhulkot was the cardinal center of Aahar civilisation, Axes made of copper, tools made by stones, semi precious stone items etc. are found here. Arangment for keeping open sapce or gali was found here under the town planning. 6 to 4 big hearths found in a house highlights the system of joint family or the system of common kitchen. The art of making earthen ware in that age is introduced fairly by the help of pots and broken peices found during excavation at Ahar.

The generality and extenssion of Aahar culture is certified by the archiological calsites of Gillund Balathal, Bagour and of the near by places. Its contact was believed with Navada toli, Najada, Airen, Kaytha and kachh in north Gujarat means that this civilisation held the contact with the civilisation old enough to 4000 years ago too, which is also revealed by the size, production and skill of similarity in black and red earthenware found there.

(iii) Balathal : 42 km from the east of Udaipur there populated a village named Untala which is presently namded as Vallabhnagar. This is a block headquarter. The village Balathal is situated north to it. There present a mound north to this village. The excavtion work of this mound was completed in the guidance of Dr.V.S. Shinde. Dr. R.K. Mohounti and Dr. Dev Kothari of institute of Rajasthan studies Rajsthan Viddyapeeth university Udaipur with Lalit Pandey and Dr. Jivan Kharakwal and in the leader ship of Dr. V.N. Mishra of Deccan college Pune in 1993. The excavation work here lasted till 7 years. Here we can see the culture of copper stone age. In reality this place is an enlargement of Aahar. This civilisations had come into effect upto 3200BC.

Features of Balathal :

(a) Copper Equipments : The dwellers of Balathal used and weapons made by copper. They used Axe, knife, chisel, razor and the pane of arrow. Stone made tools are also found here. Availability of cooper to the locals was the reason for considered this.

Remains of Balathal houses

(b) Clay Objects : The unique sized bright earthen pots found in Balathal are of two kinds, first having rough walls and the other having the smooth walls. Pots with black, red and dark red in colours are found with bright linciment inside and outside. White pictures are found on the black and Red utensits generally. Special kinds of pots were hot only made here, but also exported to other areas too .

(c) Construction work : At the middle of the mound at Balathal a huge fort like structure was discovered, having 3.15 meter high watts with a width of 5 meters. This fort was spread in to 5600 square meter area. It was built of stone and clay. Structure of a big building with eleven rooms is also excavated there which was believed to be made in the second phase the copper stone period. In the civilisation of Balathal the existence of the relies of iron melting furnaces are similar to the relics of copper melting furnace found in copper stone.

The people of Aahar civilisation were the first farmer rancher and the manufacture of earthen ware and metal instruments of south Rajasthan.

(iv) Chandrawati :

At the foot hills of Mount Abu in Sirohi district near Abu Road, the ruins of an ancient city named Chandrawati are found. This ancient city was populated at the right bank of Sevani river and was spread in over 50 hectare area. It was discovred in 1822 by colonel Jamus Todd. In 1980 the survey of this ancient city with the related area was done by the archaeological department of Maharaja Siyaji Rao Gayakwad University Baroda.

Chandrawati

In 2013 and 2014 the archaeological excavation of Chandrawati was done in the leadership of Dr. Jeevan Kharkawal and in the joint guidance of Institute of Rajsthan studies (literatue institue) Janardan Roy Nagar Vidyapeeth University Udaipur and Rajasthan state archaeological department Jaipur. In the western part of the fort there lie the residues of a huge fort which is spread in almost over 26 bighas. There the relics of 33 temple groups are found in the middle part which arerelated to Hindu and Jain religions. Most temples are situated over a plinth made of bricks at a high level. A big number of sculpute (idols) recovered from here are reserved in the museum of Mount Abu. Regarding to architectural prespective they can be put amongst the period of 8th to 10th centuary. During the excavation two castles are discovered at the eastern part of the city, one of them is in 14 quadrat form and is spread in the 60 x 60 meter square area. The safety wall is given robustness by the making rectangular of and rounded towers into it. Remains of three huge buildings are too found in the excavation work.

A large number of charred seeds and a part of flour grinder were also discovered in a room. The sculptures of houses and human beings, goods of iron and clay are found in the buildings. All houses and floors were made of bricks.

An inscription of Samvat 1325 was also found at the entry gate of the fort. The inscription of chandrawati and ''Tamra Patra'' are reserved in the Mount Abu museum It was the capital of Parmara rulers which had seen august kings like Yashodhaval and Dhara varsh. Devada Rajputs occupied this place after defeating the Parmaras in fourteenth century and the city was ruined due to the attacks in 1415 century. Under the above mention residues there are relics of an another ancient township also found. It has been made clear by the excavation that, according to the availabe archaelogical residues the exisence of this township can be considered sixth to ninth century. Stone age apparatus between rock paintings too are found in the area of Chandravati. So it is obvious that human society was present in Chandravati since the stone age. In the mideaval age this region had been a center of trade also.

Important Points :

1. The advanced Indus civilisation was developed amongst Indus, its tributaries and Saraswati river area.
2. The major sites of Indus civilisation Hadappa, Mohan-zo-Daro, Bahavalpur are now situated in Pakistan and Klibanga, Rakhigadhi, Dholaveera, Ranopur, Lothal are in India.
3. Indus civilisation was famous for town planning.
4. Mohan jo Daro literaly means mound of the dead.
5. Mesopotamia is a Greek lingual word that means the land between two rivers.
6. The temples (religious places) of Mesopatmia are called Jigurat.
7. Civilization of Egypt was evolved out of Nile river valley. The pyramid of Giza is the civilisation of egypt is the excellenet work of anceint archetectrue.
8. Chinese civilization was developed into the valleyof Chang Jiyang (Yangtee) and Hwangho river.
9. The wall of China is the excellent prototype of ancient archetecture.
10. Sukarat, Aristolte and Plato are the famous philosphers of Greece.
11. Aahar civilization was famous with the name of Tamravati Nagari or Dhoolkot. This was settled at the bank of Bedach (Ahar river)
12. Before Kalibang (Proofs of Pre Hadappan and Post Hadappan civilisation are found.
13. The civilization of Balathal is situated at the Vallabhnagar Tehsil of Udaipur district.
14. Chandrawati civilization is situated at Mount Abu near Abu road.

Objective Type Questions :

1. Which archaeological site of Indus civilization is in Pakistan -
   (a) Hadappa (b) Raypur
   (c) Kalibanga (d) Dholaveera
2. In which river valley the Egypt civilization is situated -
   (a) Nile (b) Indus
   (c) Hwangho (d) Dazla and Farat
4. Who are the writer of Iliad and Odessy?
   (a) Herodot (b) Theusidedis
   (c) Homer (d) Pythogoras
5. Where to ploughed field have been found?
   (a) Kalibanga (b) Aahar
   (c) Chandrawati (d) Mohan jo Daro
6. Which civilisation is famous by the name of Dholkot or Tamravati Nagari -
   (a) Balathel (b) Chandravati
   (c) Aahar (d) Indus

Verty short answer type questions -

1. Mention the two major sites of Indus civilisation.
2. What is meant by Mohan jo Daro ?
3. What is the meaning of Mesopotamia ?
4. Whom do we call fertile crescent.
5. What are the dead bodies called kept into the pyramids ?
6. What is the world famous construction of China?
7. In which civilisation being a soldier is considerd derogatory?
8. What are the major places of Greek civilisation.
9. Which civilization was situated on the bank of Aahar (Beduchh) river?
10. What was the ancient name of the river Gagghar ?
11. The remains of which civilisation are found at the foot hills of Mount Abu ?
12. Where is Blathal situated ?
13. To which civilisation the civilisation of Kalibanga related ?

Short Answer type Question

1. Describe the life in towns of Indus civilisation.
2. What contribution does the Nile rier keep in the civilisation of Egypt.
3. What is the contribution of the civilisation of Mesopotamia in the field of knowledge and sceince?
4. How was the military rule of Sparta? Describe.
5. Write about the countribution of Paracle in the Greek civilisation.

6. Mention about the archeological remains found in Kalibanga.

Eassy Type Questions

1. The social religious life of Indus civilisation.
2. Describe the chief traits of Mesopotamian civilization
3. Write an eassy on chinese civilisation.
4. Write chief charactristies of Egyptian civilisation.
5. Deleniate the Aahar civilisation.

Answer to objective type question

(1) a (2) a (3) c (4) a (5) c (6) c

Chapter-2

Major Philosophies of the World

It has been the human nature to think reflect and contemplate along with the rise of human civilization. This natural mental process brings the idea in the mind of a human being that who am I? Where have I come from? What is my future? What would happen to me after the death? This process of contemplation has given birth to the religion sect, cults and also helped in to the development of humans. Thus the religion and philosophy of have remained unified. Our life proceeding is governed by the religion. Moral conduct is the character of religion and it is guided by the philosophy. Some doctrines of principles are enunciated by the philosophy. Religion executes them and insitsts to leave the disdainful and give inspiration to accept the utiliti useful.

This process of human contemsplation has been prevaded into the human flock of complete world, consequently there rose the various type of venerations, religions and cults. The devotional practices are differnet but the goal hidden behined the all is only to get the self, only to get the salvation or emancipation by attainning the God. Getting salvation or Moksha by attaining the God, the philosophic form of religion and its contemplation explain about the elements of accomplistment or obstraction.

The very elucidation, contemplation or interpretation of maxim has developed the philosophy of religions of the whole world, so every individual need the informations about the elemental aspect of the prime religions of the world to make himself a true citizen.

World famous philosophical contemplations include - Vedic philosophy, Islamic philosophy and christian and Zoroastrian philosophy.

1. Vedic Philosophy :

Vedic philosophy is most important amongst all ancient Indian pholosophies. This is available in the Vedic literature. Vedic leterature consits the parts as- Vedas, Brahmin, Sanhitas, Aranyaks Upnishadas (Vedanta) and Vedanga which are collectively named as Vedic literature. Vedas are the oldest books in the world. There are four Vedas 1. Rigaveda, 2. Yajurveda 3. Samveda 4. Atharva veda. The Rigaveda is considered as first and oldest book of the world. The Rigveda chiefly consists of religious hymnology. It also consists development of religious ideology and philosophical hymnology with the Genesis. It also has the hymns related to the anthems of the deities Ritualistic objective of religions is told in the Yajurveda and Samveda. There was simple deed of veneration present in the early Vedic Age.

In the Samveda there are collection of lyrical chants (Mantras) for Yajnas (Oblation). The Atharva veda has the collection of chants related to incantation. The volumes named 'Brahminas' have the commodious description of those rituals in which the Vedic chants are employed. Except rituals they include the method of appropriation and meaning of Vedic chants.

Vedic sages would made the contemplation over spritual, Philosophical and Supernatural subjects too. What is Atman? How did the nature originated? What elements have made the nature? Who is the doer and regulater of the creation? what

is the desposition of animated authority different from inert nature? Thus the philosophical contemplation and description of all this type of questions is found in the Vedic literature. The number of Brahmin Granthas, Aranyakas and Upnishadas are in plural.

Thus the Vaidik literature is the religious literature chiefly, which represents the philosophical centemplation. In the Vedic age people worshiped various godly powers. These include- Indra , Mitra, Varuna, Agni and Yama. Diverse rituals were followed to make them satisfy. The Creator, Gaurdian and destroyer is one God only. Veneration of these presiding deities was in vogue, specialy on the basis of natural powers. Majority of god and goddesses described in Vedas are the embodiments of natural powers and authorities. Several deiteis in Vedas are understandable only in abstract form Various emotions like reverance, anger etc in humans too are considered as deities in the Vedas. To worship these deities the people of only Vedic age performed many rites of yajnas. In Vedic age the deities were in the form of natural powers, Thats why any form of idols was not there. The foundation of philosophical contemplation was to the same.

In the first Mandal (circle) of the oldest volume of Vedic philosophy the Rigveda, it is said that the Truth (God or supreme truth) is the same, only but the scholars called him by different names. According to Upanishdas the Brahm prevaded in the world and the Atman dwells in an individual are the same in fact. The purpose of the life of a man is to realize this unification only. Because of only this feeling of unification a person gets the permanent bliss, that is the ''Sachidanand''. This recognition has given the message of tolerance to the whole human race. There are provisions of four ''Purusharthas'' in Vedic Philosophy to elevate the human life spritually and worldly. These Purusharthas are- Dharma (religion) Artha (Money) Kama (sex) and Moksha (salvation) Dharma means to fullfill the duty assigned and the moral rectitude. Artha (Money) is the means of getting the creature comfort. Bodily pleasures are gettable by the Purusharth of 'Karma'' The ultimate goal of human life is to attain Moksha (Salvation) The development of individual and the society happens only by the proper coordination of all the four Purusharthas.

According to the Vedic philosophy the rebirth happens on the basis of the Karma and through it a person can make the life excellent by performing perfect work. In Vaidik philosophy a phase Vasudev Kutumbakam is mentioned. Agreeing to it the character of the person considers the whole earth as his family by freeing himself from the bond of promiscuity. In Vedic philosophy the inspiration has been givne to keep the five natural elements, water, earth, air, and space clean and safe through praying and oblation (Yajna). In Upnishadas it is mentioned that we should consume the resources but with sacrifice only. For this a person fulfills his duties by keeping distance from the greed and silly things. According to Vedic view, nursing others is religion and to harm them is called a sin.

Thus the philosophic thought of vedas give insipiration about love, morality, cooperation and Solidarity.

2. Jain Philosophy :

According to Jain literature the Jain philosophy was initialized in very old period. /The philosophic cult of Jain is considered as a movement contemporary with the Vedic convention. The ''Teerthankaras'' have the all important role in the development of this philosophy. 23 teerthankars are supposedly existed before the Mahavir' the first was Rishabhdev or Adinath and Parshwanath was considered the 23rd of the teerthankeras. The 24th teerthanker Mahavir Swami was born in a kshatriya dynasty in 549 B.C. at Kundgrama near Vaishali. Siddhartha was the name of his father and Trishala was of the mother. Trishla was the sister of king Chetaka of Lichhavi republic.

Mahavir's childhood name was Vardhamana.

Heroic schooling was given to Vardhamana from the early age. But his mind could not settle in this world. He got the apathetical sentiments gradually. So after the passing of his parents he took the permission from his elder brother Pandivardhana at the age of 30 and left the home and started penance in search of true knowledge, During this penance he had to undergo with stiff misery. He remained without food, drink and clothes for months. At last after the stiff penacne of 12 years he got ''Kevalya' the realization. After getting Kevalya Mahavir was called by the names of Jina (the winner), Nirgrantha (free from suspicion) etc.

After getting the kevalya knowledge Mahavir started to show the right path of life to the public. He started moving place to place to propagate his thoughts. His ideology spread by his sermonizing in the states of Magadh. Kashi, and koshal etc. Inspired by his true speech a lot of people started to become his desciples. Gradually his followers crossed a large number. In this way disseminating his notions in the end he got his Nirvana in 527 BC at Pavapuri (Bihar) crossing 72 years of his age. He left 14 thousand disciples behind him to keep enkindled the lamp of knowledge forever.

Mahavir Swami

The word 'Jain' is made up of the word JIN. Its literal meaning a is conqueror. By winning over the illusion of the world and the senses of body, to attain the Moksha (Salvation) is the only purpose of this religion. To attain the Moksha Mahavir Swami suggested three provisions, that were known as Tri ratanas here after. The philosophic speculation of Jain Religion hence starts from -

(i) Samyak Knowledge : It means about the entire and true knowledge. Mahavir had told that for getting true and entire knowledge people should read and follow the sermons of teerthankaras.

(ii) Samyak Philosophy : It means to keep complete faith in the teerthankaras. To adopt the true knowledge in life every human must have complete faith and belief in the teerthankaras.

(iii) Samyak conduct : It means the human beings only get the true knowledge by keeping their senses in control.

Five chief prinicples (Mahavratas) are formed by Jaina philosophy for the family men to comply with all these three means of attaining 'Moksha'. Which are as following.

(A) Ahimsa (Non voilence) : Ahimsa is the buzzword of the prinicples of jain religion and the teachings of Mahavir. Kindness equality and benefaction for the organism only is the meaning of Ahimsa.

(B) Satya (The truth) : Mahavir stressed a lot on the true statement with Ahimsa because observance of Ahimas can not be possible without truth, every one must speak truth only in each situation.

(C) Asteya : Asteya means not to perform theft. Stealing was immoral according to Mahavir and he taught to always remain away from this vice.

(d) Aparigraha : The meaning of aparigrah is not to accumlate'' According to Mahavir a person who do not store up worldly belongings is always remains far from the jugglery of this world that is to say keep only enough worldy metarial which is needed and deliver the rest to the indigent.

(e) Brahmcharya (celibacy) : All these four dictates statements can not be followed untill the person stay away from the desires and passions. Thats why Mahavir by adding fifth solution of celibacy with the above four given by Parshvanatha (the 23rd teerthankar of Jain religion) told all these as the

modes of attaining Triratnas.

Mahavir said that the reason for joy and sorrow of the world is the conscience of the man only. If the man comply with the afore said devices he can win over the man (soul). Only by winning over the soul the man can get rid of the illusion of this world.

Penance and Worship :

Mahavir greatly stressed over the penance and worship in the effort to control the soul and comply with the afore said five rules. He told penance of two types - one is external and the other was internal In penance ceurtesy, service, self civilization, meditation are inclusive. A person acquire the capability of internal penance by perfoming external penance and good thoughts evolved in him. According to Mahavir fasting is the most easy way of penance.

Body and soul get purified by it and paired the way to attain Moksha. Mahavir believed in the immortality of the soul. According to him changes may accur in the nature but the soul is immortal and remains same always. Due to the worldly destress which are produced by deeds of man. the soul marches over and over and cycle of death keeps continue. So Mahavir Swami had stated that if the desires of world are conqured then the bonds of karmas (deeds) can be destroyed and deliverance from life cycle could be obtained. We can guess by the ideology of Mahavir that the Jaina religion believes in the immortality of soul, rebirth, and in the doctrine of karma. All these teachings of Mahavir were very simple and straight. At the same Mahavir imparted sermons of all these dictates in the varncular "half magadhi" of that age, Mahavir opposed racism and untouchability, gave full respect to the woman. Mahavir strongly protested the contemporary voilence, bigotry and social malpractices.

Jain philosophy is based on quietism. According to it there is no pleasure in the worldly life. So Moksha should be attained by repudiating the world and doing stiff devotion. The reason for all the joy and sorrow of the man is his deed (karma). The karma is the reason for rebirth. One cannot get rid of the cycle of life and death without bearing the results of his deeds According to Jain doctrine this creation is made up of biotic and abiotic things. Creature is animate and the Abiotic is life less. Both are tied to their karmas. To break the tie of karma is the Moksha.

In Jain Philosophy syadvad or pluralism (Anekant Vad) is the buzzword of tolerance and co-ordination. Mahavir said that we should not look at one aspect of any matter, do not think in a single manner only .

What you say may be right but what other say can also be right, there are tension and duality in todays world and it is only because we do not understand the outlook of others. So the ordination of thoughts is possible through this theory. According to Jain philosophy the Atman is ever young and immortal. The creature too is an Atman. The spirit lives in every particle. Thus the philosophical thinking of Jain religion basically gives the inspiration to condiscend towards the well being of self.

3. Philosophy of Buddha :

A great legend like Mahavir swami was born in India in the 6th century BC. Like Mahavir Swami this power also railed against the verbalism, melancholy and social complexity spread in that age and showed the right path of life to the people of

Gautama Buddha

India. Thus power was none other than Mahatma Buddha. In 563 BC, Mahatma Buddha was born in the kshatriya clan of Shakya dynasty of Kapilvastu republic in north Bihar.

His Childhood name was Sidhartha. Because of Gautama Patronym of his clan he was called ''Goutama'' too. His father's name was Shudhdhana and mother's was Maya devi. Buddha was born in the way to the forest of Lumbini when his mother was going to his father's place. Unfortunately his mother died just after seven days of his birth. So he was brought up by his aunt and step mother Prajapati Gautami.

In his childhood too Buddha was a thoughtful and withdrawn person. He was very compassionate. His heart was always full of kindness when he saw people in misery. Though his father had provided him all kind of heroic academia and he got proficent in that too, but still Buddha would not bestire in the mundane things. He remained very sad on behalf of these things. Observing that kind of Mentality of Buddha father Shudodhana got Siddartha Married to a beautiful princess Yashodhara at the age of 16 years. Spending almost 10 years of family life still the problem of joy and sorrow of life kept the mind of Sidharthas confused. His reclusive mind did not settle in this world. Because of this anchoretic feeling one day he went through in the search of knowledge leaving his son, wife, father and the whole splendor of his kingdom. This incident of life is called ''Mahabhinishkramana'' in the Boddha literature.

After the Mahabhinishkramana he perpetually kept spending seven years of Monkery. At first he went to an ascetic. Atarkalam of Vaishali for getting the knowledge, but his thirst of knowledge couldnot be quenched. So he went to the Brahmin Acharya Udrak Ramput in Rajgriha. but his Acharya too could not give him the contenment. Then Siddhartha started from there and reached in the Uruvella forest. He with Kodinya and his five colleagues, started stiff penance at the bank of the river Niranjana near Uruvella. Because of hard hodily mortification his body had reduced as needle. Still he had not reached his goal. Then be decided to take diet and to leave the penane. His colleagues left him when they looked this change in Gautama but he did not get distracted by it. He decided to meditate. At one place he sat under a Pippal tree in meditation. After seven days of deep meditation, on the full moon day of the month of Vaishakha he comprehended the 'internal enlightenment' (knowledge) and from that time he was called Buddha. The peepal tree under which Sidharta had got the enlightenment was popularly known as Bodhivriksha.

After attaining the Knowledge Buddha gave his first sermon of knowledge to the Banjaras named 'Tapassu'' and Mallik in BodhGaya'' After that Gautama Buddha gushed to get through his knowledge and ideas to the masses and reached Sarnath. There he made contact with those five colleagues who had gone leaving him Buddha initiated his knowledge in the form of religion to them this incident is called Dharmachakra pravartana in the Boddha religion.

In the end at the age of 80 years in 483 BC at kushi nagar near Gorakhpur Goutam Buddha had left his mortal body. This incident of leaving his body by Gautam Buddha is called Mahaparinirvana.

Mahatma Buddha was also a great educator of humanity like Mahavir Swami. By his sermons he tried to show a path by making them free from the grief for getting perpetual peace. Four noble truths are the basis of his philsophical thinking-

(i) The world is full of sorrows- birth and death union and disunion, profit and loss in life all the sorrows only.

(ii) Reason for sorrows- Greed and passion is the reason of songous.

(iii) End of sorrows- Sorrow can be eliminated by resolving illusion or end of passion.

(iv) Path to end sorrows- It is eight fold path or the middle path.

Mahatma Buddha had told that the craving for experiencing the worldly possessions keep

enlaced the soul in to the bonding of life and death, so it is eassential to remove the craving for attaining the Moksha or Nirvana for this man should follow the Astangik Marga. This noble eight fold path is the middle way to subsisting for a person. That is why it is called the middle path for attaining Nirvana. Neither rigorous penance nor sinking in sensual pleasures are considered as the proper paths. Eight means of Astangika marga are as follows :

(i) Right view (Samyak Drishiti) Four noble truths are believed only when we could distinguish between true and false, sin and virtue.

(ii) Right asplation : Keep firm resolve to be away from the ill will because of grief.

(iii) Right pledge : Always abstain form lying and abusive speech

(iv) Right action : Always perform true and noble deeds.

(v) Right livedhood : Adopt pious ways for your livelyhood.

(vi) Right effort : Sweat properly to get your body indulged in good deeds.

(vii) Right mindfulness : Always make efforts of good deeds with prudence and caution while keeping the flaws in mind.

(viii) Right samadhi (concentration) : Practicing meditation to achieve concentration. In his teachigs Buddha stressed too much over piety and morality. He said to his deciples to remain pious in mind, speech, and work. For this he told to follow these 10 rules of moral behaviour. We can also call them 10 rules of good behaviour :

(i) Following the rule of of non voilence (Ahimsa)
(ii) Leaving falsehood
(iii) Never stealing (Asteya)
(iv) Never collect things in excess (Renunication)
(v) Staying away from passion and pleasure.
(vi) Renouncing dance and music (Celibacy)
(vii) Renouncing incensed items
(viii) To avoid untimely meals.
(ix) Not to use soft bed and seat
(x) Renouncing womanly pleasures.

In these rules of morality first five are told by Mahavir Swami as- Ahimsa, Truth, Asteya, Aparigrah (ranunciation) and Brihamcharya (celibacy) According to Buddha all these five are neccessary to abide for all household devotees. In complying with them man can proceed towards the right path without repudiating the world too. But the person who spends a life of Bhikshuk (Monk) leaving behind the illusion of the world, it is mendatery to comply with the aforectited rules.

Mahatma Buddha had propounded his principles with logically disproving the verbalism pervaded in that age. Buddha had stressed on the 'logic' too much. He did not keep belief in the fetish, so he challenged the authenticiy of Vedas. Disapporving the vedas he did not accept the God as the creator of the universe at the same time. Thats why some people told Buddha a theist too. Mahatma Buddha did not believe in the immortality of the soul.

The soul for him was a doubtful subject. So he didnot say, whether the soul exists or not. Buddha believed the prinicples of Karmavad. He said that a man have to bear the fruits of his deeds. The present world depends upon on his karmas. Man marches in the world only to bear his karmphalas Buddha had the faith in rebirth. He said a man takes rebirth according to his karmas but Buddha also had the idea that it is the ego which takes rebirth not the soul. When the longings and desires are destroyed, then there is no left and the man attains Nirvana by getting out of the cycle of rebirth.

Ahimsa is the buzzword of Buddhist religion. Buddha told that, to torture any creature is enormity. Even so, Buddha did not insist too much on Ahimsa like Mahavira, but gave the pragmatic look to this prinicple according to the time and place. Buddha insisted too much on the purity of conscience too. He had told that craving is produced by the conscieene of a man.

The final objective of Buddhism to attain the ''Nirvana''. The word 'Nirvana' means to get extinguished. So Mahatma Buddha had said that

Nirvana could be attained only after extinguishing the fire of craving or desire inculculated in the mind. So the Jaina and the Buddhist doctrines both worked to remove the obsolete customes included in the vaidik philosphy in timelaps.

Islamic Philosophy :

Hajarat Mohammad was the founder of Islam. He was born in 520 AD in Mecca. His fathars name was Abdulla and Mother was Ameena. His father had died before his birth and his mother had also died in his childhood. He was brought up by a midwife Haleema according to the arrangments made by his grand father. Mohamad Sahib got married to a widow named Khadija at the age of 25 years. Khadija was 40 Years of age at that time, she was much influenced by the honesty of Hajarat Mohammad Sahab but after the marriage Hajrat Mohammad remained absorbed in contemplation.

Before Islam the public of Arab was polytheistic and believed in the iconolatry. The rising of Islam happened among all these circumstances. Hajarat Mohammad got the enlightment in a cave named Hira. He messaged Arabian public that no one is sacred except the Allah (the God) and he was the messenger of 'Him", he opposed the worshiping of 360 deities put in the Kaba and because of this act the Meccan people got annoyed with him and began to protest him. So Hajarat Mohammad had to go to Madeena after leaving Mecca.

This imporant incident is called Hijrat in Islam. From this very incident the Hijari calendar of Islam starts in 622 AD. Those who welcome and entertained Hajarat Mohammad in Madina were calledAnsar (Those aider who helped) From here he began to propagate Islam. People of Mecca were prepared gradually to accept his ideas and his thoughts were being disseminated in all Arab world. After his death in 632 AD his caliphs founded a huge empire. Hajarat Abu Bakar Siddique, Hajarat Umer Farukh Hajarat Usman Gani, Hajarat Ali etc. were the caliphs who later propagated this sect a lot.

Mosques of Madina

The Philosophic musing of Islam is collected into the holy book Quran. This musing is described as - There are five teachings such as -

(i) Key mantra (kalma) : No one except Allah (The God) is venerable and Mohammad is his messenger. That is to say Islam believes in monotheism only.

(ii) Namaj : Daily Sajada (Bowing) to Allah is offered at a fixed time. The timing are before sunrise (fajar) afternoon (Johar) third part of the day (Asar), Sunset (Magrib) and before sleeping in night (Isha). On friday the Namaz is offered collectively.

(iii) Roja (fasting) : In the whole month of Ramjan there is no eating and drinking happens between sunrise to Sunset.

(iv) Jakat (Charity) : If somone earns 7 and half tola gold or keeps money equals two 52 tola silver or more then this annualy then he should give 10th part of it as charity.

(iv) Haj pilgrimage : To visit Mecca for religious pilgrimage once in life.

Islam has the opinion that after the death of a person Allah confers in heaven or hell after calculating his deeds.

According to Islam this life is ultimate one, that means Islam does not recognise rebirth.
Islam does not believe in iconolatry too.

Chirstian Philosophy :

The founder of christian religion and philosophy was 'Jesus christ'. He was born in Bethhelam the hilly part of Pelestine. His father Yusuf and mother Mariam worked as carpenters. Jesus christ vowed to make the society free which was surronded by superstitions. By visiting village

to village he sermonized that the supreme God sees all of alike. This message was objectionable to the jews. Once in a festival at Jeruslam Jesus opposed the voilent work of the jews. Because of it the whole jewish society gotten vexed with him. One deciple of christ Judas fraudelently got him (Jesus) arrested, as a punishment he was crucified at the age of 30 years. In his last time Jesus christ said 'O' God, pardon them because these people don't know what they are going to do.

The main disciples of Jesus Christ Saint Paul and Saint Peter propagated his ideas a lot. According to Christian ideology the god is one and all the creatures are same in his sight. Jesus christ stressed on the good character of a man. He said "Hate sin, not the sinner." We should learn to forgive by leaving the intentions of anger and revenge.

He had a thought that the soul lifts up by tolerance. He taught people about truth, non violence, care, service and sacrifice for poor and aggrieved. His preachings are compiled in Bible the holy book of christians. The Christian sect later devided in to two parts. One Roman catholic and the other is prostestant. Those who followed the cardinal sect were called catholic and the other who supported reforms were known as protestants. Prostestant people opprosed the political powers of Pope and disgraced 'fathers' and the sale of the letters of amnesty. Later a protestant religious reform movement was started and the sale of amnesty letters was stopped Thus kindness, Mercy, honesty, tolerance etc. are the chief elements of christian philosophy.

Persian Philosophy

Parasi or zorastrian religion was born in Pharas (Iran). The religion of the Parasi people was based on the worship of nature. The sun, the earth, the moon etc. were the chief deities but the sun was considered greatest amongst them. This natural religion of Pharas was accepted as ''Shravon the religion'' in the time lapse. Zarathustra was the founder of it. This very ''Shravon'' religion later became the Persian religion. Zarathsutra was born in the Ajabarizan province of Iran. His father's name was Ponishappa and mother's name was Durodha. He was thoughtful from the early age. He got the enlightement at the age of 30 on the Sablaam mountain. Bulk of scholars consider Zarathustra's period as 600 BC.

According to the philosophic thoughts founded by Zarathustra, the body is mortal and the Atman is immortal. Man gets heaven or hell abiding by the truth or untuth according to his deeds. In view of these thoughts the Persians philosophy too seems to have similarity with the Vedic. According to Persian thinking there are two powers Divine and Demonic in this world. A "hur mada" is the symbol of divine powers. This is a great deity who has created

Jesus

Zarathustra

the earth, Man and heavens. The Aahurmazda power says that 'O' men don't think ominously, don't leave the right path and ''do not commit sin.''

Ahiraman is the symbol of demonic powers. Ahiraman power carries humans towards the hell by making them devils. The struggle between these two powers keeps continue but the Aahurmazda always gets the final victory. The philosophy of Zarathustra is not escapist he has the belief that the heaven can be achieved in this very world by performing noble deeds. According to Persian ideology the body consists of two parts :- 1. Physical 2. Spritual. After the death body becomes extinct but the spirtual part remains alive.

According to Persian philosophy this world is made of air, water, fire and earth. Avesta 'e'Zed' is the holly book of Persian religion. Teachings of Zarathustra are compiled in it. In the timelapse due to foriegn attacks on Iran a number of Persian people came to India and settled here. The Persian temple of Mumbai is still very famous regarding to its archetecture.

Thus we see that different religions and philosophies took birth in the different parts of the world. All of the philosophies motivated the human race to keep it away from the wrong deeds and to lead the path of truth, and made efforts to bond the society in to the thread of unity. It is revealed by the study of all principal philosophies of the world that, the ultimate goal of them is only to make the human life spiritual and good. All ideologies stress on the need of the virtues for building. The character service to humanity, Charity, nonvoilence love etc. are the emotions found in all the religions, we should keep the feelings of respect for all the philosophies.

Important Points :

1. In the world there are Vedic, Jain, Buddhist, Islamic, Christian, Persian philosophies are important one.
2. Vedic philosophy is based on vedas, there are four vedas- Rigaveda, Samveda, Yajurveda, Atharvaveda.
3. Five major rules of Jain religion (the great views) are Satya (truth) Asteya (no stealing) Brahamcharya (celibary) and Aparigrha (Renunciation)
4. Four noble truths of Buddhist philosphy are Grief, the reason for sorrow, elimination of sorrow and the eight fold path for elimation of sorrow.
5. The founder of Islamic philosophy was Hajarat Mohammad. His importance teachings are compiled in Quran sharif.
6. The founder fo christian sect was Jesus christ. His Sermons are compiled in the holy book of Bible.
7. The founder of Persian religion was Zarathustra. The holy book of persians is Avesta-e-Jaid.
8. According to Zarathustra the heaven could be achived by performing good deeds while surving in the world.
9. The first tirthankar of Jain religion was Rishabhdeva and 24th was Mahavira Swami.
10. The Vedic Religion belives in ''Vasudhev Kutumbkarm'' (universal brotherhood)

Objective type Question

1. When was Mahavir Swami born ?
   (a) 699 BC (b) 570 BC
   (c) 675 BC (d) 599 BC
2. Where did Mahatma Buddha give his first sermon?
   (a) Kapilvastu (b) Sarnath
   (c) Gaya (d) Boddhagaya
3. When did Hizri Calander start ?
   (a) 622 BC (b) 632 BC
   (c) 570 BC (d) 566 BC
4. Which one holy book of Chirstian religion?
   (a) Babylone (b) Bible
   (c) Monacarta (d) Gita

Very short answer type questions

1. How many pruisharsthas are there? name them.
2. In which book ''Vasudhaiva Kutumbakarm'' is Stated ?
3. Accorrding to Vedic philosophy who is the creater and destroyer of this earth ?
4. Write the name of 1st and 24th Teerthankaers of Jain Religion?
5. What are the five mahavratas? (Panch Mahavartas)

6. What is the interpretation of Ahimsa in Jainism ?
7. What was the childhood name of Mahatma Buddha?
8. What is the reason of sorrow according to Mahatma Buddha?
9. In how many sects did the Buddhist religion divided ?
10. What the incident of going Mecca to Madina by Muhmmad saheb is called ?
11. Where was Hajarat Mohammad born?
12. Who were the chief disciples of Jesus christ ?
13. What were the people called who treaded on the path of ancient theories of Bible?
14. Who was the founder of persian religon ?
15. To whom we consider the symbol of devine powers in persian religion ?

Short Answer Type Question

1. Explain the message of tolerance in Vedic philosophy.
2. Describe the concept of Triratnas in Jain philosophy. (Subjectivism)
3. Who were the prime teerthankaras of Jain religion?
4. Explain the concept of four noble truths in Buddhist philosophy.
5. Explain the self evaluation of Buddhist philosophy.
6. What was the impact of the teachings of Mohmmad saheb on Arabian People?
7. Describe the godly and evil powers according to the Persian philosophy.

Essay type Questions

1. Describe the major characteristics of Vedic philosophy.
2. What are the major teachings of Jain philosophy?
3. Mention the teachings of Buddhist philosophy.
4. Describe the teachings of Islam focussing on the life of Mohammad Saheb.
5. Explain the Christian philosophy by giving the introduction of Jesus christ.

Answer to objective type question

1. (D) 2. (D) 3. (A) 4. (B)

Chapter-3

Ancient India and The world

Earlier it was often considered that India did not have any relation with the other countries of the world But now it has been established by the discoveries related to history and archeology that India had close commercial and cultural ties with other countries of the world from Indus civilization period to the tenth century AD.

Since Indus civilization to the period of Gupta Empire India held the commercial and cultureal relations with western countries like Egypt, Mesopotamia, Greece and Rome. After Harshvarndhana in South India, at the time of the extention of chola empire upto the 10 century AD, in comparition to the Western countries India had kept close commercial, Political and cultural relation with central Asia and South East Asia, that's Why India was recognised as ''Greater India''

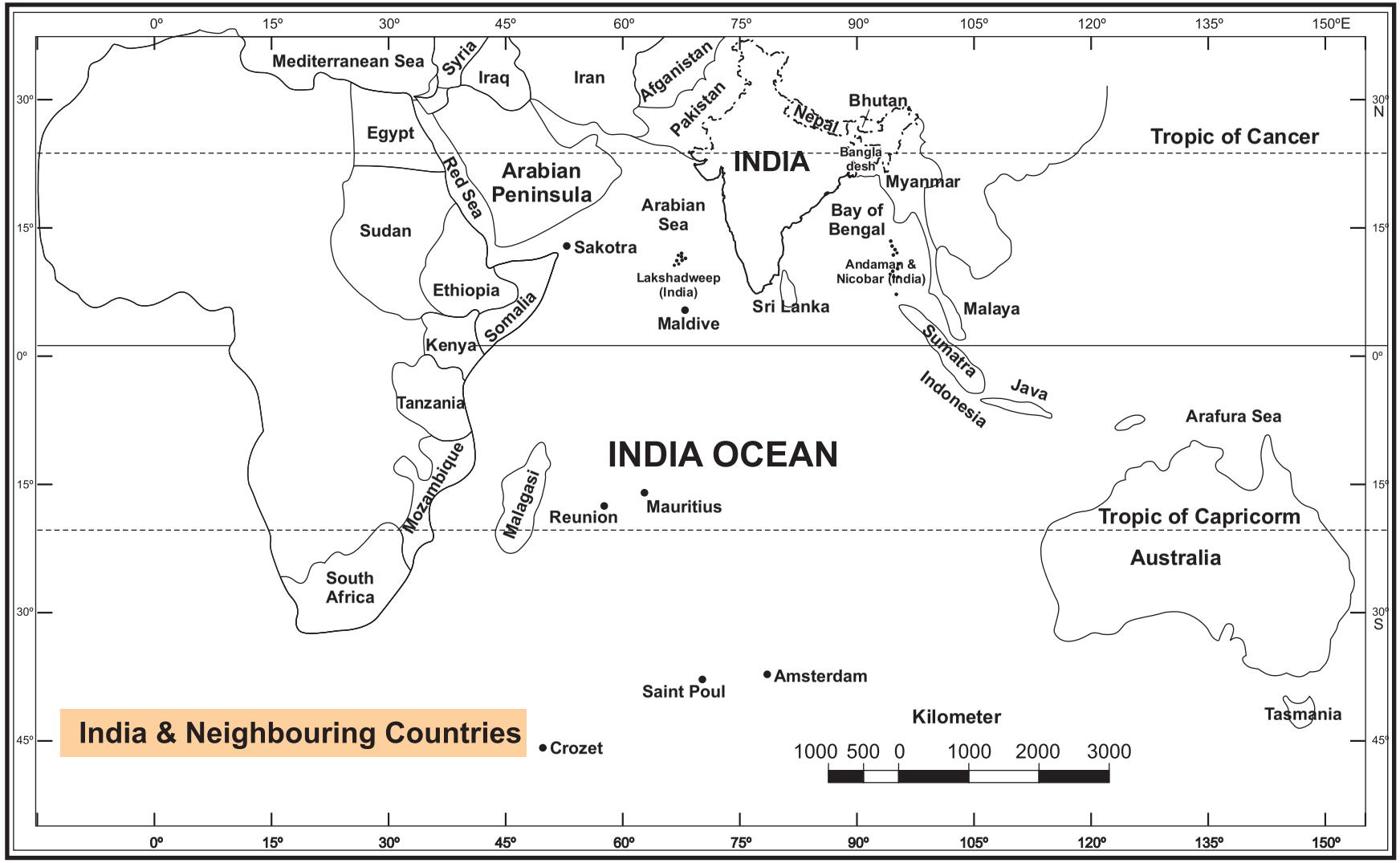
India was not so small or confined earlier what it is shown now in the geographical and political boundries of the world map. It was bigger. In ancient times the geographical borders of India were much extensive. Today's Afganistan situated in North West of India was a part of it. India's culture and mode of life were dilated in the whole central asian region. Here in the east, India's geographical borders were stretched up to Barma (Myanmar). Further more east to bay of Bangal in south east of India- Malaya, Java, Sumatra, Barma (Myarmar) Bornio, Bali, Champa, Hindchina (Indonasia) Syaam Combodia and Surinam etc. group of islands and Shrilanka all were parts of India only. These territories were ruled under the lordship of Indian kings. The inhabitants of these islands subsisted just like Indians. The actual circumstance since ancient times to almost tenth century was such as that life manship of India fluttered from the west of India to the terrains of mid Asia and from Burma in east and the isles of South East Asia to the Tibet in the North to Srilanka in the South. India and Indian culture were mirrored in the manifold aspects of life. Where upon India was mirrored big and bigger than the big too. The word 'big' is called Vrihatar (Gigantic) in Sanskrit. So the historians call this terrain of Asia as ''big from bigger India'' or the ''Vrihatar Bharat'' where the Indian culture was stretched from olden times to the 10th century.

Concisely in Greater India we include the nations where indians held the cultural and political dominance . The reasons for publicity of Indian culture in Greater India are mentained as -

(i) Geographical reasons : The top most reason for it was the geographical situation of India. India is situated in the middle of southern part of Asia. That was the ultimate reason for holding the natural relation with other nations.

(ii) Economic Reasons : India was an advanced country in ancient times and goods maunfactured here kept a great demand in foreign countries. Indian traders went to foreign lands to sell their commodities. Many traders from India settled in foreign lands and many kept intercommunication. The dissemination of Indian culture and civilization was natural in those countries because of the settlement and intercommunication of those traders in the concerned nations.

(iii) Religious factors : Before the rise of Buddhism the traders who had settled in the south east Asia due to economic matters disseminated the religious



Map 3.1 : Indian and Neighbouring Countries

assumption of Hindus. After the rise fo Buddhism many Buddhist propagators went to the alien countries from time to time for evangelistic issues.

The religious propagators not only disseminated the religion but also spread the indian culture and civilization . The Chola kings further more sent Hindu religious propagandists to the South East islands. Along them many Indian scholers, artists also went in those nations and propagated the Indian culture, language, literature, art and religion there.

(iv) Political factors : In olden days many kings and princes went to the parts of South East Asia and established their states and colonies. Indian ideology, language culture and civilization were easily propagated in foriegn land by this type of Kingdoms and colonies. Indian civilization and culture was disseminited to central Asia and North East and South East Asia in the background of all these factors.

Central Asia : In ancient times the region of central Asia was in the complete dominance of India. The places like khotan, Kucha, Karashapar, Turfan etc were the important centres of Indian civilization. The relics, sculptures, wallpaintings and the stones described in the ancient literature and the names of kings found in the archaeological excavation reveal clearly that Indian religion, langauge, script and artisitc flair had a lot of hype is these parts.

Khotan was a very big center of Indian culture and civilization. Followers of Mahayana stream of Buddhism lived there in a great number. The number of Indian people settled there was so high that they imbibed the locals into their traditions. Koocha was also a prime center of Indian culture like Khotan. Almost all of its people followed Buddhism. About 1000 stupas and Monastries were built there and the sanskrit language, Indian astrology, Ayurveda and art were in vogue.

The names of the rulers at there also had Indian origin like - Hardeva, Swargdeva etc.

Like Khotan and Koocha the city of Cara and Turfan too were important centers of indian civilization. Both two were seperate states. About Caracity it is said that it had been an important part of Kanishka's empire. Buddhism had been propagated into the area of Turfan till the 5th century. The relics of Buddhist cloisters, stupas and sculptures were found here in the excavation, so the impact of indian culture and civilisation can be acknowledged by them. When Islam entered in the eighth century, indian culture and civilization disappeared rapidly from here.

Afganistan : In ancient times Afganistan was also a part of India. Indian settlements were expanded there in the Regvedic period. Afganistan was a part of Indian empire in the Mourya Dynasty too. Substantially in the ancient times Afganistan was a part of north India where people spoke language of central India. Buddhism had flourished here. Besides Buddhism Hindusim also had a great impact.

China : The reference of ancient relations between India and China is revealed by Mahabharat, Manusmrity and the playAbhigyan Shakuntalam of Kalidasa. But the interchange had commenced between India and china in the vew of religious and cultural prospective during the first century B.C.. Almost in 65 B.C., the chinese king Meengi took away two Buddhist mumpers Dharmratna and Matang with him from India. They continued translating Buddhist volumes in Chinese language. With the ambient dissemination of Buddhism in china, Indian arihetcture sculpture and drawing also layed great impact. Indian Mathematics Astrology, Medication and music too had got a lot of type. Several Buddhist temples, cave temples were also built in China. Many wall paintings by emulating Indian genre were made and a lot of idols in Indian style were also made. It was the China from where the Budhism spread up to Koria and Japan.

Tibet : India's nearest neighbour in the north Tibet is owed. India in the field of civilization and religon. The king of Tibet Tsronsang Nempo established Marital relations with India. Buddhism was greatly publicised there and Buddhist temples and Monsateries were also made. They adopted Sanskrit langauge and Indian script Brahmi and Kharosthi,

many Tibetian students came to India for thier study.

Srilanka: India and Srilanka have the relationship since ancient times. At first in Indian history it is mentioned in Valmiki Ramayana when Rama conuquered Srilanka. By the history of Mouryan period it is revealed that emperor Ashok had sent his son Mahendra and daughter Sanghmitra to Srilanka for the propagation of Buddhism and there the king Tissa granted governmenet protection to Buddhism and he get himself converted to it also. Consequently Buddhisma had become a local religion there. Side by side the religion Pali langauage and the script Brahmi also got publicised in Shrilanka. Concurrently the literature art, and the public life were also got influenced by Indian culture and the glimpses of all that can be seen even today.

Burma : Now a days Burma is known as ''Myanmar Indian culture had been disseminated here even before the first century. Here in Arakan, Tagong, Shrikshetra, Yaton, and Peegu the Hindu way of life was developed considerebly. Many scriptures of Burma are witten in Sanskrit and Pali. Several memorials of Hindu deities are found in Burma. Hindu religion had an almost effect in the ''Maan' Province of Burma. State of Paagan was established between 9th to 10th century. King Aniruddha was very famous here at that time. Here Buddhist repalced the Brahminism during the reign of Paagan dynasty. The Ananda Temple of Burma is built by Indian architects. Several names in Burma (Myanmar) coincide with Hindu culture even today.

Kamboj : Kamboj or comboida was earlier called as Foonan. An Indian named Koudinya established his rule in first century A.D. and married a damsel named Sobha of Nagirace there. Only he made the local people learn how to dress up there. In the regime of the descendant of Koudinya Combodia progressed and Indian culture was disseminated there.

In the early 9th centruy during the period of Jai Verma's descendants Indian language Sanskrit, Philosophy, literature mathematics and astroglogy got a lot of publicity there. The king of the same dynasty

Angkorvat Temple

Suryaverma II built the famous temple of Vishnu named Angkorwat. This temple is the best example of Indian archietecture, like wise Jai Verma VII got built one more Vaishnava temple named Angcorthome.

The archieves and other historical residues of combodia reveal that the names of these cities were similar to the Indian cities like Tamrapur, Adhyapur, Vikrampur etc. The pro-mulgation of oblational activities was also present there and the education work was perfomed in the Ashrmaas according to the ancient Indian education system. Idol worshiping of Shiva, Vishnu, Uma Saraswti, Brahma, Ganga, Chandi, Laxmi, Ganesha etc. was prevalent and Vedas, Puranas, Ramayana, Mahabharata and other etc. Indian literature was also in a great hype. Amogst all the temples of Shiva and Vishnu are more in number.

Champa : In ancient times there was a state named Champa in the eastern part of Combodia or Comboz which holds the modern name Vietnam today. This was also a colony of India in olden days. Hindu Shrimar was the first king of it. Many Hindu dynasties ruled for a long time in this state too, Bhadraverm a Gangraj, Panduranga, Bhrigu and Hariverma. It is known through the ancient historical remains and traditons of Champa that a caste system like India was present there and the marriage system was also just similar to India. The custom of holding Yagyopaveet was also existed. The custom of 'Sati' prevailed in royal families and widows spent simple

life. Indian festivals were celebrated in this state. The official langague of champa was Sanskrit and Indian religion, philosophy, literature and grammer etc. were studied a lot there, the 'Shaiva doctrine had a great publicity there. Bhadraverma had built a temple in Myson. Besides Shiva other Indian deities, Ram and Sita too were worshiped there and their temples were made. Chalukya style of architecture was followed in the temple Buddhism was also got publicised later in Champa greatly and several Buddhist temples were built.

Malaya : Malaya which is now called Malasiya has witnessed development of many Hindu kingdomes in ancient times. Karamrang Kalashpur, Katah, and Pahang etc were the prime states amonst them. Ruins of ancient temples and articles inscribed on idiols in sanskrit langauge are found in the various parts of this peninsula which show a total impact of Indian culture in Malaya. Names of kings here resemble to Indian origin as Gautam, Samundra, Vijay verman etc. Buddhism was also propagated here and Buddhist stupas (Mounds) were built. Families of such brahmins still exist there whose ancestors immigrated from India. August king of Chola empire Rajendra Chola in south too held the mercentile control over this group of islands.

Syam : Syam now a days is called Thailand after the name of Thai race, but the effect of Thai race was not existed before thirteenth century. Indians were dominating prior to them and the Indian civilisation and culture possesed the complete influence. Mahayana ideology of Buddhism and the Hindu rellgion were mostly prevalent there. Their rulers had built Buddhist temples and monasteries. Here the language. Pali was also in circulation and the architeture and intaglio were also got impacted and inspired by Indian art.

Java : Indians had set up their colony in Java of present Indonasia by 65 BC. According to the narration of Fahayan Hinduism had been spread in Java till the early 5th century and Brahmins had the sway there. These worshippers of Shiva were found in a great number. The relics related to hundreds of Buddhist and Hindu temples have been found there in Java. The impact of hindu kingdoms and Indian culture in Java lasted before the atttack of Kubla khan in the 15th century. with the attack of Kubla khan Islam had spread there and Indian civilization and culture started reducing after wards.

Sumatra : Its current name is Indonasia. In oldentimes this island was known as a golden island. The rule of Vijaya dynsasty lasted here between 4th to 7th century. This was a Hindu clan. Sumatra progressed a lot in this period. Rajendra Chola I of South India also held the supermacy here. Shri Vijaya Nagar was important center of Indian culture and religion. Buddhism too was greatly recognized here. The Hindu king here in 15th century also got converted into Islam, so the impact of Hindu culture started dwindling.

Bali : Hindu Kingdom was established in Bali situated in Indonasia in the 4th century. Buddhism and Hinduism both were popular here and Shiva and Vishnu were worshipped.

Though Islam also entered here but their culture had not got affected much by Islam, therefore residues of Hindu religion and Indian culture are still found there.

Bornia : Hindus had established their kingdom in Borniyo (Bukalpur) in the 4th century. In that preriod Mool Verma was the ruler there, he was a devotee of ancient Indian culture, so the roots of Indian culture were also fixed there. Idols of Shiva, Ganesha Durga, Nandi, Mahakala and Buddha have been found from Borniyo. Effect of indian religion and culture is clearly manifested there.

Lovdesh : Lovdesh is currently known as Laos. Here we found a city Love Puri by the name of love the son of God Rama. The ancient deity of Love Desha is called Bhadreshwara. Shaiva religion once had a great impact there. The first king of Love Desha was Shratvermana. Shreshtaverman was his son who settled down a town named Shresthpura.

The festivals like Varsh Pratipada Vyas

Poornima, Vijaya Dashmi were once very popular here, after the arrival of Buddhism many cloisters and stupas were made here. 'Shalivahana Era' was also prevalent here which still holds its impacts. It has been made clear by the aforecited discriptions that Indian civilisation and culture had got disseminated a lot before the rise of Islam in central Asia and South east islands. Indians had promulgated their religion and culture with love and empathy.

Trade commerce and Industry in Greater India:

(A) Commerce : India was a prosperous country in olden days. Our nation was known by the name of golden bird. Indian villages were self reliant financially. Traders from many parts of the world came to purchase goods made in India. Business was made through both sea and land routs Trade with Tibet, China, Iran and Arab was operated through land route. Tamralipti was a leading port in the east. Indian bussinesmen went to the countries like China, Lanka Java and Sumatra Through the sea port. A perfect system of intercommunication was available for ships on the sea ports. Foreign businessmen brought gold, silver, gemstone red and diamond jwellery and they carried cotten, silk brocading, tobacco and spices etc. with them in return. In ancient India foreign trade seemed to be in a developed state, the leader of the business community who went foreign land for trade was called Sarthwah. Sweet liquor and fig from western countries, silk from China and the wool from Nepal were sent for, Clove and sandalwood were conveyed to Shrilanka and then exported to western countries from there. Pearl, precious stones scented products, clothes, spices indigo, medicines cococonuts etc. were the important items of export. Gold coins were imported inlieu of all these things

Domestic trade was also stood at the advanced stage in ancient India. For the facilitation of domestic trade, suitable highways and water ways were available, water ways were more handy for commercial point of view. Trade was operated through the water ways of Ganga, Brahmputra, Narbada, Godavary, Krishna and Kaveri rivers. Big sized boats were made for this purpose. Land route was also used for the trade.

(B) Industry : Industries of Indian ancient India is conserded in the advanced stage of that time. Influence of Indian artisans was world wide. The identification of the art of indian artisan is revealed by the fact that a muslin cloth having the length of 20 yards and width a yard could be passed through a ring only.

The textile industry was the most advanced industry in India. The factoreis were available in Benaras, Vatsa, Banga, Madura etc for the business of cotton fabric.

Except cotton fabrics, woolen and silk clothes too were made in adequate quanity. In chanakyas 'Arthshastra' many types of woolen blankets are mentioned. According to Meghasthaneeze Indians put on fine clothes made up of muslin on which brocading work was perfomed. Bengal was famous for manufacturing muslin clothes. The fabricks contained diverse colours.

In ancient India the second major industry was related to the metals.

After mining smelting and cleaning of the different types of metals diverse utenisls.weapons, ornaments, sculptures etc. were made by them Gold, Silver, Copper, Iron, Zinc had the prominence in metals The work of with drawing diverse kind of gems, Mukta (nacre) gempled pearls etc. from the ocean was also perpormed These gems were used in ornaments.

The timber work was also in advanced stage. Big boats and shops made of timber, doorways and furniture for the house, hackery, chariots, boxes, other goods of household doublebed toys, etc were made. In other industries smithery, leather work, ivory made items, house building, sugar, salt, production of indigo blue etc. also were in blooming state.

(C) Commerce and economic organisations : In the early period of ancient India the trade was run by commodity exchange later the coins were introduced. commercial exchange was done by the coins. Gold, silvers and copper coins were in use. The gold coin

was called Nishak, Dharn was the silver and the copper coin was called Mashak and Kakani. The currency moulding was done in government mint.

In ancient time the proffesional trade unions had devoloped. Trade unions were called 'Shreni' or ''Gana''. The chairman of the shreni was called 'Mukhiya' The trade unions protected their commercial interests. They had different categories for the different professions. There were individual rules for the management of their relevant buinesses. They also worked as modern banks They gave loans on interest and kept the funds on intrest. Trade and art were encouraged by trade unions.

(2) Art in Ancient India :

(i) Architecture : The monunents of Indian architecture are found in four forms stambha, stupa Bhawan, Guhagrih.

(a) Stambha : As the excellent sample of Indian architecture almost 30 stambhas (Pillars) built by emperor Ashoka are found from various parts of India. Experts of architecture from India and foreign countries consider these pillars as the excellent examples of ancient Indian architecture. These stambhas have the structure of probosicis (Shape of elephant probosicis) thinly at upper side and thick at down side usally they are heavy and long. They have the length up to 40 to 50 feet. Every stambha (pillar) is made up of a single stone. A special polish is coated around them whose smoothness, polish and brightness is astonishing. Its polish glitters like mirror even today. The stone pillar of (Stambha) Sarnath is most graceful amongst all.

(b) Stupas and Buildings : Stupas are the dome type monuments, resembling elevated mounds of bricks or stones. Stupa of sanchi near Bhopal in central India is most famous amongst all. By looking at the art and beauty of architectural mounuments and buildings the chinese travellor Fahyan wrote that the people of this universe cannot build them, they might have built by the gods. Many stupas are found in south eastern Aasian countries.

Guha Griha : (Cave houses) In architectural monuments the cave houses have their own importance. Construction of community halls. residential houses, houses for worship by cutting hard rocks is a unique style of indian architecture.

(ii) Sculpture : The sculpture of ancient India is excellent in the expression of glorification, intellectuality natural beautification, physical beautification, artistic beautification and architectural skill. Among the idols made in ancient times the Varah incarnation idol of Udaigiri, idols show casing Shri Krishna's birth in Pathari, idol of Vishnu sleeping on Shesh Shaiya (bed) of a typical snake in Deogarh temple and the idol showcasing the many tableaus of Krishna's life in Mandore (Jodhpur) all are very charming. Additionally the stone idols of Buddha at Mankuvar and Sarnath, Huge copper image of Buddha in Sultanganj four images, of lions on the Ashoka stambha of Sarnath are the excellent examples of indian sculptural art. In Cambodia of greater India the idols of Vishnu, Shiva, Brahma, Saraswati, Laxmi, Ganesha etc are appearing is beautiful form.

(iii) Drawing : Drawing of caves at Ajanta Gwaliar, and Bagh are considered as the matchless examples of indian drawing. It is revealed by the pictures of Ajanta that no area of life was left untouched by the Indion artist Diverse type of body configurations, facial expressions, gestures, contures miscellaneous hairstyles, appearnces etc. are painted beautifully. In Ajanta's painting the painting of a ''Princes at the deaths door'' is so serious that the mind can not remain un affected after watching it. Many scenes of palaces. plants, creapers leaves and the scenes from Buddha's life are painted in the caves of Ajanta. The painting of Ajanta was so excellent that no one can emulate it in real.

(iv) Art of Music : Music too was not remained untouched in the domain of indian arts. After getting protection from Indian emperors all three parts of musical arts singing, playing musical instruments and dancing had got the substantial progress. In ancient times there were many centers available for getting musical education.

(v) Seal Art : We can see ample artisitc beauty with indianness and nationality in the seals of ancient Indian rulers. Various types of made up seals of gold and silver were got constructed by the rulers at their own level.

(3) Education in Ancient India :

India is called the universal educator. World's

first university was set up in 700 BC at Taxsila where 10,000 students from all the world studied in about more than 60 subjects. 400 hundred years before christ a second university was stablished in Nalanda. Por education of knowledge the scholars like Megashtneeze, Hwainsam Fayahan etc came to India. Besides Taxila and Nalanda, Ujjain, Benaras, Rajgriha and Patliputra were also the centres of higher education. Other than Dharm shastra, the education of politics ethics, grammar, Veda upnishada, literature, astrology medicine etc was also given to the students of greater India came here for study.

4. Literature of Ancient India :

Three langauage were popular in ancient India Sanskrit Prakrit and Pali language. We can devide ancient Indian literatrue into three parts on the basis of Lnagauge.

(i) Sanskrit literature : Veda vedanya , Upnishada, Smriti, Sutra sahitya are important in the sanskrit literature. Mudrarakshas of Vishakdutta Kiratarujniam of Bharavi, the play named Swaphavasavdutta of Bharata, and Kautilya's Arthshastra etc. are the distinguished creations in sanskrit literature. Bhartrihari has written superordinate volumes of ethics and grammar named Vakyadeep, Shrinagar Shataka and Neetishataka. Poet Laureate of Sanskrita Kalidasa enjoys the important place amongst the optimal poets of the world. To decide the best among all his creations is very difficult Kumarsambhavam and Raghuvansham are the two epics of Kalidasa. Meghdutam and Ristusamhara are his two long narrative poems (Khandkavya) and Vikramovarshiyam Malvikagni mitram and Abhijyan Shakuntalam are his three plays the storeis of Panchatantra are very great contribution to the world by India. Veda, Purana, Ramayana, Mahabharata etc. were the books pervalent in Combodia.

(ii) Jain Literature : The Jain religion has contributed indian civilization and culture significantly in the field of literature. The Agam literature of Jainism is wirtten in the Prakrat. The Jain scholors has created excellent literature in different ages, which is available today in the form of a great treasure. Among these writers Hemachandra of Gujarat was very notable. The Jain writers wrote their books not only in Prakmt, Sanskrit and in the Apbharnsha langauges but also in Kannada, Tamil and Telgu. The Jain writers enriched Indian literatue at one side and at the same time they carried the Indian spiritual musings to the general public also.

(iii) Boddha literature : Ample literature has been created in sanskrit and Pali related to Buddhist philosophy and ideology by the followers of Buddhism. Further literature was created in Sanskrit and dialects on the basis of Buddhas life. Vinay pitaka Sutpitaka, Abhidhamma Pitaka, Avadanshataka, Divyavadana, Manjushrimoolkalpa, the epic Buddhacharita and the Jataka literature are prominent among the Buddhist volumes. All these have enriched the indian literature and helped in the development of languages.

(5) Science : The iron pillar situated in New Delhi since 1600 years is the proof of India's scientific and technical advancement It is a center of attraction for metallurgists.

The higher knowledge of metallurgy in ancient India is recognized by this iron pillor of Kutumbminar in Delhi. Its amazing when we look at this pillor of 24 feet hight, weighing 200 kg which is still standing without being rusted bearing the rains and sunlight from hundreds of years. A stone pillar situated in Keshav mandir Bellur (Karnataka) weighing 20,000 kg and having a height of 40 feet is the example of higher knowledge of Indians about the gravity and the theories of physics.

It is standing without any support and foundation on the plain ground. Indians had the deep knowledge of physics, Chemistry and Botany too.

(6) Mathematics : Discoveryof zero is the largest contribution of India, that was used in the fifth century by Aryabhatta. The decimal system which presents the revolutionry base for the development of mathematics by using the decimal to express the fraction with the integers was formal in India substailially which came in to force into the whole world by the medium of translated books from sanskrit to Arabic and Latin after the seventh century.

Aryabhatta had the knowledge about the process of finding out square root and cube root, the circumference of a circle, permeter of triangle and

quadriletaral, the formulas of finding out the area, the diagonals intersecting each other in a cycleic quadriletaral and their uses arthmetic and geometic progression and their integration etc. More than, the ratio of carcumference and diameter showing the actual value of famous constant '' up to the four palces after thedecimal was discoverd by Arybhatta. Four of Aryabhattas books were translated in to Latin at the later half of seventh century, Bhaskara charya had given the knowledge that if a positive natural number is divided by the zero the quotient would be in finite all the time.

The books Leelawati and Siddhanta Shromani of Bhaskaracharya are the invaluable treasure of the world. Pythogorous theorm which is prevalent now a days in the field of Mathematies had been propounded 2100 years before by Bodhayana which was known as the chitta Pramaya then.

(7) Astrology and Astronomy : On the basis of Mathematics astrology had also witnessed the progress. Aryabhatta was a Mathemetician as well as an Astrologer too. Only he had propounded the principle that earth revolves on its axis and made clear about the reasons solar and lunar eclipies by identifying various planets and constellations. The fundamental astronomical theorics about 12 zodiacs by osbserving the rotation of moon around the earth and the revolving of earth on its axis, 27 counstellatins. lunar moth of 30 days, year of 12 months, adjustment of the difference of lunar and solar year by the use of an extra month (Purushattam Masth) were propounded by the astronomers. Varahmihir Kanad, Nagarjuna, Vagbhatta were the prime astrologers. of ancient India.

(8) Ayurveda : Ayurveda is the oldest medical procedure of the world which is endowed by India. Dhanvantari is considered as the father of Ayurveda. In the world Indians were at the forefront about medicine and chemistry. Purifying the metals and making Bhasm, preparing medicines with herbs, procduction of different natrual colours are the functions practiced since ancient times. Nagarjuna possessed the knowledge about many chemical reactions. Nagarjuna invented the Rasa procedure of medicine (Making Bhasma of various metals and other things and using them as medicines) and introduced the new method in the medical field.

Shushruta is considered as the first surgeon (plastic surgen) of the world. He had the knowledge about surgeries caesarean. Cataract organ transplant stone etc. He had the knowledge of anesthesia too. He describes about more than 100 equipments used in surgeries. Charaka also had an important place in medical science.

Thus the ancient India has an exclusive and important place in the culture and civilization of the world. This is evident from the above history of greater India related to the indian literature, art, Science, Maths, Astrology, Astronomy Ayurveda trade, Commerce and Industry etc.

Important point

1. In ancient times India was famous by the name of the 'golden bird'.
2. The part of Asia where the Indian culture was extended from ancient time to the 10th century is called greater India.
3. Greater India was spread up North-East, South-Central part of Asia, North East and South East Asia.
4. Hindu temples and Buddhist stupas are found almost every where in greater India.
5. Pearls, precious stones, fragrant material, clothes, spices, medicines etc were the main goods export.
6. Trade unions were called Shreni, Shresthi or Gana.
7. Architectural movements of India are found in four forms Stambha (Pillar) Stupa (Mound) buildings or temple, and Guliagriha (cave house).
8. The statue made on the sarnath's pillar of Ashoka is an excellent example of Indian sculpture.
9. Taxila and Nalanda universites and Ujjain, Benaras, Rajgriha and Patliputra were the famous center of higher education.
10. Three languages Sanskrit Prakrit and Pali were popular in ancient India.
11. In the world of Mathematics Decimal point and zero are the discoveries of India which is a gift to the world from India.
12. In Medical science shushurta was the first plastic sergeon of the world.
13. In greater India due to spread of Buddist and Muslim religion, the spread of Indian culture has decline.

Objective type Questions

1. Which country was called Golden Bird is incient time.

(a) China (b) India
(c) Egypt (d) Greece

2. What is Nishk ?

(a) Gold coin (b) Silver coin
(c) Copper coin (d) None of the above

3. Kumarsambhavam and Raguvansham epics are written by -

(a) Kalidasa (b) Koutilya
(c) Bharavi (d) Vishakhdutt

4. Where is the stone pillar situated standing without any foundation on a plain -

(a) In sarnath (b) In Delhi
(c) In Bellur (Karnataka) (d) In Mankuvar

5. The books Lilawati and Siddharat Shiromani are witten by -

(a) Bhaskaracharya (b) Bodhayana
(c) Aryabhatta (d) Nagazjuna

Very Short Answer type Questions

1. Where are the temples of Angkorwat situated?
2. What is the ancient name of Vietnam?
3. In which region of greater India the name of cities were a like Indian cities?
4. What were the trade unions called.
5. Which is the world's first university?
6. Where is the iron pillar situated ?
7. Who determind the actual value of pie ?
8. Who propounded the ''Chitti'' theorm ?
9. Who explained the reasons of solar and lunar eclipses first of all ?
10. Write the names of Indian astrologers ?
11. Which is the most ancient medication system of the world?
12. Who invented the Rasa process of medicine?
13. Who as considered is the first surgeon of the world?
14. What was the ancient name of Thailand ?
15. In which direction is Tibet situated?

Short Answer type Questions

1. Describe the foreign trade in greater India.
2. Which were the major industries of greater India? Mention them.
3. Why the pillars are excellent examples of Indian architecture? Clarify.
4. Describe the achievements of India in the fields of astromy and astrology.
5. Which books were composed in Sanskrit liturature in ancient India?
6. Which were the centres of Indian culture and civilization in greater India? Write their names.
7. In which languages Budhist and jain literature were composed?

Essay type Questions

1. What is greater India? Explain.
2. Describe the structure of greater India.
3. Describe the art of ancient India.
4. Which is the gift of India in the field of mathematics?
5. Clarify the achievement of India in the field of science and medication.
6. Describe trade and commerce in greater India.
7. Describe the propagation of Indian culture in Cambodia.

Answer to objective type question

1. (B) 2. (A) 3. (A) 4. (C) 5. (A)

Chapter - 4

Social Reforms and Religious Renaissance

Indian Religion, Society & Culture had been strong, glorious and prosperous from the ancient time. Uncountable foreign invaders attacked India. Whenever India was attacked by foreign invaders or they administered India. A big stork reached to Indian culture & religion, But the format of our culture remained unchanged and unified even after such attacks.

In this period, due to development of disturbing circumstances, whenever Indian religion & society got affected from traditional beliefs, pomps and social evils etc. entered in the society, then the social and religious reformers and leaders gave the message to destroy such evils in the manner of a reform movement. It may be a Bhakti Movement of middle age or social & religious renaissance of 19th century.

BHAKTI MOVEMENT :-

In India a long & strong convention existed of Devotion (Bhakti).

The beginning of Devotion in the middle age firstly started in South India and the devotees of Lord Vishnu played a very important role in the Reforms Movement.

In India in middle age & pre middle age the main three schools of Bhakti were in existence.

1. Shaiv (Shiv) School

2. Vaishnav School

3. Sufi School

SHAV Thought (Mat) or opinion

The Devotees of lord Shiva were called Shav. There was a time when Shaiv School had been strongest in Hindu Religion. In the records of Pal, Sen and Chandel Kings the prayer starts from "Om Namah Shivai". In South, the followers of Shav were known as 'Naiyarr', they were 63 in numbers. In 12th century in South India 'Veer Shaiv Mat' was started. The followers of this school or Mat (Opinion) were known as 'Lingayat', they used to believe in non violence. In the history of Hindu Religious Renaissance, the name of Shankracharya is specially remembered as a leader, who led the movement speedily. Who established four maths in Badrinath, Puri, Dwarika & Sharnngari (Mysore) respectively. In the long period of time, the Hindus were divided in Shav Matt, Veer Shav, Pashupat, and Kapalik etc.

VAISHNAV Thought (Mat) or opinion

Vaishnav mat or opinion had been very much popular in middle period of India. The worshippers of Lord Vishnu were called as Vaishnav and followers of Vishnu were called as Aalwar in South India. They were 12 in numbers. The Aalwar Saint formulated the principles of Bhati (Adowring) more popular in South India. Such Saints, of course, came from the common class of the society, but they possessed higher values in themselves.

In their education the mixture of Bhakti and Karm knowledge were available. They used to

worship the Sagaoun Bhakti. They developed the literature in Tamil language. The Bhakti movement was expanded in North India afterwards. and in its expansion Ramanand, Vallabhacharya, Madhvacharya, Nimbarkacharya, Ramanujacharya and Chetanya Maha Prabhu, are main Saints. In Rajasthan also in Vashnav community, the Vishnoi community, Jasnathi community, Ramsnehi community, Dadu community, Niranjani community, Charnadasi community and Lal Dasi community etc. took birth and developed also. All these saints belonged to Nirgun community. These Saints also contributed to a great extent in the Social and Renaissance Movements.

SUFI Opinion (Mat)

The Islamic mysticism is called as "Sufism'. The wordly meaning of Sufi is Uon (wool) Sufi Saint used to wear the labada of white cloth like wool (Ruei) and due to this, they were known as Sufi. The Sufi opinion (Mat) and Hindu Ideology were having much more similatries in the field of conventions and beliefs. According to Sufies, the uniformity of God lies in diversity. There are two main objects of Sufism i.e. direct dialogue with god and serve Humanity according to Islam. The main communities in Sufism are Chisit, Suhravardi, Kadri and Naksh Bandi community. The main Sufi Saints includes the names like Shaikh Muhinidin Chisti, Shaikh Hamidudin Nagori, Bhaktiyar Kaki, Nijamuddin oliya, Shaikh Salim, Bahaudin Jakariya, Saddudin Aarif, Shaikh Bukhari etc.

In Middle Period, all these three opinions played very important role in the field of Religious Renaissance. In the next 19th & 20th century also the Religious and Social Reforms movements continued. Such movements also provided remarkable contribution in the field of Renaissance. On the one hand, such movements reduced the Social & Religious Evils, and on the other hand this Renaissance provided a new power & strength to the Indian National Movement.

The Reasons of Social & Religious Renaissance:-

1. The Religion of Indian people's and Society gradually started to become the victim of conventions and Karmkands. The Muslim and Christian Prophets of Religion started to take advantage of such shortcomings and as such the Indian people got influenced by such Religious prophets and Religious Molvi. At such event the Hindus opened their eyes and started to think about the Restrictions to be Imposed on such religious Evils as a necessary step. Hence the Reformers provided new inspiration to the Indian Society as well as to the Religion. They developed the feelings of paying honour to the ancient glory and highest ideals. Such attempts also provided growth to such Reformative movements.
2. The Indians got the opportunities to study and know about westron thoughts and knowledge in the regime of Britishers.
3. The Christian missionaries actively advertised the values of Christian religion. A big reaction developed due to such Religious expansion by missionaries and Indian people started to reduce social & religious evils and made some attempt to become conscious about such movements.
4. The Indian people opposed the British thoughts and living style due to Economic Exploitation of India by Britishers.
5. The Indian Newspapers and literature of the than period, also provided strength to encourage National feelings. Among such Literature, the novel 'Anand Math', 'Komudi conversation' and Marathi novel **'Shivaji'** is to be remembered.
6. In India, the beginning of Printing Press, the publication of Newspapers & Magazine in local and English language from 1875. They made acquainted, the Indians, to know about

and realise about social evils and it inspired to get freedom from such evils.

7. At this time, in Europe also, the Philosophical and Intellectual thinking was at its swing, the free thinking and logicalism was given importance. The Indian Thinkers while following the same method, made acquainted the Europe about Indian culture and knowledge.

8. The thinkers in India also got inspired from the glorious past of India. Many European intellectuals and thinkers liked to get inspiration from such glorious past. William Gones and Max Mooler, translated Indian Ancient Book's in English.

9. In the middle of 19th century, the intellectuals of Bengal, through Calcutta Hindu College, gave birth to the feelings of change in the mind of the people.

10. In this period, great persons like Rajaram Mohan Roy, Swami Dayanand Saraswati, Swami Vivekanand, Keshavchand Sen, Ishwar Chand Vidhya Sagar, Jyotiba Phulle etc. social reformers, provided the element of consciousness in Indian Society & Religion both.

Main Social Reformers :-

1. Brahma Samaj & Raja Ram Mohan Roy-

Raja Ram Mohan Roy

The man of multifaceted talent Raja Ram Mohan Roy was the Pioneer Person for the movements of Social and Religious reforms in India. He is also called the pillar of Indian Nationalism. He was born in Radha Nagar Village of Bengal, on 22nd May 1772.

He was having the knowledge of Arbi, Sanskrit, Pharsi, Bangla language along with the knowledge of greek, hibru languages also. He was very much inspired and influenced from western thoughts. He did not like the bad conventions and blind faith prevailed in the Hindu society. He gave the message to get rid of it. He was also against to Idol worshiping. He established 'Brahma Samaj' on 20th August, 1828 with the object to stop the influence of Christian religion and to get relievedthe Indian people from the bad conventions. The basis of Bramb Samaj is mainly 'Vaid' and Upnishads.

The main Principles of 'Brahma Samaj' are as under:-

i. God is one, creator of the world, protector, vivid, uncountable and shapeless.

ii. The worshiping of 'god' should be done with spiritual feelings without any discrimination of caste or community.

iii. To realise and to get rid of from the sinful actions and bad habits, is the only way to get freedom from such things.

iv. Soul is immortal. It is responsible with the god only.

v. Prayer is necessary for spiritual progress.

vi. All are equal in the eyes of god and it accepts the pray of all equally.

vii. Brahma Samaj believes in the theory of results oriented action.

viii. It believes in the investigation of truth.

Brahma Samaj used to be tolerant for all the religion. It was made clear at the time of establishment of Brahma Samaj, that all the people, without any discrimination, can use the Samaj for the establishment of the Sovereignty of 'Eternal Truth'. In this Samaj no Idol, of any one will be established, No animal will be slaughtered and no other religion will be criticised.

Raja Ram Mohan Roy got inspiration from the

incident of his Bhabhi who got Sati, (went into fire in a living state) to oppose the Sati Pratha. He made the attempts to legislate law against 'Sati Pratha' and it was declared unlawful in the Act of the year 1829. It was made by William Bentik.

Leaving a side this action, Rajaram Mohan Roy also opposed child marriage, untouchability, multi marriage and Intoxication etc. He established the Vedanta College, English School and Hindu College in Calcutta. He published Sanvad Koumudi in Bangla, 'Miratul' Newspaper in Pharsi and Brahmbkalin magazine in English language.

In the year 1833, Rajaram Mohan Roy expired in Bristal city of England. After the death of Rajaram Mohan Roy, Devendra Nath Tagore and Keshav Chand Sen made the progress of this institution. Afterwards Brahmb Samaz got divided into two parts, one was 'Aadi Samaz' and the other was Indian 'Bramb Samaz'. In the year 1867 Atmaram Pandurang established 'Pratha Samaz' being influenced from Bramb Samaz, which was after wards got progress by the efforts of Mahadev Govind Ranade. At the first time 'Brahmb Samaz' started such reforms and due to such functions, Rajaram Mohan Roy is also known as Renonior of New Era.

2. Swami Dayanand Saraswati & Arya Samaj (Society)-

Likewise Bramb Samaz, 'Arya Samaz' also took the mission of Social & religious reforms at the national level. Swami Dayanand Saraswati was the founder of 'Arya Samaz'. **He was born in 1824** era in the Tankara district of morvi area of Gujarat state , in the traditional family of Brahmin caste. In the childhood his name was "Mool Shanker'.

Dayanand Saraswati

One day, he could see that in the temple, a rat was sitting on the top of 'shivling' and was eating prashad, it made him to disbelieve the worshipping of idols. At the age 21 years, he left the house and accepted his teacher (guru) to Swami Virganand Ji of Mathura. He got the education and knowledge of Veds from him. His teacher told him that 'live and teach veds'. He was the first person who accepted Hindi as National Language and the 'Swaraj' as the basis of works & actions.

From the year 1864, Swami Ji started preaching publicly. The main object of Swami Ji was to abolish the evils of Hindu Samaj & Religion. He was having full faith and attachment with the Ancient Vedic civilization, culture & Religion. While staying in Udaipur in year 1874, he wrote the most famous book 'Satyarth Prakash' and he established 'Arya Samaz' on 10th April, 1875.

Main principles of Arya Sama are in the following manner:-

1. To emphasise on the truthfulness of 'Veds'
2. To worship though Havan and mantra, according to Vedic methodology.
3. To get Rid of telling a lie and to apply the truth in the life, was highly emphasised.
4. To increase the Education & to remove illiteracy.
5. To oppose ancient beliefs, idol worshipment and Avatarism.
6. Female education and widows to be remarried, to be encouraged.
7. God is most powerful, shapeless and eternal.
8. All persons should behave with affection to each other as per the norms of their religion, was emphasised.
9. To expand and to increase importance of Hindi & Sanskrit language.

10. To understand that the enrichment and betterment of all the people is helpful to his progress.

Swami Dayanand Saraswati criticised the prevailing bad conventions in the society and received public support in setting aside such situation. He also opposed untouchability, child marriage, killing of female child, veil conventions among ladies, idol worshiping, religious blind beliefs and old traditions. He supported the ladies education and right of ladies. He told that the right to study veds of ladies are equally available rights of gents in the society. Arya Samaz always believed in the movement in the society. He also emphasised to allow such persons to adopt Hindu religion, who got converted to other religion due to some specific circumstances.

Swami Dayanand Saraswati also provided strength to the Indian National Movement. He at the first time used the word 'Swaraj' (Government of Indians) for the achievement of Freedom. He made to understand the people to use local products and to discard foreign products. He told that "Swaraj is always better than Foreign Rule, even if there might be maximum Evils".

The 'Arya Samaj' also contributed a lot in the field of Education. In the name of Arya Samaz there are so many schools, colleges, Gurukuls and other institutions are being regulated and running, which have made a great contribution in the progress of Educational field.

Swami Dayanand Saraswati passed his last days in the state of Rajasthan. On 30th October, 1883 he expired in Ajmer.

3. Ram Krishna Mission and Swami Vivekanand-

Swami Vivekanand made acquainted to the whole world about the qualities and good values of Indian culture, religion and society. He got birth in the family of Vishwanath Datta of Bengal on 12th January, 1863. His childhood name was Narendra Nath Dutt. Swami Ji was having a specific Influence on him, of his mother Smt. Bhuvaneshwari Devi. He studied western philosophy along with Indian philosophy. He was having much more interest towards spiritualness, since child hood.

Swami Vivekanand

He met, his teacher (guru) Ram Krishna Paramhans, in the year 1881, in South, who made him to feel & realise about the affection with God. Since that time Swami Vivekanand started to be a student of Ram Krishna Paramhans.

Swami Vivekanand was aiming at three major functions:-

1. To discuss and to explain the 'Religion' in such a way by which it could be recognised by all people, it was the first motive.

2. The faith of Indian people decreased towards religion due to western education, so to restore the faith & attachment towards religion was his second motive.

3. To develop the feeling of 'self pride' in Hindus, was his third motive.

Swami Ji explained the meaning of religion, it means that religion is the development of good values, which is inside the human beings living religion, is neither in existence in religious books nor in existence in the religious principles. It only resides in the feelings and thoughts of a man.

Swami Vivekanand started moving in the various areas of India, since 1891. He tried to know about position and miserable state of Indians. He got the golden opportunity to participate in world level Religious conference in Chicago (America) in the year 1893. He reached to attend this conference after overcoming a lot of problems and Barriers. Swami Ji made the world acquainted by his lecture about the strength and ability of India in the field of solving

the problems of any kind of the world. India is fully empowered with the wisdom in the field of intellectualism, religious, good character, spiritual and philosophical to the extent that no other country is empowered in this field and having no comparison. Swami Ji got all the audiences fully influenced by his affectionate lecture. On the next day in the local newspaper 'Harold' it was written that "In the Parliament of Religion, Vivedakant is the only great person". It appears after hearing his lecture that to improve such a knowledgeable country (India) it is a talk of foolishness to send Foreign Religious Preachers"

Swami Vivekananda was the student of Vedant Philosophy. He was of the opinion that Vedant develops our self confidence and consciousness. Swami Ji insisted upon the object to eliminate illiteracy and poverty and to help the orphans. He protected Indian nationalism and inspired to worship India as a 'mother'. He provided inspiration to the youth that always have the feeling of attachment towards the country.

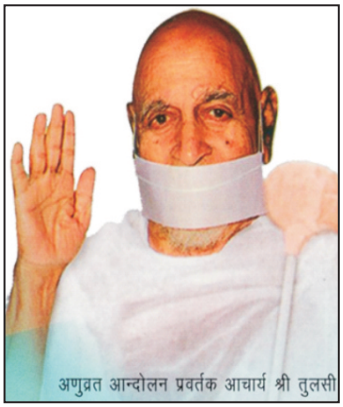
Swami Vivekananda established Ram Krishna mission on 05th May, 1897 in 'Bellur' of Calcutta with the mission to advertise at the higher level the preachings and educational values of his teacher (guru) Ram Krishna. Before this in 1887 A.C. Era, Ram Krishna Math was established in Tara Nagar. Swami Ji started the advertisement and expansion of values and organisation setup of the society, through Ram Krishna Mission. But the legitimate position came into being in 1903 after his death, when it was registered as a community.

Ram Krishna mission is having various branches in India as well in foreign countries. Ram Krishna mission stands for such values, ideals and principles, which can be adopted by people of all kinds of cultures and religion. Through the mission the work of, preachings the people and to develop treatment, Educations, and to provided help to the sufferers of famine, earthquake, flood and infectious diseases, used to be done.

Swami Vivekanand carries a very important position in the field of human services. He used to criticise the Stereosity (Traditionalism), blind faith, poverty and illiteracy. He never accepted the untouchability and class based differences. He also encouraged the feelings of public welfare.

4. Acharya Tulsi & Anuvrat Movement

India got independence and freedom on 15th August 1947, after a long period of Foreign rule. People got generated new expections in the golden morning of freedom, but the news which was reaching after the newly got independence, were very much full of anxiety.


अणुव्रत आन्दोलन प्रवर्तक आचार्य श्री तुलसी

Violence communal tension, unsocial environment and increasing trend of immorality, shocked the soul of ninth Acharya Tulsi, belonging to Terapanth community of Jain Shwetamber religion.

In his mind a very natural question arose whether we got freedom to face such situations? The freedom fighters of National movement saw the dreams, whether such were the dreams, which they presumed. Love of people, what they didn't do, to get freedom? Whether, the environment of violence, killing each other, communal tension Rapes, corruption, immoral actions etc, will be able to protect the freedom? Looking to such situations Acharya Tulsi, realised his duties and thought that this is not the time to keep mum or silence. His heart awakened. He started to provide a new direction to the unsound society with oath.

The man who took such oath, was Acharya Tulsi, the 09th Acharya of Terapanth Society of Shvetamber Jain Religion. Acharya Tulsi was born on Kartik Shukla Dvitiya of 1971 A.C., in the village

namely 'Ladnu' of Nagore district. His father's name was Jumar Mal Khetar (Oswal) and mother's name was Vadna Ji. He received the initiation (determination) of becoming Muni, by the blessings of Asthmacharya Kulu Gani of Terapant, when he was of eleven (11) years only. At the very early stage, while attaining the age of 22nd year only, He became the Acharya of Terapanth Religious organization. He took a lot of revolutionary steps through such religious organisation.

Prexa Dhyan, Science of Life and Anuvrat Movement are some of such revolutionary steps.

He was a spontaneous poet, excursion writer, researcher, a man of progressive thoughts, social reformer and fully against the traditions. He expired on 23rd June 1997 in Gangashar (Bikaner)

Such revolutionary personality like Acharya Tulsi who took the oath to provide a new direction to India, such opportunity was received by Sardarshar (Distt. Churu) On 1st March, 1949 among the ten thousand audiences Acharya Tulsi announced, "Anuvrat thoughts movement", while interpreting the National, Social and worldly situations, in the reference to provide a new power to moral values. And he explained the importance of code of conduct of Anuvrat to all the human beings and realised them to awaken, for the compliance of one's duties. He also explained the rules and framework of Anuvrat. While explaining all the rules of Anuvrat, he provided the information about 75 rules. He explained the importance of such rules like 'Anu means importance of fast'. After hearing the analysis of such rules, momently 71 persons decided to become follower of Anuvrat and they took the oath for the becoming Anuvrati.

The rules of Anuvrat were meant for all the persons of the society, like Businessmen, students, advocates, politicians, industrialists, doctors, engineers etc. The main object of Anuvrat was to advertise its principles and to ensure that all the persons in the society are working according to such principles and the morality is being established in the field of life. For examples- the businessmen should not measure in less quantity, not to mix unwanted elements in the goods, and not to store much, for creating the crisis of shortage of materials, the students should not copy in examinations, and should pay respect to the teachers. Such rules were meant for all the followers of Anuvrat. The declaration of Anuvrat movements reacted much in the society and it started to expand from Kashmir to Kanyakumari and from Assam to Rajasthan.

The former President Dr. Rajendra Prasad and the former Prime Minister Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru, Jai Prakash narayan etc. fully admired such movement. Acharya Tulsi was recognised as the founder and path finder of this movement.

Although this Anuvrat movement, was started by Acharya Tulsi, being the Acharya of Jain Terapanth religious organisation, but this movement was of such nature that it did not join any religious organisation and as such any person who might be of any caste, religion or society, could become Anuvrati in his walk of life.

Anuvrat always opposed the castism, communalism, untouchability etc. The class of women were paid full respect. This is a pure movement for the expansion of morality and strongness of good character and values, in the society. It is a movement for humanity, this can be called as the religion of the century or it may be called synomatically as a religion of human beings. This gives the inspiration to live without any intoxination and gives priority to authenticity in life. This is neither any Ism nor any religion and it is not a movement being protected and sponsored by any politician or industrialist. This is purely a movement without any violence but it is meant only for the welfare of human beings. It is a Anuvrati movement without any pressure, but to become Anuvrati voluntary.

The rules of this movement are separately made out for various sects like businessmen, teachers, students, advocates, politicians,

industrialists, doctors, engineers etc. They may follow the rules according to their interest. Basically, all the rules have been classified in 11 rules in the form of code of conduct for all the classes of the society.

Code of Conduct of Anuvrat:-

1. I will never kill any innocent person at any time.
   - Will not commit suicide.
   - Will not kill the child in womb.
2. I will not attack at all.
   - Will not support the policy of attacking.
   - Will make attempts for the disarmament and peace in the world.
3. I will not participate in destructive oriented work.
4. I will have faith in the unity of human beings.
   - I will not underestimate any person on the basis of caste or colour etc.
   - I will not follow untouchability.
5. I will bear religious tolerance.
   - I will not support communal violence.
6. I will be honest in the field of profession and behaviour.
   - I will not harm anybody for self selfishness.
   - I will not be untruthful in mutual behaviour.
7. I will decide the limits of collecting wealth and period (Brambhcharya) unmarried life.
8. I will not do any immoral work in relation to selecting the choice or election field.
9. I will not give any shelter to socially bad conventions of the society.
10. I will live the life, completely free of intoxications.
    - Will not use intoxicating things like wine, charas, ganja, choras, heroine, bhang, tobacco etc.
11. I shall be conscious about the protection of good environment.
    - Will not cut green trees.
    - Will not misuse the consumption of water and electricity.

For all Anuvraties, it is mandatory to adopt & follow compulsorily all the principles of Anuvrat. There are lakhs of people in the country who are living as Anuvraties and who are advertising the moral values, peacefulness, coexistence and brotherhood. Anuvrat committees are working in the country for expanding Anuvrat.

5. Maharishi Parashurama

Parashurama was the sage of Treata era. He was born in Bhrigu vansh. His father's name was Jamadagni and Mother's name was Renuka. Delighted by sonsatship yagya organized by Maharishi Jadagni, he was born on vaishak shula tritiya (Akshaya Tritya). He was the fifth child of his parents and he is sixth incarnation of Lord Vishnu. He is also known as the incarnation of charge, after his birth, father named him Ramabhadra after his name keeping ceremony. Due to being the son of Jamdagni, he is also known as jamdagneya and being born in the bhigu dynasty, he is known as bhargava. He always respected parents and elders and he obeyed them. Parshruram's initial education was completed by his mother Renuka in the ashram. His upbringing was done in the picturesque environment of nature in the ashram. So he had lively relation with Shiv nature animals and birds. He understood the dialect of birds and was also proficient in talking to them. He used to be friend of many violent wild creatures by his behavior. After that he received education by staying in the ashram

of Maharishi Vishwamitra and Hrichik Rishi. Influenced by his abilities Maharishi Kashyapa gave him vaishnavi mantra and maharishi hrichik gave him sarang named deevya dhanusha. He was a strong devotee of Shiva, he pleased lord shiva's through hard austerity on the kailash mountain and received vidhyadabhi parshu and he began to be called Rambhadra from Parshuram.

Parshuram wanted to spread propaganda of vedik culture in the world. Even though he himself being a Brahamin used the right of khashatriya as a weapon and proud to false that description of man is determind from worth not by karma. The were very powerful them sevels.

Parshuram was committed for the honour of the woman. He try to awaken the woman, Lopa Mudra, wife of Rishi Atri, Anusuya wife of Augustya. In the era of Mahabharata, when ganga son bhishm had kidnapped Amba, the daughter of Kashiraj, he also fight with bhishm to protect him. During the tretayuga in sitaswaymber, when Shri Ram broke shiva's bow, his roar filled. Its ejaculation spread through out the universe there was also a dispute with anuj Laxman of Shri Ram on the subject but when the came ti know that the lord Shiv Purshotam Shri Ram dissolved the bow, quietly gone from there.

Parshuram was also the ultimate "gobakta". This dynastic ruler karthvirajirajna has received the blessing of freshening, with a ruthless penance shiva dattatreya appering to worship in the ego of power shashtra bahu defeated kamdhenu given by devraj indra, in the ashram of rishi Jamdagni after killing the enemies kapila kamdhenu returned to the parshuram and took the ashram.

Parshuram was also a great donater. By defeating the Haiyya vansh's kings he performed Ashva Megha Yag and the entire land was donated to Maharishi Kashyap. After this he abandoned his wepons and on the Mahendra mountains he made the ashram for tapasya. According to aancient histroy and purans these mythologies, it is believed that there are seven such great man in the world to be immortal and all the divine power are endowed with parshuram in it. Even today, he is present on mahendra mountain. A man remain for larger period in his life and healthy through remembering him daily in the morning.

Important Points

1. The main object of the religious & social reforms movement of 19th Era, was to eradicate the wrong traditions & conventions, prevailing in the society.
2. Mr. William Jones & Max Mooler translated a lot of Indian mythological books into English.
3. Raja Ram Mohan Roy was the Pioneer of Indian Renaissance.
4. The religious & social reforms movement, played a very important role in National Movement.
5. Raja Ram Mohan Roy and Swami Saraswati established in the year 1828 and Arya Samaj in 1875, respectively.
6. In the world level religion, organised in Chicago, in the year 1893, Vivekanand was recognised as one of the greatest personalities of the world.
7. Swami Dayanand Saraswati written the most popular book, namely "Satyarth Prakash" in Hindi in the year 1874, while residing in Udaipur.
8. Swami Dayanand Saraswati was the first person, who used the word "Swaraj".
9. Swami Dayanand Saraswati expired at Ajmer, in the 1883 Era.
10. Acharya Tulsi was the Pioneer of Anuvrat Movement.
11. Anuvrat movement is the movement of morality, which is not connected with any religion or community.

Objective Questions:-

1. Arya Samaj was established by whom?
   (a) Raja Ram Mohan Roy
   (b) Keshav Chand Jain
   (c) Swami Dayanand Saraswati
   (d) Devendra Nath Tagore
2. Who is known as the Pioneer of Indian Renaissance?
   (a) Swami Vivekanand
   (b) Swami Dayanand Saraswati
   (c) Ishwar Chandra Vidhyasagar
   (d) Raja Ram Mohan Roy
3. The conversation 'Komudi' was published by whom?
   (a) Raja Ram Mohan Roy
   (b) Swami Vivekanand
   (c) Ram Krishna Paramhans
   (d) Devendra Nath Tagore
4. In which year 'Brambh Samaj' was established?
   (a) In 1862 (b) In 1828
   (c) In 1875 (d) In 1893
5. What was the name of Swami Dayanand Saraswati in childhood?
   (a) Narendra Nath Dutt (b) Mool Shanker
   (d) Jata Shanker (d) Bhawani Shanker
6. Who is the pioneer of 'Anuvrat Movement'
   (a) Dayanand Saraswati (b) Vivekanand
   (c) Keshav Chandra Sen (d) Acharya Tulsi

Very Short Answer Type Questions:-

1. In which year & month, Swami Vivekanand Saraswati was born?
2. At which place, Swami Dayanand Saraswati was born?
3. Who was the founder of 'Aadi Brambh Samaj'?
4. At which place Swami Dayanand Saraswati was expired?
5. When Anti 'Sati Pratha' law was enacted?
6. Who started the 'Anuvrat Movement'?
7. What is the meaning of 'Anuvrat'?

Short Answer Type Questions:-

1. What do you know about 'Shudhi Movement'?
2. Who was Ram Krishna Paramhans?
3. What is the contribution of Raja Ram Mohan Roy in the National Movement?
4. Describe the primary informative things about Swami Vivekanand?
5. Explain the main objects of 'Arya Samaj'?
6. What is Anuvrat movement?
7. Explain the Social Reforms made by the 'Brambh Samaj'?
8. Explain the contribution of Swami Dayanand Saraswati in National Movement?

Essay Type Questions:-

1. Explain the main reasons of the Indian Renaissance, started in 19th century.
2. Write about the messages, preachings and life of Raja Ram Mohan Roy.
3. Write about the life and principles of Swami Dayanand Saraswati.
4. Write an essay on 'Anuvrat Movement'.
5. Write about the contribution of Swami Vivekanand in the field of Indian Society, Religion and National Movement.

Answer to objective type question

1. (c) 2. (d) 3. (a) 4. (b) 5. (d) 6. (d)

Chapter - 5

Major Events of the World

There had been a lot of ups and down in the cycle of worldly incidents, from 18th century to 20th century. India was also affected by such incidents. The starting of British Regime in India and its abolition in the year 1947, can be called as the most important incident in the history of modern world. Likewise the revolution of France and Russia, the Independence Battle of America, the expansion of colonisation by the Westron countries, the First and Second World War, the establishment of United Nations Organisations etc, are some of the main incidents. The consideration becomes necessary to think about the country like England, which reached to the Militant Power and strongest country of the world, how the whole Imperialism of England reached to an end ?

French Revolution of (1789 E.C.)

The French Revolutions of (1789 E.C.) was much more important incident. The glorious revolution of 1688 E.C. of England & the Independent Battle of America. This revolution was against Autocratic Ruler, who exploited economically, and it was against inequality also. The main reasons of this movement are explained in the following way:-

1. Political Circumsrances-

The King of France, Louis 16th, was autocrat, dictator and full of rights, being protected by God. The 'will' of the king was law in itself. He was very expensive and wisdomless administrator. For many years the meeting of 'Estate General' was not called. Due to wisdomless policy of Louis, the colonies like India & America were lost from the Empire of France and the France was defeated in 7th year war.

2. Social Inequalities-

In France a class was empowered with Priviliges as a aristocratic class. The powerless class of the society, in which general class and middle class were included, were being exploited by King, Pastor and Fudeal Persons. The condition of the farmers was very poor because of torture of Fedual class. This caused to increase the dissatisfaction in the society of France.

3. Economic Reasons-

At this time, the economic condition of France became worst. The main reasons for this condition was, heavy expenditure of wars, defective tax system and control less unwanted expenses of kingship. The higher class of the society was kept free from tax burden, whereas the public was put under a big burden of taxation. There was no accounting system of the income and expenditure. As such as the revolution was much more expected.

4. Religious Dissatisfaction-

At this time there were one lakh twenty five religious pastors in France. Some Pastors were living very luxurious life, whereas some pastors were even not having the sources of two time meals. The properties of churches were not sutting to the minds of poor and hungry people of France. The religious tax, namely 'Taiyth' which was voluntary in nature but the recovery of such tax was made compulsory by churches. This also increased the

dissatisfaction.

5. The Impact of American Freedom Movement-

The soldiers of French Milatry, reached America, to co-operate in freedom movement. From there, they received the inspiration of liberty, self respect and patriotism. The burden of loans on the treasury of France was increased due to such participation. The American Freedom Movement became a source of inspiration to French Revolution.

6. The Rise of Middle Class-

In France, the farmers and labourers were not capable to oppose the Aristocratic class. The middle class of the society fulfilled this shortcoming. This class was comprised by thinkers, teachers, businessmen, advocates, doctors etc. All these sections wanted to improve the conditions of France.

7. Intellectual Awakening-

At this time in France the philosophers and writers highlighted the conventions and old glory of the country and awakened the society. Such intellectuals includes specially the names like Rousseau, Waltayer, Montesquieu & Didro. Montesquieu opposed the divine rights of the king whereas Rousseau pleaded for the freedom of the individuals. Rousseau has written that the human beings are possessing the rights of liberty, equality & fraternity from the ancient period.

8. The Downfall of Bestil- Momentum Reason-

On 5th May 1789, after 15 years, on the advise of Finance Minister Briyan the conference of estate general was called upon. This was prayed before the king that the inequality, exploitation, privileges and jobless practice should be put to an end. The members of third house (general class) wanted that all the three houses should have a joint session, but while leaving some members like Priests of First and Second House, no other member turned up. On 17th June, the third house declared itself as National Assembly.

One scene of French Revolution

On 20th June, the members of third house reached for the meeting, but the door of Assembly Houses was closed. So the members gaddered, before the Assembly House in Tennis Court, held the meeting of the Assembly and took the oath, that till a constitution is not put forth in France, the meeting will not be disbursed. The King gave recognition to the National Assembly on 14th July 1789, the crowd which was full of anger, attacked Bestil and got released of all the prinoners. From this incident, the French Revolution got started.

The Format of the Revolution:-

The downfall of Bestil, was an indicator of the success of the people oppositing against the dictatorship of the king. On 4th August 1789, the National Assembly eradicated the Rights of Feduals of France. On 17th August 1789, the National Assembly declared the Rights of Liberty, equality and fraternity along with fundamental rights. On 05th October 1789, thousands of ladies entered forcefully into the Palace (Mahal) of Varsai, with he slogans to provide Bread and got arrested inside the Mahal of the King and Queen of France. In 1791 E.C. the new constitution of France was got prepared, and the main basis of this constitution was "will of the people" (Sovereingty of People). In this constitution the powers of executive, legislature, and judiciary were made separately and as such the

'constitutional Kingship' started instead of 'Dictatorial Kingship'. First time, the written constitution came into existence. On 20th June 1791, in the night hours, the King Louis 16th along with his wife, ran away from France, in fancy dress. On the second day some people identified them at midnight, near the territory of France, and got them back to Paris. Now the king was kept as a Prisoner under detention in the palace and ultimately in 1793 E.C., the king was hanged till death.

The Results of French Revolution:-

Not only in Europe, but in the whole world, the French Revolution keeps a special place in the history. According to Haizen-The French Revolution gane birth to the new concept of state. This revolution affected most of the important incidents of the world. The main results of this revolution are as under :

1. This revolution put **to** an end to the concept of Fedualistic Administration based on Economic Exploitation. In other countries also, the Fedualistic System of government was put to an end. The King, Queen and his Kith and kins were slaughtered. As such the autocratic and dictatorial government of Louis 16th was eliminated.
2. In the field of religion the elements of religious tolerance and liberalness were encouraged. The attempt was made to put to end the inequality based on religion.
3. This revolution encouraged the feelings of liberty, equality & fraternity. The constituent assembly declared the fundamental rights.
4. This revolution provided a path to the concept of socialistic pattern of society.
5. The prestige and influence of aristocratic class was decreased.
6. The political parties took birth, after the French Revolution.
7. The revolution provided equal position to poor and rich persons in the eyes of justice and law. The privileges of rich persons were eliminated forever.

The Revolution of Russia- 1917 E.C.

The revolution took place in Russia in the year 1917 D.C. against the corrupt, disqualified and autocratic government of the then King Jhar. And this revolution eliminated the rule of Jharshai. In the March 1917 & Nov. 1917, two revolutions took place in Russia. The revolution of March eliminated the rule of Jharshai and the revolution of November gave rise to the democracy of farmers and labours, this is also called as 'Bolshevik Revolution'. The main reasons of the revolutions are as under:

1. Dictatorial Jharshai-

The rulers of Russia uses to believe in the divine rights to rule over the people. All powers were vested in Jhar only. The parliament (Duma) was having no powers of any kind. Jhar Alexander 3rd and Nivkolas 2nd adopted the War and Repressive Policies.

2. Social Inequalities-

In Russia, there were two classes one was having monopoly of all rights and the other one was having no rights. On most of the land government, the control of Aristocratic class was there which was being blessed by Jhar. The quantity of the lower class was much in Russia, but they were having no rights or rather they were rightsless. This situation developed dissatisfaction.

3. Dissatisfaction of Labour Class-

In Russia also, due to Industrial Revolution, so many industries and business were established and it increased the number of labourers continuously. The industrialists used to export the labour class, they were being paid less salary. But the government always gave support to industrialists only. So, the labour class developed labour organisations and took the assistance from strikes. From the labour strikes the beginning of revolution took place and the labour class demanded and wanted the

government of proletariat class.

4. The Agitation of Farmers-

The condition of farmers in Russia, was also very poor. The landless farmers used to work on the land of Vassals. They were kept under so many restrictions. In 1905 E.C. the revolts of farmers took place at so many places.

5. The Unfair Governance of Jhar Nikolas 2nd

The Jhar Nikolas 2nd, was missing the political understandings He could be influenced by anyone at anytime. He was under the influence of Queen Alexandra. Both the King and Queen were under the influence of one Monk namely 'Rasputin'. In the year 1916 E.C. Rasputin was also assassinated, but the administrative control of Jhar continued to be weakned and full of carelessness.

6. The Intellectual Awakening in Russia-

The liberal thoughts of westron Europe started entering in Russia, due to intellectual awakening. The novels of Tolstoy and Turknev and the Socialistic thoughts of Kal Marks and Bakunin, influenced the people of Russia.

7. The Impact of Russification Policy-

The non Russian castes like Poul, Checke, Jewis, Tatar, Ujback, Kazzad etc. used to reside in big quantity in Russia. The rulers of Russia adopted the policy of "one Russia, one Jhar, one Religion". The Russiafication policy of Jhar was heavily opposed by the other castes living in Russia.

8. Corrupt and Disqualified Bureaucracy-

In the Bureaucracy of Russia corruption was heavily spread out. The Aristocratic people, occupying the higher posts in governance, were always believed in sycophancy of Jhar. The main reason of defeat of sycophancy of Russia in First World War, was the bad performance of Bureaucracy.

9. Instantaneous Reasons-

The people of Russia got frustrated due to continuous defeat of Russia in First World War and the problems arouse out of such defeat. In Russia demand was raised to stop the war, but the government was not in support of calling back the war. And as such the people started opposing the policies of the government. The instantaneous reason was lack of food.

Formate of the Revolution-

The labour class, being worried about the fulfilment of appetite, went on strike in Partroguard in the month of March 1917. The slogans, like 'Provide Bread and the Anancry must be eliminated", arose in the field of dissatisfaction among the labourers. The military men were ordered to fire on the labours, but they refused to act upon such orders. The Amunation and Arms were taken back from the police. The King suspended the Parliament (Duma). The Jhar, was compelled to quit the position of kingship. In the leadership of Krensky, the temporary government was formed. This government could not continue for a long time. In the year 1917 the volunteers of Bolshevik and Military persons took possession on government buildings, telephone exchanges, railway station etc. of Petroguard. The powers and the position of government went into the hands of Lenin, the leader of agitators and in the Russia the Dictatorial government of the Proletariats came into existence.

The Results of Revolution-

1. The Dictatorial Rule of Jhar, in Russia was put to an end. In July 1918, Jhar Nikolas and his family members, were killed with the bullets of guns.
2. In the leadership of Lenin, the Dictatorial form of government of Proletariats came into being.
3. The Russia, entered a treaty of Brastlitovask, within Germany and government, got separated from the field of First World War. After the revolution, Russia got rise as a one of the worldly power.

4. The whole communist movement in the world was highly encouraged due to the successful revolutions of Russia.
5. The Dictatorial form of governments was encouraged in the world. Under the leadership of Hitler in Germany and Mussolani in Italy, the Dictatorship form of the government was developed.
6. The conditions of the farmers and labour class were improved in the world. The labour unions were given the rights of participation in the management of industries.
7. The concept of equality, compulsory but free education, and freedom and liberties to the women class, was encouraged in the Russia.
8. After increasing in powerful position of Russia the world got divided into two parts on the basis of ideologies. The communist front, in the leadership of Russia and the capitalistic front in the leadership of America and other capitalistic countries.
9. The feelings of liberty and nationality got spread out in Europe and Asia as well.

First World War (1914-18 E.C.)

The First World War, being fought from 1914 to 18th century, was the most important incident in the history of the world. The whole world was heavily influenced. This war brought so many revolutionary changes in the world.

The main reasons of the 1st World War are as under:-

1. Secret Treaties and Birth of Two Groups-

Before the First World War, the Bismarck of Germany made a lot of diplomatic treaties and kept the France aloof in the Europe. But likewise France did some treaties with England & Russia and developed a front of three countries, against the three countries, i.e. Germany, Australia and Italy. The world got divided into two fronts or groups i.e. Allied Powers and Axis Nations. The First World War was the demonstrations of powers by both the groups or fronts.

2. Armaments and Militarism-

In the second half of 19th century (E.C.), in most of the countries of Europe, encouraged the Militarism and increased the Arms & Ammunations. Germany defeated Australia, on the strength of Military Powers. Now, France, Russia and England also started increasing the Military powers. Under such situations the War became a must to take place at anytime in near future.

3. The Effect of Imperialism-

After the Industrial Revolution, the ambition of becoming most prospersous and full of powers, developed in the European countries. They started establishing the Imperialism, with the purpose to get raw material and to self finished goods, this selfish interest encouraged the setting up of Imperialism. England, France, Germany, Italy, etc. captured the countries like Canada, Australia, Bharat, Africa and some nations of Asia. The imperialistic competition also developed the situation of struggle among themselves.

4. Effects of Newspapers-

At this juncture in Europe, in the newspapers, the news and views, encourasing the 1st World War, used to be published in the newspapers, now-a-days, the news about allegeing each other by the countries involving in the war, being encouraged and the essays on jealousness were published in the newspaper. In one eminent newspaper, these lines were published that "Russia is ready, France should be prepared to get Ready".

5. The Feelings of Nationality-

Under the garb of nationality, the emotions of nationality was being increased. Each and every country was ready to destroy other county, so as to protect its honour, development, expansion and the glory of the country. France wanted Alsae and Loren religious, whereas due the force of nationality, the

communities like Poll, Check, Surb & Ballar, wanted to get separated from Ausralia.

6. The Ambitions of Kesar William-

The German King, Kesar William wanted to made Germany as a world power. After undergoing a treaty with Turkey, Germany constructed the Railway Line namely- German Bagdad Railway Line. It made England annoyed, after developing the Naval Forces. It explained the views that for the development of Germany, the development in expanding the powers in regard to Naval Military field was necessary.

7. The Non Existence of International Organisation-

At that time, there was no international organisation, who could separate the countries from the Battle Field after making a Mediatorship. After the end of First World War, such organisation came into existence.

8. International Crisis and Effect of Walton War-

Among the events of International incidents of the country, the countries of world, became enemy of each other and divided into two Militant Fronts or groups. The Battle between Russia and Japan, Moracko and Agidar crisis, the occupying of Bosnica & Harjgovina by Austria and Battle of War (1912-13 A.C.) are some major crisis of such nature.

9. Instantaneous Reasons-

In Garbia, the opposite views regarding Austria were there, due to the grounds of Bosniya & Harjgovina under such circumstances, the Prince of Austria and his wife were assassinated openly by two young persons on 28th June 1914, in the Sarajovo, the capital of Bosniya. Due to such killing of Prince along with wife, compelled Austria to attack on Sarbiya on 28th June 1914. Russia started the war and bought it for the protection of Sarbiya. Germany also declared world war against Russia. With this event and incident, the First World War was started.

The Nature of the War :-

In this war, on the one side there were Allied Nations and on the other side Axis Nations were in thebattle field. Among the Allied Powers or Nations, there were England, France, America, Italy, Serbiya, Portegils, Rumania, China, Australia, Canada & South Africa. Among the Axis Nations there were Germany, Austria, Hungary, Turkey & Poulgeriya for supporting each other and to fight the Battle with Allied Nations. In the beginning early years the Axis Powers were more powerful & effective. But, in the mean time, Russia withdrawn itself from the group of Allied Powers and in the year 1918, undergone a treaty with Germany, i.e. the treaty of Brest Litovask. With the victory of Allied powers in the war on 11th November 1918 at 11.00 AM the war was declared to be stopped and such 1st world war was ended. After the war, the peace conference in Paris was called upon and with the separate Nations, separate treaties were done. With Germany, the treaty of Versailles took place.

Results of the War :-

1. There was a huge loss of people and property in the world war. About six million soldiers took part in the war, out of which about one million thirty lakhs soldiers were killed and about 2 million twenty lakhs soldiers were injured. In the war, about one kharab and eighty six arab dollars were spent and about one kharab property was put to loss.
2. In Germany, Russia, Austria, the Dictatorial form of the Kingship was put to end or were eliminated.
3. After the end of the war, a lot of changes took place through various peace treaties, and Chekoslowakiya, Yugoslowakiya, Lithuaniya, Lateviya, Astoniya, Finland, Poland etc. new states were emerged.
4. The various governments were formed, based

on the different ideologies. In Russia, communist government, Nazamim in Germany, & Fasism in Italy governments were formed.

5. In the war period, America provided loans to Allied Nations and provided economic co-operation. In the Paris peace conference the American President Wilson, played a very important role. The influence of America was increased due to this war.

6. During the war women played a very important role in the field of wealth and domestic front and as such, the condition of women started improving.

7. The seeding of 2nd World War, took place with the results of this war. Germany & Italy got dissatisfied from the treaty of Versailles and forced the world towards second world war.

8. The leaglle of Nations was formed, by the effective attempts of American President-Wilson, so as to solve the various disputes of various countries. Although this organisation could not get success in solving the disputes among the various nations.

Second World War (1939-1945)

After the end of First World War, it was told about the treaty of "Versailles" that, "This is not a treaty of peace, but it is simply a treaty of break for 20 years only" This declaration proved true. On 01st September 1939, with the attack of Germany on Poland, the Second World War got started.

1. Reasons of the Second World War :-

At the time of undergoing the treaty of Versailles, the winner countries, instead of adopting the approach of foresightedness, they adopted he theory of taking revenge from Germany after demolishing Germany. Because of insulting conditions, inserted in the treaty of Versailles, the German representative and people of Germany, both were most dissatisfied. The Germany was compelled to sign the above treaty, that refusing to sign, will invite again the chance by which Germany may be attacked. Hitler of Germany started to disobey the conditions of the treaty. Hitler, firstly, militarised the area of Ryin, and in the year 1938, the Austria was occupied by Germany.

2. The Development of Dictatorship-

After the end of 1st World War, among the defeated countries, the democratic form of government could not get success. In Germany, Italy and Japan, all the three countries, the feelings of Dictatorship and Imperialism were deeply rooted. The above three countries, while breaking the conditions of the versa treaty made an axis front with Rome, Berlin, and Tokyo. Against them, the group of Allied Powers also developed.

3. The Weakness of United Nations-

The United Nations was brought into existence, with the object and expectation that it will help in solving the mutual disputes of nations and keep peace in the world, but the Allied Nations used it to protect their interest and not to see the problems of the world. The United Nations could not initiate any strong steps against the Dictatorial Administrators.

4. The Policy of Appeasement of Britain-

The Britain adopted the policy of keeping sympathy with Germany with the object of increasing its business and to stop the progress of communism as well. The abduction of Austria, the organ fracture of Checoslovakiya, the Militarization of the region of Riyne by Germany, but at this Juncture, the Britain did not take any step against Germany.

5. The Effect of Distorted Nationalism-

The distorted nationalism was the season for 1st

World War, likewise for the 2nd World War, this reason proved to be responsible. Among Italy, Germany and Japan, such feelings were much more in existence. And the United Nations also failed to control such situations. Hence again the doubt developed about the early beginning of 2nd World War.

6. The Absence of Mutual Coordination among the Allied Nations-

Allied countries were having friendly relations with each other, but there was absence of equality in the policies. They could not decide unanimously to act against Germany, Japan and Italy. As such the courage of Germany increased and became danger to world peace.

7. The Failure of the Policy of Disarmament-

The Allied Nations wanted to apply the policy of disarmament on the defeated countries only, but did not apply this policy on themselves. The other countries could understand these things very well. Consequently, the race of armament started in Germany, which ultimately became the danger to the world peace.

8. Economic Crisis in Europe-

The economic crisis in Europe, which remained from 1929 to 1930, affected the economic condition of every country in Europe. Due to such crisis, the feelings of security were demolished and the Dictators raised in some of the countries of Europe. This element also encouraged to the bigning of the Second World War.

9. Other Reasons-

Germany and Italy both intervened in the civil war of Spain and could get support of its Administrator General Franko. Italy also created danger to the World Peace, while occupying the Abyessinia. In the year 1939, Germany made a contract with Russia, namely, the treaty of non aggression.

10. Instantaneous Reasons-

Germany, after occupying the Checoslovakiya attacked on Poland, on 01st September 1939. Britain and France also declared war against Germany and from this moment, the Second World War started.

The Formate of War :-

The formate of War, was like this, that on the one side Nations like Germany, Italy, Japan, Finland, Rumaniya and Hungary were in the field of war, whereas on the other side the Allied Nations like Britain, France, United State of America, China, Poland and their Colonial states were on the opposite side to give a tuff fight in the war.

In the beginning the Allied Nations got some success. But Japan, attacked on the Naval Military Force of America in the month of December 1941, and this situation compelled America to enter in the War.

After this Allied powers started to get success in the battle field. American Forces, got France free, from the occupation of Germany Leader Hitler. Italy also surrendered in the field of war. In 1945, Germany was also defeated. America dropped bombs on Nagasaki on 9th August 1945 and Hiroshima in 6th August 1945, through Japan became unsettled while looking to such unimaginable looses, and also sent the proposal to surrender on, 10th August 1945, and in the end on 14th August 1945. Second World War ended.

The Results of Second World War:-

1. Like First World War, in this Second World War also, a lot loss of lifes and property caused to the world. In this war about 5 crores persons were killed and some of them were injured also. The other miscellaneous countries also undergone the expenditure about 1 lakh crores.
2. From this World War, the use of 'Atom Bomb' started, which was very destructive. The scientific development made it more fearful. The countries of the world, while standing

nearby with each other, were compelled to find out the path of peace or "unbreakable peace".

3. The whole world was divided into two ideologies after the Second World War. In one group or ideology the America provided leadership to capitalistic countries, where in the other group or ideology, which was of communist thoughts, under the leadership of Russia. But for the purpose of security, many treaties or memorandum of understanding (MOU) took place as well.

4. The Allied Powers, divided Germany into two parts, with the object to made it weak. The regions, which were under the occupation of Britain, France and United States of America, were unified and called as German United States which was named as East Germany. The areas of Germany which were occupied by Russia was named as "Western German Janvadi State". Germany was clearly divided into two parts by building a wall, which is known as "Wall of Berlin" but on 03rd October 1990, this divided Germany again got unified and looked the path of development.

5. The world was divided into two Military groups as it was divided earlier on the basis of ideology, after the Second World War. Under the leadership of America, i.e. (N.A.T.O.) North Atlantic Treaty Organisation was constituted and the countries, who adopted the democracy as a Rule of Law, created the other group South Asia Treaty Organisation (S.I.T.O.), likewise the organization of communist countries organised the group, which was known as "VARA Pact".

6. After the Second World War, many countries got freedom, which were the colonies of big countries. In 1947 India, in 1949 Philippines and China the democracy was established. Likewise in the year 1945, Libiya, Ghana, Algeriya and Ginni along with 17 countries of Africa, got freedom.

7. To prevent the world from the other World War, on 24th October 1945, the United Nations Organisation (U.N.O.) was established.

8. The Imperialism was heavily shocked, due to this Second World War. Britain, France, Poland, Belgium etc., Imperialistic countries became weak, in influence and in governance also.

9. After the end of Second World War, to consider about the war culprits, a 'war crime commission' was established.

10. After the end of Second World War- two big powers, namely 'Russia' and 'United States of America', came into being, in the world politics. The "cold war" continued for a long time between these two big powers.

11. The position and influence of Europe was reduced after the end of Second World War. Now the leadership of the world, reached into the hands of such big powers i.e. 'United States of America' (America) and 'Soviet Russia'.

United Nations

The establishment of United Nations, was the most important & constructive gains of the 'Paris Peace Conference'. The American President Wilon, played very important role in the establishment of United Nations. In the first 26 sections of the treaty of Versallies, the interpretation of United Nations, have been incorporated. In the year 1920, United Nations received its constitutional formate. All the 32 countries, which signed the treaty of versallies, became the founding members, afterwards the number of its members reached upto 55.

The main objects of United Nations:-

1. To settle the disputes mutually and to manage the system for the security.

2. To encourage the feelings of mental co-operation, among all the Member Nations, in the field of metaphysical and psychological aspects.

3. To execute the duties, which were provided by the peace Paris conference.

The organs of the United Nations :-

There were three organs of the United Nations-

1. Assembly, 2. Council and 3. Secretariat

Other than these organs, it was having two Autonomous organs i.e. International Court of Justice and International Labour Organisation. The objectives of United Nations were beneficiary for the world community, but it could not work successfully due to non-cooperation of Big Powers and the Arbitarical functions of the Member Nations. So it remained as a Monumental Institution only.

United Nations Organisation (U.N.O.)

After the end of second World War, the most powerful countries of the World discussed the need of a new International Organisation, through organising conferences and mutual conversations. Among such attempts, the Atlantic Charter, the conference of Casablanca, the conference of Moseon, Tehran, Yalta and San Francisco had been most important.

In San Francisco city of America, on 25th April 1945, a conference was started with the object to give a final shape to the charter of U.N.O. About 850 representatives of 51 countries participated and on 26th June 1945, about 50 countries signed the charter of U.N.O. Polland signed it afterwards. Likewise there were 51 founder members. All the member countries completed the process of getting consent on the membership from the State Legislature or Parliament. So in every year the day of 24th October, is being celebrated as "U.N.O. Day".

Main objects:-

1. International Peace and Security.
2. Peaceful settlement and justice to be provided, to international disputes.
3. To encourage and receive the international co-operation in the field of social, economic, cultural and humanitarian sectors of the world.
4. With the object to encourage the wider peace in the world, and while acting on the principles of equality and freedom, the friendly relations among the Member Nations were to be established.

Any country can apply for getting membership of U.N.O., who believes firmly in the charter of U.N.O. and believe in the concept of Peace. In this concern, the recommendation of Security Council is necessary, and after this, the two third majority of General Assembly will approve it.

The Head Quarter of U.N.O. is at New York of America, The General Secretary of U.N.O., is the Chief Administrator who is being appointed by General Assembly, after the recommendatory proposal of Security Council.

Organs of U.N.O. :-

As per Article 7 of the charter of U.N.O. It has 6 organs:

1. General Assembly
2. Security Council
3. Economic & Social Council
4. Council of Trustees
5. International Court of Law
6. Secretariat

1. General Assembly:

It is the main legislature of U.N.O. which includes the all representatives of Member Nations. It bears one President and seven Vice Presidents. For the easy and smooth working of U.N.O., there are six committees. The conference of the General Assembly is held, every year in the second week of the September of the concerned year. Its main working is related to the passing of Budget, to grant membership to the Nations in U.N.O., to decide for suspending or termination of members, and to co-

operate for the welfare of the Human Beings of the Member Nations.

2. The Security Council:

This is the executive of U.N.O., it bears 15 members, out of which 5 are permanent and 10 are of temporary nature. The permanent members are- United States of America, Britain, Russia, France, and China. The temporary members are being elected by General Assembly on the majority vote basis. This is an organisation which functions continuously. The meeting is being held once, within 14 days period and continues according to this cycle. The Security Council selects the judges of International Court, along with the opinion of General Assembly. It takes the decisions like- sanctioning or terminating the membership of U.N.O., to recommend about the appointment of General Secretary. It also performs the works of maintaining international peace, security and settlement of the mutual disputes among the members nations. The Permanent Members are having the Veto Power. If about any decision, any permanent member does not agree with the decision, than such decision cannot receive the finality and as such no decision can be implemented. When any permanent member wants to use Veto Power, the presence of such nation is compulsory in the meeting.

3. Economic and Social Council:

The members of this council are having the term of three (3) years. The number of the members are 54. Every year 1/3 members are elected against the vacant seats. The main functions of the council are to provide help to the poor, ill, illiterate and helpless people of the world. To recommend about the implementation of Human Rights, to pay honour to fundamental right of freedom. Likewise, to develop and generate the conditions and situations for the social development of the nations in the world.

4. The Council of Trustees :

In the charter of U.N.O. it has been arranged that such countries, which are neither developed nor self Autonomous States, with the object to protect the interest of inhabitants of such countries should be protected and as such, the countries of above category, should be handed over to developed countries, under the management of Trusteeship Council of U.N.O. So that such countries can be developed and could get self governed state and may get consciousness about the concept of freedom.

5. International Court:

The International court of Justice was established in the year 1946, at Hague city of Holland. It consists of 15 judges and their working period is of 9 years. Five judges refire every year after three years. The appointments of Judges are made by Security Council and General Assembly collectively. Its main job is to interpret and to consider International law from time to time. It has got Jurisdiction over such States, who have accepted the membership of the Institution.

6. The Secretariat :

Secretariat is the Administrative part of U.N.O., which executes all kinds of functions related to U.N.O. The Principal Administrator of Secretariat is known as 'General Secretary' who does all the functions with the help of Secretariat. He remains present and participates in the meetings and the other proceedings of every organ of U.N.O., due to his key position. He appoints all office bearers, according to the Rules, formulated by General Assembly. He presents the Annual Report in the meeting of U.N.O. The post of General Secretary is very important in the eyes of the World.

The Specific Bodies of U.N.O. :-

There are so many specific bodies related to various sectors, with the object to provide co-operation to U.N.O. in the execution of various works of various sectors like social, economic, cultural and human welfare and all these bodies

performs the works according to the directors of U.N.O. They are having their own working style.

The main bodies are as under:-

1. The Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation of U.N.O.
2. International Labour Organisation
3. Food and Agriculture Organisation
4. World Health Organisation
5. International Monetary Fund
6. International Rehabilitation and Development Bank
7. International Organisation is Fund for Children's Crisis
8. International Finance Corporation
9. International Civil Aviation Organisation
10. International Agriculture Development Funds
11. Worldwide Postal Association
12. International Telecommunication Organisation
13. International Business Centre
14. United Nations Environmental Keeping Centre
15. International Food Programme
16. The Worldwide Business Organisation

In comparison to United Nations, the United Nations Organisation (U.N.O.) got success in so many fields. At so many times, some situations were developed of War between some countries, such situations were stopped by U.N.O. In such countries are mainly- Palestine, Indonesia, Kango, Quba, Syria, Leblan and problems arose before U.N.O., but Question of disarmament, Kashmir Problem, Korea crisis are still in existence. U.N.O. also could not get full success in controlling Terrorism and others to control small wars.

India has also contributed a lot to the functions and achievements of U.N.O. out of them some are as, after the end of Korea War (1950) the 'give and take process' of Prisoners of War, at the time Swej crisis, sending of a small troop of Military (1960) and at the time of Somaliya crisis (1991) the Military troop of India, provided food grains to that country. India also supported the issue of providing Independence of other Asian and African countries.

The Expansion of West's Colonial Empire :-

The Western countries, with the intention to fulfil their economic interests, discovered new countries and established their influence. It has developed the ways and means to establish business and ultimately established imperialistic control. The scholars of history have called this trend as Imperialistic expansion or colonial Imperialism.

The Western countries, established Imperialistic control, through geographical discoveries, between 16th to 18th century, on Portugal, Spain, England, Holland and France, with the interest to fulfil their economic benefits.

In African continent, the western countries occupied specially the area of seashore, more than one fifth portion of Africa. These people used to do the business of slaves, which was in the category of inhuman act. The African were made slaves, and used to be sent to America, where they were being torchured in the most cruel way. They were beaten by hunters. These countries adopted reasonable or unreasonable methods to achieve their economic and political benefits and interests.

Reasons :-

1. The main reason of the expansion of colonial Imperialism of Western countries was to fulfil the economic appetite of themselves.
2. After the Industrial Revolution, in England, France, Germany, Italy and United States of America, the Industrial Production was increased. They were in search of new places in the form of Imperialistic colonies, to consume the Increased Industrial Production.

3. The European countries attempted to occupy such countries, where the raw materials were available, for the production of finished goods in their industries.
4. In European countries, the additional capital used to be received. So, for making the investments of such capital, new places were required.
5. The sources of transport and communication added much and made it easier to have mutual communication of thoughts and things. This also helped to the expansion of colonial Imperialism.
6. In European countries, the population was increasing fast. So, to settle the increasing population, new places were required and as such Imperialism was increased.
7. In the expansion of European Imperialism the role of Christian Pastors was also very important.

The Areas of Colonial Expansion :-

The continents like Asia and Africa, were only such areas, where the possibilities to exploit and to increase imperialistic effect were much more. To Say as :-

Asia :-

In the field of South Asia, in India, the colonial expansion was made in Nepal, Bhutan, Maldive etc. In India, there was a commercial competitions among the British, French, Duch and East India companies. After the end of such mutual commercial struggles, the East India company, through the way of Bengal and after the end of Baxar War, got success in forming its government and in expanding the Imperial expansion in Aisa. Sri Lanka was also under the English people. In Southern East Asia the England, Holland and France, occupied and governed- Indonesia, Thailand, Burma, Malaya, Timor etc.

South Africa :-

Mainly England and France, two powers were having the Monopolistic Imperialism. Britishers also adopted the policy of different colour of Human Beings and cruelty was done to the people of Black Skin.

Here the Slave system (custom of slaves) was in force. The people of western countries used to do the business of slaves.

Arab Spring (2010-2013 A.C.)

In Arabian countries, from 2010 A.C. to 2013 A.C. the demonstration of people and the ways of revolutions and nuisance got started for demanding-democracy to be established, Independent Elections, Human Rights to be restored, and change the form of government. These Agitations in Arab countries started with one good objective. So, the scholars called these agitations and revolutions as 'Arab Spring'. The word 'Arab Spring' was used, at the first time by Mark Linch in his essay, which was published in American Journal namely- 'Foreign Policy' on 06th June 2011. Before this, in Europe the word 'Spring time of Nation' was used. After the Revolution of 1848, this word was used and it indicated good days of the Nations.

The Areas of Arab Spring

In Arabian countries, people started this movement, with the positive object to “Receive good and better days” in the Arab area. That's why, this movement has been categorised as “Arab Spring”.

This agitation was started, with the revolution of Tunishiya and it spread all over the countries of Arab Leagle and its nearby countries also. The 'Arab Spring' spread out in Tunishiya, Mishra, Libiya, Yaman, Behrin, Syria, Algeriya, Grak, Gordan, Moracco, Sudan, Oman and Saudi Arab area of Arabian countries etc.

Reasons of 'Arab Spring':-

1. The political corruption increased to the highest level, in Arabian countries. So in these

countries, for the development, it was necessary to eliminate the corruption.

2. The opposition Rose speedily against the system in which human rights were being suppressed and exploitation was prevailing in Arab countries.
3. The feelings of dissatisfaction and Revolt, took birth among the people, against the Dictatorial Administrators.
4. The Imperialistic Policy of the Administrators, also developed dissatisfaction among the people.
5. In Arab countries, the problem of unemployment among the young persons, also developed the feelings of dissatisfaction.
6. The level of income in the groups of society, was highly unequal. Some people continued to be richest and richer and the common class of the society was very poor.
7. In administration, the bureaucracy was having much powers and control, the people's work were not done in time. This element also developed the dissatisfaction among the people.
8. The feelings of establishment of democratic government became highly powerful among the minds of Arab people.

The Objects and Form of 'Arab Spring' :-

The main object of 'Arab Spring' was to bring change in the existing governments and administration and it was aimed to protect the Human Rights, to have independent election, to eradicate the unemployment and to make Nations Islamic. As such they were the main objects of Arab Spring.

The Arab Agitators adopted the methods of both violence and non violence. Among the methods of showing opposition, included like- civil disobedience, civil opposition, demonstration, strikes, to be active on internet, violence base agitations and peaceful opposition etc., were used to get 'Arab Spring'. The slogan of agitators was that "people want that present government must quit and it must be toppled down".

Arab Spring- Importance and Results:-

Through the effect of Arab Spring, in Arabian countries, the waves of democracy and the revolutionary starting of reforms were being very effective and it attracted the eyes of the whole World. The Dictatorial Governments of olden period were demolished and in all the Arabian countries, the attention was paid towards making reforms and a new way of thinking of this nature started in Arabian countries.

1. The Dictators like Janual Abdin Ali of Tunishiya, Hasni Mubarak of Egypt, Col. Gaddafiy of Libiya and Shah Ali Abdulla of Yaman, were dethroned and new governments were formed.

2. While looking towards the effect of 'Arab Basant', countries like Kuwait, Leblan, Oman and Behrin they made a lot of reforms in their governments.

3. In Moracco and Jordan, the constitutional reforms were executed.

4. In Algiriya, 19 years old emergency period, was withdrawn.

5. In the revolution of 'Arab Basant' about 1,70,000 people lost their lives. 'Arab Basant' proved this truth that people cannot tolerate the dictatorship and Anarchy for a long time. The participants of Arab Basant (spring), who agitated peacefully, attracted the eyes of other countries of the world. Some persons who were much active in this movement, their names were nominated for Nobel Prizes. Shri Tavcol- Karman were awarded. Nobel Prize jointly in 2011 A.C., for playing a very important role in the peaceful movement i.e.

'Arab Spring'. Due to the effect of Arab Spring some rulers refused to fight election again and some rulers resigned from the governments.

Important Points

1. The western countries expanded their imperialism with object to fulfil Economic Interests.

2. The main message of French Revolution was "Liberty, Equality and Fraternity".

3. After the revolution, Russia made a treaty with Germany, which is known as "Brest Litovask".

4. Under the leadership of Lelin, the Bolsheviks eliminated the government of Russia.

5. The whole Europe was divided in two fronts, due to secret treaties before First World War.

6. The momentum reason for the beginning of First World War, was the Assassination of the Prince Fardinand of Austria in Serbia.

7. The insulting and rigid conditions of treaty of versailles, turned into main reasons of the beginning Second World War.

8. The instantaneaur reason of II World War, was the attack on Polland by Germany in 1939 A.C.

9. The United Nations was constituted on 10th January 1920 A.C.

10. The charter of United Nations organisation came into force in the conference of San Francisco in the year 1945 A.C.

11. The post of General Secretary in U.N.O. is most important.

12. U.N.O. provided a lot of co-operation to India, in the achievement of peace in the world.

13. America dropped atom bombs from the sky on Hiroshima (6th August) and Nagasaki (9th August 1945) of Japan.

14. The main object of Arab Spring was to bring change in the existing administration and governments of Arab countries.

Objective Type Questions :-

1. Who was the King in France, at the time of French Revolution?

   (a) Louis 19th (b) Louis 18th

   (C) Louis 16th (d) Louis 15th

2. At what time Germany made the treaty of non attacking with Russia?

   (a) 1939 (b) 1935

   (c) 1936 (d) 1937

3. After the end of I World War, which treaty was made with Germany?

   (a) Treaty of Newly (b) Treaty of Serb

   (c) Treaty of Versailles (d) Treaty of Triyana

4. Who helped France in the civil war of Spain?

   (a) America and Russia

   (b) Germany and Italy

   (c) Austria and Hungary

   (d) Germany and Japan

Very Short Answer Type Questions :-

1. Name the two scholars of intellectual awakening of French Revolution.
2. Who was the king of Germany at the time of I World War?
3. Who was the main leader of Bolshevik Revolution?
4. At the time of Second World War, Japan attacked on which Naval Besin of America?
5. After the end of March Revolution, who formed the government?
6. In the War of Spain, who helped Pranko?
7. When was United Nations was established ?
8. When is the U.N.O. day celebrated?

Short Answer Type Questions :-

1. What was Estate General?
2. What do you know about the downfall of Bestille?
3. Write the name of the countries, who were known as Allies Powers, at the time of Second World War.
4. Write a note on the Strike of Labourers in Petroguard.
5. Why did Britain adopt the Policy of Appeasement?
6. Explain the Instantaneous reason of First World War.
7. Write about the failure of disarmament.
8. Write the objectives of United Nations.
9. Write about the meaning and objectives of 'Arab Spring' .

Essay Type Questions:-

1. Explain the reasons and results of French Revolution.
2. Explain in short about the results of I World War.
3. Write about the reasons of Russian Revolution of 1917.
4. Explain the reasons and results of Second World War.
5. Explain the reasons of Colonial Imperialism.
6. Write about the establishment and main organs of U.N.O.
7. Write in short about the reasons and results of 'Arab Spring'.

Answers of objective questions:-

1 (C) 2 (A) 3 (C) 4 (B)

Chapter - 6

Nationality in India

Nation or a country is such a group of persons, who use are to live with freedom on a particular and certain area of land and that such group is being organised with the feelings of Liberty, Equality and Fraternity among the members of a Nation, the presence of the feelings of patriotism, love with the country, sacrifice for the nation, feelings of intimacy, and attachment with the nation are always found. And this is known as "Nationalism". In the Western countries, the concept of a Nation was in the form of 'state' one caste or creed and its land was understood as Nation. In the Indian concept of 'Nationalism', culture has got a significant place. In India, the meaning of Nation, country and state can be understood by the following table:-

Essential Organs or Elements	Nation	Country	State
1	People	People	People
2	Culture	Land	Sovereignty

If there is a combination and presence of all the four elements i.e. people, land, culture and sovereignty, than such country is always categorised as an 'Ideal Nation'.

The Origin and Development of Nationalism :-

As per scholars- Sir John Strechy and Sir John Silley, the origin of Indian Nationalism, was the contribution of 19th century. They are of the opinion that Indian Nationalism took birth, as a result of Colonial Imperialism of Britain. But, in India, the concept of Nationalism is very old. We can gather the clear cut knowledge about Nationalism, from the Literature of Veds.

In Yajur Ved and Arth Ved, the concept of Nationality is discussed at various places, and it has also been written in Yajur Ved, that what should be the duties of civilians for the Nation.

As such and in this way, it is not correct to say that the Indian Nationalism or National feelings took birth, due to Britishers or Western impact, because in the Veds of olden times, concept of Indian Nationalism is being discussed. Really speaking, among the Indians, the feelings of Nationality and respect for the country, always had been in the minds of Indians. This is a symbol of our 'Nationality'. Not only this, but in India the concept of cultural nationality was having a significant importance in our walk of life. In Ancient period, we find the mentioning of Larger India, which shows that there was a cultural effect of India, in the whole world.

The Reasons of National Renaissance:-

The rise of Renaissance in India of 19th century was a strong reaction, against the exploitation and Tremol of India in the field of economic, political and cultural, by Britishers. The Indian compelled Britain to quit India and go back to its home, on the strength of National feelings. The Britishers started occupying India, firstly from the Bengal. Till 1911 century, Calcutta, had been the capital of India, so they paid more attention towards Bengal. The main

reasons responsible for the National Renaissance, are as under:-

1. The effect of the glorious past of India :-

India, was called as 'World Guru' in Ancient period only because of limitless knowledge.

In Ancient period, our great persons and rulers tried to keep India united to the highest level. Due to this glorious feelings, the concept of National Unity and Emotions came into existence. The information and factual knowledge about glorious past and cultural splendours by the Westren Scholars, in the translated literature from Sanskrit to English language. Such scholars are- William Jones, Princes, Max Moller, Farguson and Indian Scholars as Rajendra Lal Mitra are some of the important scholars. In 1861 century under the leadership of Kanigham, the Archaeological Excavation and Investigations started in India. From the Ancient period itself, there had been a highly developed culture in India, this fact could be known by such excavations. In our country the self confidence evolved, due to the knowledge and ancient glory and the Inspiration of Nationalism was received in the minds of people of India. Not only Indian but European Scholars also recognised the Vedic knowledge to be of highly helpful for the welfare of the whole World.

2. The effect of British Rule:-

The policies of Britishers were highly opposed by Indian people because they exploited India economically as well as culturally. From 1837 to 1857, so many revolts took place against he Britishers. Among such revolts, some of them are Civil disobedience, Revolt by Tribals and Revolts of Farmers. The Indian people could understand this fact very easily that the Imperialistic government of Britishers cannot be at all beneficiary to Indian people. The unforsighted and Reactionary policy of Lord Litin developed a big Quantam of dissatisfaction in Indian's mind.

3. The Influence of English Education:-

Though, Lord Micaley wanted through English education and language, to make the Indian people mentally slaves. But fortunately the English language became a medium of internations and world by links and exchange of thoughts mutually. Indian youth started taking education through English medium, and as such the feelings of National awakening developed in India.

4. The effects of the contacts with Western Thinkers and Philosophers:-

The Indian youth came in touch with the views and Literature of Berk, Germany, Bentham, J.S. Mill, Jean Jack Rousso, Milton, Spencer etc., through the medium of English language. They were highly affected and influenced by the Revolutionary thoughts of the above thinkers and philosophers. Hence, the feelings of nationality got strengthened.

5. The contribution of Indian Writers:-

Indian writers and poets created such views & poems which were full of Nationalism. The stazing of one act plays like 'Annand Math' and 'Neel Darpan' encouraged the feelings of Nationalism among the people of India. The One Act Play “Annand Math” of Bankim Chatterji became the synonymeus of 'Patriotism'. The song- namely “Vande Matram” had been his contribution. The, then writers expressed specific respect to nationality and mother land. The song 'Vande Matram' became a specific and important factor of inspiration for the revolutionary people and agitators, against the British Rulers. Other writers, also through their articles, and other literature provided a special contribution for awakening the feelings of nationalism. Some of them are- Hem Chandra Banarjee, Naveen Chandra Sen, R.C. Dutt, Ravindra Nath Tagore, Badri Narayan Choudhary, Pratap Narayan Mishra, Bal Krishna Bhatt etc.

6. Contribution of Newspapers and Beginning of Printing Press:-

Newspapers and magazines were the easier

sources of communication of views and news. In the 18th century, near Calcutta, in Shri Rampur, the printing press was started and the publications of newspapers and magazines were speedily spread out. In the year 1774, the first newspaper namely 'India Gazette' and in 1780, the 'Bengal Gazette' were published. With the object to expand and to develop the concept of 'National feelings', Raja Ram Mohan Roy, got published two newspapers i.e. 'Sanwad Komudni' and 'Mirattun '. In the year 1826, first time in Hindi, the newspaper namely- 'Udant Martand'. The newspapers openly opposed the Imperialistic politics of East India company. The thoughts and views of scholars, started to reach the minds of people, by the medium of newspapers.

Ishwar Chandra Vidhya Sagar and Harish Chandra Mukherjee published the magazines- i.e. 'Som Prakash' and 'Hindu Patriot', respectively. In 1868, the magazine 'Amart Bazar Patrika' was published. Lok Manya Tilak published 'Punjab Kesari' in Marathi language and 'Maratha' in English. These newspapers prepared the environment of Nationalism and sacrifice in India.

7. The Adoption of Discriminatory Policy of Britishers with Indians:-

Indians were not provided any high placement in Military as well in administration also. They discriminated Indians in every walk of life. After the Revolution of 1857, Indians were usually insulted and exploited by Britishers. Inequality of Indians and Britishers in the eyes of law was common. Such activities of Britishers with Indian, developed more dissatisfaction among the Indian people.

8. The Impact of Religious and Protest for Social Reforms:-

In India, at the time of beginning of Freedom Movement, regarding evil conventions in society and for its eradication, the role of Brahma Samaz; Arya Samaz & Ram Krishna Mission, had been of high importance. Rajaram Mohan Roy and Swami Dayanand Saraswati tried to improve social evils and developed the feelings of love and affections for the Nation. The founder of 'Brahma Samaj' Rajaram Mohan Roy was known as the maker of modern India. He insisted upon the expansion of modern education and stood and fought for the protection of civil liberty and independence of press.

Keshav Chandra Sen, of Brahma Samaz insisted on the use of Hindi in field of Social Equality and Individual freedom. He travelled the whole world and made attempts to unite all sects of religion. The founder of Arya Samaz, pressed hardly to use Indian goods (India Made) and to fight for self governance. He, the first time used the word "Swaraj" Swami Vivekanand gave the famous lecture on 'Vedant' in Chicago in the year 1893, and the glory and the proud of India was highly increased in the world, by such brilliant lecture. He preferred to fight for political freedom and to pay the honour to the glory of past of India, and he explained the meaning of religion, that to serve the mother land- India is the only religion of every Indian.

9. The Economic Exploitation of India:-

There was a big dissatisfaction among the Indians, against the economic exploitation of Indian people by Britishers. The small cottage industries of India were more or less closed. Britishers used to purchase raw material from India at a very low rate and after manufacturing, they used to sell it at a very high rate. India was exploited by investing foreign capital in India and through foreign import.

In England, all the expenses occurred regarding the home government of India, were to be borne by India. Indians opposed the disinvestment of capital from India, destruction of cottage industries and exploitation of farmer.

National Movement and Freedom of India:-

Being persuaded by the thoughts of Nationalism, Indian continued the National Movement for a long time, for Independence of India from British Rulers. India got freedom on 15th

August 1947, at midnight due to the efforts of sacrifice of revolutionaries, non violent agitation of Mahatma Gandhi and freedom fighters.

In the struggle of Freedom Movement, along with non violence leaders, the Revolutionary Freedom Fighters contributed to a great extent and to achieve freedom from British Rule. Some of the names of such freedom fighters are as follows :-

1. Bhagat Singh 2. Rajguru
3. Sukh Deo 4. Chandra Shekhar 'Azad'
5. Chapekar Brothers 6. Ashfak Ullah Khan
7. Ram Prasad Bismil 8. Rajendra Lahiri
9. Khudiram Bose 10. Prafulla Chandra Bose
11. Lala Lajpat Roy 12. Bipin Chandra Pal
13. Bal Gangadhar Tilak 14. Gopal Krishna Gokhley
15. Arvind Ghose 16. Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru
17. Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel etc.

The Freedom Struggle of 1857- with Special Reference of Rajasthan :-

In India, the dissatisfaction was increasing speedily against the economic exploitation and imperialism based policy. The origin of first freedom struggle, was the result of such policies. British scholars have called it a 'Military Revolt' or 'Revolution' but it is not correct to call like this Veer Savarkar told that "It was the first freedom struggle" which was started from very date. The Britishers had to face united opposition of Indians first time.

The Reasons of Freedom Struggle

1. Administrative and Political :

Lord Vallegali, got merged the local states like Gemsi, Nagpur, Satara, and Avadh. The land of Indian landlords was taken way forcefully. They insulted the Mughal Emperor, Bahadur Shah and as such got annoyed the Muslim community also. Indians were not posted at higher posting in administration and they were not satisfied with their way of doing justice.

2. Social Reasons :

The Britishers used to look at Indians with hatred attitude. They also tried to avoid Indian customs and conventions. Indians were restricted to travel in Ist class of trains. The different attitudes were adopted on the basis of colour- i.e. white and black persons. They wanted to impose Western Culture and Civilization on Indians forcefully. They always used to feel most superior from 'social angle'. The statement of a magistrate of Calcutta gives a picture of Britishers mentality, when he told that "every Indian, might be on a post, where he could have paid salute to very British man, walking on the road, and if any Indian is found sitting on horse or in any cart, than he should get down and keep standing on the road, till the British people do not cross the way."

In the year 1856, Britishers made the changes in Rules of Parental Property Law, that if any Hindu will adopt Christian religion, than such man will not be deprived from the Rights of Father's property. Before this Amendment, this was the position that if any Indian changes the religion then he could be deprived of from the Parental Property. Indians became much more dissatisfied due to such actions of Britishers. The Social Reforms work and Modernisation of India by Britishers in the field of Rail, Postal and Telegraph Department, were also condemned by Indians, because of the most bad behaviour and attitude of Britishers.

3. Religious Reasons:

Britishers were having one hidden object i.e. to advertise and expand their Christian Religion. The chairman of East India company Mr. Magells, delivered a lecture in House of Commons, where he clearly told that due to blessings of almighty power and incidently, Britishers got a very big imperialism of India, so that the flag of Christian Religion may be expanded from one corner to the last corner of India. In the year 1813, a charter Act was enacted

and by which the preachers got the Rights to Stay in India and to advertise the Christianity among Indian people.

Any Indian, who used to change religion and adopted Christian Religion, was provided with a lot of extra facilities and government service. In Military also, Priests were being posted. In India, the dissatisfaction against Britishers arose because of the Freedom Movement of 1857.

4. Military Religion :

The beginning of Freedom Movement of 1857, was due to dissatisfaction of Indian Army soldiers. Indian Military Personnel were discriminated in relation to salary, promotions, allowances, and behaviour. Indian Military men were given much less salary Rs. 9.00 per month, where as British Military man was paid salary worth Rs. 60.00-70.00 per month. They were being kicked and punished with the nut of the gun even for the smaller mistake. The Indian Military men were three times more in comparison to British Military. The British Rulers knew it well that in India, their rule is dependent on Military of Indians.

5. Economic Reasons :

Indians were having a bigger part of dissatisfaction against Britishers because of the policy of economic exploitation in India. The object of England (Britain) was to take away more and more capital from India to England. They destroyed the self dependent economic set up of villages and the economy of country side area was fully destroyed, consequently, the Britishers continued to become richer and Indians continued to become poorer and poorer, due to economic exploitation. Britishers imposed more lagan on farmers. The Farmers and landlords were being harassed. Even at the time of famine, the farmers and landlords were exploited instead of providing help to the farmers. As such all the economic circumstances increased the existing dissatisfaction among the Indian people.

6. Instantaneous Reasons :

The Soldiers of Military were provided new rifles, instead of old one, hence the cartridges were to be cut with mouth before using it. In the year 1857, this news spread out in the air, that in the cartridges, the fat of cows and pigs is being used. This action of Britishers was regarded as anti religious by Indian Army. On 29th March 1857, in the military camp of Berakpur, Mangal Pandey, refused to break such cartridge with the mouth and he was killed by British Army Officer also. So ultimately, on 08th April 1857. Mangal Pandey was hanged till death. Due to this incident the Army persons got highly annoyed. They revolted and declared not to obey the orders of British Army. The revolution spread out from Meeruth to Delhi, Kanpur, Bihar, Rajasthan and South India.

7. The Prominent Leaders of Freedom Movement :

The organised opposition among the Indians, weakend the roots of the foundation of British rule in India. The Queen of Jhansi Laxmi Bai, Nana Shahb from Kanpur, Tantiya Toppe and Ajimulla, Kunwar Singh of Bihar, Rangaji Bapu from South India, Guptey and Feduals of Mewar co-operated with the revolutionaries fighting for the freedom of India. The Thakur Sahib Khushal Singh of Aahuwa gave the assistance of Army. The Rao of Salumber Shri Keshav Singh also provided shelter to Thakur Khushal Singh. The Thakur of Kothariya Sh. Jodh Singh looted the property and valuable goods of the British officer and also provided shelter to Neemji Charan.

The Freedom Movement of 1857, in Rajasthan :-

The Thakur of Aahuwa Khushal Singh was deadly against the Britishers. He defeated the British Army and State of Jodhpur in the course of

struggle against Britishers. Thakur of Aahuwa Khushal Singh killed and separated the head from the body while killing the British President Meemesan and hanged the head on the wall of the Fort of Aahuwa. He was getting the full support of Feduals of Mewar for this struggle but on the next year the British Army and Jodhpur Army attacked Thakur Khushal Singh bribed the watch man of the fort and got the doors opened in the fort and entered into the fort.

On 28th May in the year 1857, the Army of Nasirabad occupied the artillery (Topkhana) of Britishers. One British officer was killed and his body was cut into small pieces, consequently the British officers ran away, so that they may protect their lives. The British Army soldiers left for Delhi. The news of Nasirabad Revolution, reached Neemuch.

After this the Indian Army looted the godowns of weapons. The British officers ran away towards Udaipur. Maharana of Mewar (Udaipur) provided shelter to them in the palace. In Kota also the public men and government Army also fought with British Army. The Rao of Kota became the victim of the revolutionaries, due to his sympathy and policy of co-operation with British Army. In the field of freedom movement and in spreading out it with courage, the important role was also played by Jai Dayal, Mehrab Khan, Ratan Lal and Jiya Lal. The revolutionaries took over the whole administration of Kota. In the course of time, about more than 5 months the government of public remained in force.

In Kota, the political agent was major Bertan. The revolutionaries of Kota murdered major Bertan, along with his two sons. At this place, public gave full support to revolutionaries. The administrator of Kota was arrested in the palace by people of Kota. About 6 months, Kota had been under the control of revolutionaries. In Tonk and Shahpura the doors were closed for British Army, but due to lack of unanimous leaders, Britishers, again occupied these places, on the strength of its Army and as such the revolution was suppressed.

Tantya Toppe

Tantiya Toppe entered in Jhalawar of Rajasthan and took the rule and powers in his hands. On the godowns of Arms & Ammunations the revolutionaries took the possession. Due to entrance of Tantiya Toppe in Rajasthan, new passion and courage developed in the Hearts of Revolutionaries of Rajasthan.

The Rao of Salumber Kesari Singh and Fedual Ruler of Kothariya Jodh Singh fully supported and gave co-operation to Tantiya Toppe. The ruler of Narvar Man Singh, by conspiracy of Narvar Tantiya Toppe was arrested by British Rulers and in 18598, he was hanged. But it is not correct to say that he was hanged, but he went to some unknown and undeclared place, due to the weak situations of the revolution. With this event, the freedom movement, in Rajasthan got ended.

Main Reasons of the failure of Freedom Movement :-

The Britishers were puzzled and got worried, due to such organised and collective opposition of Indians. In the beginning, Britishers were defeated at so many places by revolutionaries. But due to the strength of Military Power and sympathy of the Feduals of Provinces, the Freedom Movement got failed and as such the First Freedom Movement got unsucess. There were other reasons also, which became the thorns in the way of success of this Movement, just as:

1. The Revolutionaries could not prepare powerful network among themselves for remaining in touch with each other, due to lack of workable planning.

2. Revolutionaries were having less arms and armed force, in comparison to Britishers and their sources were also very limited.
3. The local provinces did not provide co-operation to revolutionaries, for fighting against British Rulers.
4. The Revolution was due to be started on 31st May 1857, as per planning, but due to some incidents, the Revolution began on 10th May 1857. As such full planning failed in the beginning itself.
5. The Diplomacy of Lord Kening, their Britishers got support of local provinces and got the success in controlling revolutionaries.

The Importance and Results of Freedom Movement of 1857 :-

Though in the Freedom Movement of 1857, they could not get full success yet the British Rulers were compelled to reorganise the Army and to make changes in the policy of administration. Some of them are as under:-

1. The administration of East India company was put to end and the administration was taken directly under the control of British Government.
2. The inspiration for future to start National Movement for Freedom, was received from the Movement of 1857 for liberty.
3. The Local Provinces which were under British government, policies were changed to administrator them and consequently, the Queen of England, in her Announcement told about providing the rights, honour and glory of the Kings of Local Provinces in near future. But they were given the rights to adopt son in the family.
4. The British government could understand the fact that if the Hindus & Muslims will live together peacefully and with Fraternity, than their government will have to quit India soon. So they applied the policy of 'Divide & Rule' for both the communities and developed mutual tension and enimity.
5. After this revolution, Britishers reorganised their Military. The numbers of Britishers in Army was increased and the Artilleries were not kept under the control of Indian Military.

Though, the Britishers on the strength of their Military and Diplomatic Powers, suppressed the above first National Movement for freedom, but this movement proved this fact also, that if Indians get organised and become one and well plan for starting the Freedom Movement, than Britishers can be shunted out from India. The Britishers also realised this fact, that if Indians will get united, they may become danger to them, so they followed to apply the policy of "Divide and Rule" in India, for the safety of their government.

Important Points

1. The full devotion of citizens for the country or Nation is "Nationalism"
2. The concept of "Nationalism" is prevailing among the Indians from "Vedic Period".
3. In the people of the Nation, instead of the feeling "I", the feeling of "we", only gives birth to "Nationalism".
4. The Indian Nationalism of 19th century, was the reaction against the policies of Britishers, executed in reference to Economic, Political and Cultural exploitation and suppression.
5. In India, for the awakening of National feeling and freedom, the Newspapers and Indian literature played very important role.
6. In the attempts of providing Freedom to India from Britishers, Mahatma Gandhi and other famous Revolutionaries, played remarkable and important role.
7. The "Revolution of 1857" has been named, as "First National Movement for freedom", by the Savarkar.

8. The instantaneous reason for starting of freedom movement, was use of cartridge in English guns being levelled with the fat meat of cows and pigs which were to be used by Indian Army by opening from mouth.

9. The main leaders of Freedom Movement can be described as: Rani Laxmibai, Nana Saheb, Tantiya Tope, Kunwar Singh, Bahadur Shah etc.

10. The National Movement was spread out towards South India also, specially in Maharashtra, Hyderabad, Madras etc.

11. In Rajasthan also, it got spread out in the area of Nasirabad, Neemuch, Devli, Kota, Tonk, Arinpura and till Kota, the influence of the movement was there.

Objective Type Questions :-

1. In India, the printing press was started in the year?

   (a) 800 A.C. (b) 1700 A.C.

   (c) 1830 A.C. (d) 1805 A.C.

2. The Book "The First Freedom Movement of India" was written by which writer?

   (a) R.C. Majumdar (b) Ashok Mehta

   (c) Savarkar (d) Dada Bhai Narogi

3. Major Bertion was political agent of-

   (a) Neemuch (b) Kota

   (c) Arinpura (d) Ajmer

4. Thakur Khushal Singh was resident of which place?

   (a) Arinpura (b) Salumber

   (c) Auwa (d) Nasirabad

Very Short Answer Type Questions :-

1. When was 'Bengal Gazette' published?
2. Who was the writer of the song "Vande Mataram"?
3. Who lead the first Freedom Movement of 1857?
4. As per predecided schedule, the revolution was to be begin on which date?
5. Major Berton was assasinated at which place?

Short Answer Type Questions :-

1. Define the word "Nationalism"
2. How the Britishers exploited economically, the Indian Business and Economy?
3. Write the names of main revolutionaries of national movement.
4. How did the Revolution of 1857, spread out in Rajasthan? Write about such events.
5. How many important leaders contributed in the freedom fight of 1857?

Essay Type Questions:-

1. Write about the Rise of "Nationalism" in India and explain its main reasons.
2. Write about the main reasons of the Revolution of 1857.
3. In the Revolution of 1857, the Revolutionaries failed in their object. What were the major reasons for their failure?
4. Write about the importance of Freedom Movement.
5. "The spreading out the Revolution of 1857 in Rajasthan", write an essay on this subject.

Answers of objective questions:-

1. A 2. C 3. B 4. C

Chapter - 7

The Pride of Rajasthan

The History of Rajasthan and culture has been full of pride and along with this, it has been a land of Bravery, where people always preferred to fight for freedom and pride, in leiu of their lives. These Public Leaders, great persons, social reformers and Folk gods of Rajasthan provided a new path to the people. Among the Loknayaks of Rajasthan, Bappa Rawal, Prithvi Raj Chouhan, Veer Durgadas, Maharan Sanga, Mal Deo, Meera Bai, Pannadhaya, Amrita Devi, Maharaja Surajmal, Guru Govind Singh, Kali Bai are memorable leaders and in the field of folk gods- Gogaji, Tejaji, Ram Devji, Pabuji, Devnarayan as well among the social reformers- Saint Peepaji, Dadu, Jas Nathji, Jambhoji, Ramcharanji, Acharya Bhikshu, are famous names. All these are pride of Rajasthan and we should feel proud of them.

PUBLIC LEADERS

1. Bappa Rawal-

In Mewar, among the rulers belonging to Guhil Dynasty, Bappa Rawal occupies an important place. Regarding the names of Father and Mother and date of birth of Bappa Rawal, the scholars are having different views, but all the scholars are of the one view that his childhood was spent in a village, namely 'Nagda', near Eklingji of Mewar. Here, while feeding grass to cows in the jungles of Nagda, Bappa Rawal had a contact with a Sage (Rishi) namely Harit Rashi. Shree Harit Rashi, was a Saint having expertise in Pashupati- Lukulish Sect. Bappa served a lot to Harit Rashi. This time was not of a favourable nature. Harit Rashi was in grief due to

Bappa Rawal

forceful conversion of Religion and Torture of Arab Khalifas, a struggle full of bloodshed was thurst upon the people. Harit was highly influenced with the personality, thoughts, and wisdom of Bappa Rawal. He could visualise that Bappa is having all the Virtures, though the opposite situations can be converted into positive and favourable conditions. Having such views about Bappa, Harit trained and educated him in the same way, in which way Chanakya trained Chandra Gupta and Harit Rashi, felt that his last time of life in nearer, he gave blessings and a boon to Bappa, that he will rule on Mewar, become King in near future and the regime of Mewar from his hand and his dynasty will never go away. Harit Rashi also provided economic help to Bappa who told him that in future, he would be called as 'Rawal'.

After the death of Harit Rashi, Bappa organised the military and attacked Chittorgarh and took the possession as Victorious and expanded the area of his regime. At this time western India was facing attacks of Arabs continuously. While looking to such conditions, Bappa decided to fight with Arab Army with full Bravery, and he developed and made a joint front with the co-operation from Pratihar Nag Bhatt first, and the King of 'Sambhar and Ajmer Ajay Raj, Dhawal of Harotiy, Mad's (Jaisalmer) Administrator Dev Raj Bhati, and the son of King Dahir, namely Jai Singh. In the leadership of Bappa the Military of joint front, fought the Battle with full bravery against the military of Khalifa of Arab and defeated the Nayab Tamim of Sindh and also won the war and occupied the provinces upto gram, grak and Khurasan, Bappa Rawal got married so many times here. He again made Hindus to such persons, who were converted to Muslims forcefully. The writer of Arabian text, namely 'Fathushul Baldan' said that in India again the worshipping of Idol (god's idol) started. Accordingly, Bappa Rawal extended the area of Mewar, till gram, grak and Khurasan and at the first time he restricted the attacks of Khalifa's of Arab and on conversion of Religion from Hindu to Muslims.

Bappa Rawal improved and strengthened the Administrative set up and did a lot of work of various constructions also. He also issued a coin, made of gold. Bappa Rawal, in the fourth Ashram of life, when he entered and gave the throne of Mewar to his son and took retirement while following the way of Harit Rashi and followed the path of a Saint, and he died in the same manner as of Saint. His funeral was done, in the North direction, 3km away from Eklingji and this place of funeral is known as Bappa Rawal, where a tomb is constructed in the shape of a temple. According to the forecast of Harit Rashi, the successors of Bappa Rawal's Dynasty ruled the Mewar till 1947, when Independence was given to India, by British Rulers. As such the Kings of the Dynasty of Bappa Rawal could rule Mewar till thirteen thousand years, which had been the oldest and longest living Dynasty in India's Kingship.

The historiyan, Ojha, has written about Bappa Rawal, to be an independent, influensive and the honour of higher state. Dr. Gopinath Sharma, admitted, that Bappa Rawal had been the most successful King of Mewar. He was a religious minded person. Colonel Tod explained that Bappa Rawal was the founder of various dynasties of his family and was the best ruler, not only this, but he was the most respectful and honourable King for the people of Mewar and was ever last living by his fame. British Scholar, Charles Martin, has written that the proud of Arabian Military was put down to zero by the Military of Bappa Rawal. The poet, Shyamal Das has written that it is beyond doubt that Bappa Rawal was very brave, famous and intelligent and influencive King of Mewar. He was full of bravery and proved him better ruler of his prior Dynasties of his forefathers.

2. Prithvi Raj Chouhan-

In the last period of 12th century, the Chouhan imperialism was very powerful in Northern India. The expansion of Chouhan imperialism reached upto Gangapur from Kannog (Mewar) Border. After the death of Someshwar Dev, Prithvi Raj Chouhan became the King at the early age of 11 years only. Mother of Prithvi Raj Chouhan Karpuri Devi, became the guardian of her unadult son. Prithvi Raj Chouhan Administered the government by the cooperation of military and ministers. He appointed, the persons of his faith, on the most important posts.

Prithvi Raj Chouhan

From the angle of expanding of Imperialism of his rule, he followed the Policy of Victory only. In the year 1182, the Ruler of Mahoba, Chandel King was defeated. After this, Prithvi Raj Chouhan struggled and fought with Chaluks and Gahardwala's of Kannoj.

In the year 1178, the Ruler of Gajni, Mohammad Gauri, attacked Gujarat. The ruler of this place Bhim Dev Chalukya defeated Mohammad Gauri very badly in the field of Khasharad. Gauri occupied the adjoining parts of territory Siyal Kot and Lahore. Mohammad Gauri was defeated so many times by Prithvi Raj Chouhan from the year 1186 to 1191. In the various Epics it is mentioned that Mohammad Gauri was defeated 7 times as per Hammir Epic, In Prithvi Raj Prabandah 8 times, In Prithvi Raj Rasoo 21 times and in Chintamani 23 times defeats are mentioned. Between these two emperors two most famous battles took place- In Taraian, first war, of the year 1191, the Military of Gauri was heavily defeated by Rajputs and in Gori's Military very bad feelings of depression entered and Gori was injured by the Arm- 'Bhala of Govind Raiy' and his companion took him away for protection. The Army of Prithvi Raj Chouhan did not follow the running away military of Gori.

In the year 1192, Gori entered the field of Tarayin, with new preparations, and Mohammad Gori in the garb of peace treaty, put Prithvi Raj Chouhan under the darkness and Gori attacked suddenly in the early morning on Gujarat, at this time the Military of Prithvi Raj Chouhan was busy in daily cleaning (Nitya Karm) of stomach. Govind Raiy and other military persons were killed in the field of war. Gori followed the running away military of Prithvi Raj Chouhan and took them under controlling arena. On Delhi and Ajmer, the Turks got occupation. In Prithvi Raj Rasso, it is mentioned that Chouhan was brought to Gajni and he was made blind, there Chouhan killed Gori by his shabd bhedi baan and then surrendered himself. But Historians are not having harmonious and unanimous opinion about this aspect.

Prithvi Raj Chouhan was full of bravery, courage and unique intelligent working style. He was having special attachment with music and literature. Poets and writers like Jayanak, Vidhyapati, Bagishwar, Janardan, Chand Bardai etc. were protected and encouraged there in his regime.

Prithvi Raj Chouhan made acquainted to neighbouring states about their power, with the object to protect his imperial state. So many invaders were defeated and put outside the area of his state and compelled them to run away. Inspite of all these things, he was lacking diplomacy and foresightedness. He developed bitterness with attached states while fighting with them and indulged in war against them. After defeating Mohammad Gori, he did not abolish him fully. Dr. Dashrath Sharma has narrated him to be a successful king and Administrator.

3. Maharana Sanga (1509-1528 B.C.)

After Maharana Kumbha, Maharana Sangram Singh (who was known as 'Sanga' also) had been a very famous king of Mewar. He expanded his Imperialistic effect and the borders area were expanded. He also organised all the rules of Rajputana under him. After the death of raimal, in the year 1509, Rana Sanga became the King of Mewar. Neighbouring state, the Ruler of Gujarat, Mohammad Begra, he struggled and it was necessary to fight against Muslim powerful rulers, so as to establish the fame and glory of Kumbha's period. Rana Sanga fought in the year 1520, with the King of Gujarat and Rana Sanga won the War. Likewsie, the Sultan of Malwa, Mohammad Khilji was also defeated and was arrested by Maharana Kumbha. Afterwards, he was released with the condition that in future he will behave and live properly.

Maharan Sanga organised his powers and the nearby places of Mewar, were also taken in control,

which were under the regime of Delhi Saltnat. In 1517, the Emperor (Sultan) of Delhi, Ibrahim Lodhi and Rana Sanga met with war, in the field of Khatoli, and the Sultan of Delhi- Mohammad Lodhi was defeated very badly. After this defeat, Sultan was again defeated in the war of Baadi, (Dholpur). In the local literature it is found that for so many times Sanga defeated the Sultans of Mandu and Gujarat. In the first war of Panipat, Baber defeated Ibrahim Lodhi, and got possession of Delhi Saltnat. At this time, the main challenge before him was Maharana Sanga of Mewar, because he was the only person who was full of bravery and was capable to attack and win Delhi Saltnat. At that time Mewar became the centre of power. All the states started to recognise the power and influence of Maharana Sanga. According to Colonel Tod- 7 kings of higher category, 9 Rao and 104 Sardars, always used to be present before him, so as to obey him, whenever it is needed.

Maharana Sanga

It was but certain, that there had been the possibility of war between Babar and Rana Sanga, regarding capturing power of governance. In the beginning Babar occupied Kalvi and Dholpur at Bayana, Rana Sanga was having control and Maharana Sanga defeated the Mughals in the 'War of Bayana'. The Mughal soldiers explained and narrated the stories of power and bravery of the military of Maharana Sanga. Through such narrations, the moral power of Babar's military went downwards. In 1527, the 'Battle of Khanwa' took place between Sanga and Babar. The Mughal military got discouraged in the beginning due to bravery of the military of Sanga. Babar attacked from the back side of Rajputs. In between, Maharana Sanga got injured with the arrow of Mughal's and got unconscious, so he was removed from the battle field. After becoming conscious, he again narrated his wish to fight with Babar, but the Feduals advised him to not do like this, looking to the loss of Khanwa Battle. Maharana Sanga pledged the oath, that till he defeats Babar, he will never enter Chittorgarh of Mewar. But, afterwards at some distant place from Kalpi, he died due to illness, in the year 1528.

Maharana Sanga was the last Rajput King, who, under his leadership organised all the Rajput Rulers, so as to fight against foreign invaders, with bravery. In his leadership about 108 Kings and Maharaja used to fight in Battle. He continuously protected Mewar, due to his Bravery in Battles and powerful influencive in organising all the kings. The people also fully supported Maharana Sanga, while keeping such views in mind. With this inspiration, Maharana Sanga, defeated and arrested the rulers of Delhi, mandu and Gujarat, and released afterwards with some conditions. All the Kings of Rajputana and Kings of outer area also, used to feel proud, to fight under the leadership of Maharana Sanga, because of fame, glory and bravery. In the war Maharana Sanga got injured at 80 places in the body, lost one leg and one hand, but still his body was as strong as made of strong metal like steel. He was having strong will, bravery and manhood in his life and as such he became immortal in the history. Sarbilas Sarda, writes that “among the rulers of Mewar, Maharana Sanga was the most famous and great king. He put mewar to its development on the strength of rulers like Sanga. Even then, after all these things he failed to understand the fraud steps of foreigners and war skills and as such could not adopt the new techniques of war. And the enemies took benefits of such shortcomings.

4. Meera Bai

The Bhakta Shiromani, Meera Bai, was born in 1948 B.C. in the Dynasty of Rathores of Merta and

in the family of Ratan Singh (son of Rao Duda) in the village Kurki. It is known that the mind of Meera Bai, since the childhood, got more nearness to the worship of Lord Krishna. Meera Bai used to say "that no one is mine, except Girdhar Gopal".

Meera Bai

In the year 1519, Meera Bai got married to Bhojraj and son of Rana Sanga, who was Maharana of mewar, but her mind was nearer to lord Krishna only. After 7 years from the date of marriage, Bhojraj died. After the death of her father Ratan Singh and Maharana Sanga she got bitter feeling from this world. She concentrated hersellf fully to the devotion for Lord Krishna only.

The new ruler of Mewar Vikramaditya tortured Meera Bai in various manners, but she continued to worship Lord Krishna from mind and heart both, uninterruptedly. Meera firstly went to the house of her father and afterwards went to Vrandavan. Meera spent her last time of life at Dwarka.

The main basis of the devotion of Meera was emotion and reverence. Meeera did a lot of discussion and mutual talks with various Saints, but did not follow any single path of religion. Meera was fully devotees of Lord Krishna and could be named as the real representative of sagun religion. Her travel of Devotion always started from the feelings of viewing Lord Krishna with due reverence. She used to say that "I am sting as sad lady and my eyes are feeling pain" but after receiving the devotion of Krishna, she uttered that "I have got a lot of wealth in the form of Ram Ratan Dhan (Krishna's Devotion)"

The period of Meera Bai, was the period of utmost rise of feudals, under such difficult period, Meera Bai uttered with full strength against the bad conventions, For freedom of females and against classification on the basis of castes. Meera always preferred the simple way of devotion, instead of the procedure of knowledge. She was a very popular devotee and common man was always influenced by Meera Bai and some and her songs belonging to devotion of Krishna, as folk songs.

5. Panna Dhai

The name of Panna Dhai is famous not in the history of Rajasthan only but in the whole history of Indian culture and known as the symbol of Maternity feelings, sacrifice, courage and attachment for children. Panna Dhai was synonymous to the terms like devotion and sacrifice.

After the death of Maharana Sanga, in Mewar there had been instability of administration. After Sanga, Ratan Singh became the Ruler of Mewar, but he died very soon in the year 1531 only. After him, Vikramaditya became the Ruler of Mewar. But the people of Mewar feudals were not satisfied with the behaviour of the King and his mother Hadi Rani Karmavati.

Banveer, killing the son of Panna

Mewar had to bear a big loss of people and wealth, due to attacks by Bahadur Shah Jhaffar. The son of Prithviraj, who was the brother of Rana Sanga, Banveer assassinated Vikramaditya in the year 1536 and occupied the seat of the kingship of Mewar. He wanted to kill child Udai Singh also,

who was the younger brother of Vikramaditya, so as to Administrate the Kingship of Mewar, without any worries for future, but he failed in doing so.

Panna was the Dhay mother of Udai Singh , and after the Johar of Rani Karmavati, the whole responsibility of take care of Udai Singh, was shifted on the shoulders of Panna Dhay. Udai Singh was the future king of Mewar state, so Banveer wanted to kill this successor of Mewar and wanted this rule forever, but Panna Dhay was very brave lady. So she protected Udai Singh, with full devotion, strength and faithfulness. Panna Dhay was also having her son Chandan, almost similar age group of Udai Singh. Panna Dhay used to live in the Kumbha Mahal (Palace of Rana Kumbha) of Chittorgarh Fort. When she heard the crying voices from Jananakhana, she could follow and understood that the blood sucker Banveer is searching Udai Singh, with the intention to kill him. She at once hidden Udai Singh in blank bucket and put the leaves of tress on him and concealed him in this way, she gave the bucket to the servant of her confidence, with the purpose to take out Udai Singh from the Palace at the shortest time. After this she put the Prince like dress on the body of her son Chandan, and made him sleep on the bed of Udai Singh. When the sucker of power, Banveer entered the room of Panna, in the Palace, Panna gave indication from her hand towards the bed of Udai Singh where Chandan was sleeping and Banveer assassinated with sword thinking him to be Udai Singh. Panna did the last funeral of little boy Chandan, her son at once and just after this she reached the Jagirdar Ram Singh of Devliya, along with the faithful servant, with whom Udai Singh was lying in the bucket. She got full respect there and from this place, she took Udai Singh with full safety, to the Fort of Kumbhalgarh. Udai Singh was grown up there, in the form of maternal son of Asha Shah Depura, Chopidar of the fort.

No where in the world, any example of such sacrifice as that of Panna Dhay is available. From the very date, Panna Dhay is getting the respect and immortal memories of the symbol of the highest sacrifice and faithfulness to the Kingdom. She is known as brave lady of Mewar also.

6. Veer Durgadas Rathore

Durgadas

The feelings of faithfulness and patriotism were fully stored in Veer Durgadas Rathore of Mewar. Such a great person, was born in the house of Aaskaran, minister of Maharaja Jasvant Singh, in the year 1638. Aaskaran was Jagirdar of Dunera. Due to annoyance with his wife, he left her and son Durgadas and they were left alone to live the rest of life. Durgadas started living in the village Luna, with his mother. Likewise the mother of Shivaji, his mother also made him to learn and keep the feelings of Patriotism for Marwar. He started the work of agriculture in his village.

Veer Durgadas Rathore set the example of patriotism on the strength of his talent. In the year of 1678, the Maharaja of Jodhpur, Jaswant Singh died, at that time he was not having any son, but his wife was pregnant. Aurangzeb wanted that as successor, Inder Singh may be made Maharaja of Jodhpur, so he interrupted with the intention that he will be a puppet king in his hands. But in between this, Maharani gave birth to his son Ajit Singh, and the news about his birth reached the Badshah also. But in this regard, the intention of Aurangzeb was not fair, so he took possession of Jodhpur under his regime. And started searching at so many places regarding Treasure (Khajana) and instead of 36 lakhs rupees, Jodhpur was handed over to his Spaniel Inder Singh. Aurangzeb arranged to call the

Maharanies with family to Delhi, with the excuse of 'Mansab'. Aurangzeb wanted that Kunwar Ajit Singh may support him fully, after calling all of them to Delhi.

The Leaders of Rathore family were not happy with such acts of Aurangzeb. They could see dishonesty in the intention of Aurangzeb. They wanted that Ajit Singh should reach Jodhpur along with all members of his family. The responsibility to take Ajit Singh to Jodhpur very safely, was given to Veer Durgadas, Pancholi Keshar Singh, Bhati Ragunath, Ranchod Das Goyantadasot, Rathore Surajmal etc. They were unable to oppose the Badshah openly, so they did handle the work diplomatically. According to the plan of Veer Durgadas, all the Sardars pledged that by hook or crook, they would manage to send the Prince of Rathore, royal family, to Jodhpur safely. Some of the Sardars left the jadir for sometime, with the object to keep Badshah in confusion and some of the Sardars remained in the area, nearby Delhi, so that the team, who had the duty to take away Ajit Singh to Jodhpur, can be protected from the attack of Mughal Military and they may chase the Mughal's military to compel and to runaway or they will be defeated in the field of battle. Behind this plan, the farsightedness and Intelligensia of Veer Durgadas was there, with which the bad intentions of Aurangzeb could be failed and defeated or rereplied.

Veer Durgadas, alongwith his Rathore Sardars, started towards Marwar with cleverness, while having Ajit Singh with him and the ladies were also with them under the garb and dress of male persons.

When, this information reached Badshah, the Mughal military chased them, Rathore Ranchod Das fought with them, alongwith 70 supporters, but all were killed in this struggle, but by that time Veer Durgadas reached to faraway distance, but the Mugal Military also moved ahead. At this occasion, Veer Durgadas, himself managed to keep stand by the Mugal's team in the way, by that time the royal family moved at a very far distance, Veer Durgadas, while making safe himself from the enemies, reached and met Ajit Singh, nearby the evening time. By this time, the quantity of Mughal Military was very little, hence it moved back towards Delhi. As such, Ajit Singh could reach Jodhpur safely, due to farsightedness and wisdom of Veer Durgadas, after the sacrifice of Sardars in the struggle.

In the struggle of Marwar and Mughal's, Veer Durgadas also played a very important role. Veer Durgadas, with the help of diplomacy and Mewar as well, could win the support of Akbar, son of Aurangzeb, while providing the greed of making, Badshah (emperor) of Hindustan. As such, in the Nadol village of Marwar, Akbar, declared himself as Badshah, but Aurangzeb could curb the revolt of Akbar, and the struggle of Rathore's against Mugal's continued. In the year 1707, after the death of Aurangzeb, Rathore's again occupied the area of Marwar. In getting these rights of taking possession of Marwar, Veer Durgadas played very important role.

Veer Durgadas set the example of religious tolerance, while giving place with him, to the son and daughter of Akbar i.e. Buland Akhtar and Safmutinnisa. He arranged for them the Muslim education and culture and they were managed to be sent to Akbar, with full respect and safety. In Marwar, Veer Durgadas was given honour, more than Ajit Singh himself.

The council of Sardars also used to pay more weight and respect to the advice of Veer Durgadas. And as such, Ajit Singh could feel ill of Durgadas and became envious of him and he used to feel as annoyed with Durgadas. So, Ajit Singh used to oppose even, the good advice of Durgadas, regarding the war policy. If Ajit Singh could have followed the policy of Veer Durgadas, the position of Marwar could have been more glorious, in the struggle of Marwal and Mughal's under these circumstances, Veer Durgadas got annoyed with Ajit Singh and left Marwar, came down to Udaipur of Mewar. Here Maharana of Mewar, gave him full

respect and he was allowed to live in Mewar with full respect. He was awarded the Jagir of Vijaypur and it was managed to pay Rs. 500/- per day to him. He became the administrator of Rampura. In the last days, Durgadas went to Ujjain and there he died in the end. As such his funeral was done at the Bank of Shipra River in Ujjain.

7. Rao Maldev

As Maharana Pratap and Maharana Sanga increased the power and prestige of Mewar, likewise in the leadership of Maldev the Rathores of Jodhpur-Marwar received big powers and increased the power of Marwar and consequently, he extended the area of Marwar, upto Delhi.

Maldev took the benefits of instability in Delhi, after the death of Babar. After the death of Maharana Sanga, in Mewar also, some instability persisted. At that time Maldev was very powerful administrator among the Rajput Rulers.

Maldev, in the beginning got possession of Bhadrajune, Raipur, Nagaur, Merta, Ajmer etc., which were the neighbouring states. Afterwards, he occupied the area of Chaksu, Fatehpur, Toda, Lalsot. There was struggle continuously between the Humanyu and Shershah, Maldev took the benefit and he got possession on Hindon and Bayana also and he extended regime. Along with these states or his area of places, he also occupied the areas of Sivana, Sanchor, and Jalore.

Maldev adopted the policy of co-operation with Humanyu. When Maldev was busy in increasing his imperialism, Humanyu was indulged in struggle with Shershah, to safe guard his kingdom. Humanyu had to get away after his defeat from Shershah in the battle of Kanng. He had to move hither and thidher, to get shelter of some powerful person. At this time Maldev did the work with Diplomacy. Maldev was having doubts about the future problems from Shershah Suri. He sent the message to Humanyu, to provide the help of 20,000, horseriders, so as to face the future fight with the increasing powers of Shershah. The borders of both the states of Shershah and Maldev were touching each other. Shershah, in 1543 isvi, sent 80,000 soldiers against Maldev, so that powers of the king of Marwar, Maldev may be demolished. The powerful state of Maldev was a big challenge to Shershah. So both of them prepared baricades against each other, and Shershah collected his force at 'Bawrd' and Maldev at 'Girsi'. About a month, the Military camp continued on the same places as usual. For so many times, Shershah got frustrated and thought to get back to his original place.

Shershah adopted the policy of doing frauds and cleverness, when he felt that through peaceful ways objects could not be achieved. The attempts were made to get divide Maldev and his commanders namely- Kumpa and Jeta. He sent twenty thousand rupees at the camp of Kumpa and messaged him that blankets will also be arranged for his group. Afterwards, twenty thousand rupees were sent to the camp of commander Jeta also and informed, that, he may manage swords from Sirohi and these informations were also sent to Maldev by Shershah.

Maldev could not understand this type of fraud and he suspected on his own military commanders and returned back of Jodhpur, without fighting the battle, on 04th January 1544 in the night hours, but those commanders Jeta and Kumpa continued to fight in the battle field, on whom Maldev stopped believing them as faithful. On 05th June 1544, the remaining Rathore Sardars fought the battle in the field of 'Sumel' Jeta and Kumpa fought the battle very bravely, with the help of 1200 soldiers and the Afghan forces got weakend in the battle field, but at this Junction, Jhalal Khan reached in the war field, along with military forces and Rajput soldiers were being encircled in the battle field. Jeta and Kumpa lost their lives in the battle. Abbas Khan has written, in his narrations, that Sher Shah was having very little hope to win the war and after strong attempts he

could win the war. He was compelled to utter these words that "For a handful of millet, the colonnade of Hindustan would have lost from my hands".

Maldev occupies a very important position, not only in Marwar, but in the history of India. He changed the small state, into a big Marwar state, it had 58 Parganas. He developed such a big Marwar state, after fighting 52 battles. Akbar also could win Jodhpur, only after the death of Maldev. Maldev was not only a brave warrior, but having the helping attitude also. Famous writers have paid due respect to him and called the 'Hindu King'. He was having good knowledge of Sanskrit language. But inspite of all such positive things, he was lacking the quality of farsightedness. He suspected his commanders Jeta and Kumpa and turned his victory into defeat against the war with Shershah. He made his enemy to Bikaner and Mewar, for no reasons.

8. Amrita Devi

In the present time big plans are being implemented for the plantation of trees and for the security of trees in jungle. For the same purpose, one incident and example of sacrifice took place in Marwar area, about 300 years back, in the village namely Khejarli.

The Hishighness of Jodhpur Abhay Singh needed wood for the construction of his new palace. In 1787 A.C., on Sukhla Dashmi of Bhadra Pad, Maharaja sent a platoon of military to the village Khejari for the cutting of trees, of Khejari to fulfil the demand of timber for furniture etc. for the new palace. At this time one lady namely Amrita Devi Vishnoi of this village, opposed the cutting of trees of Khejari and embarrassed the tree in her arms. She was accompanying her three daughters also. Amrita Devi said that for the protection of the trees, she is ready to sacrifice her life also and just after such action, she put her head ahead and told that if trees can be saved, after the sacrifice of her head and life, this will not be a contract of high cost. Her three daughters were also ready for such sacrifice. The soldiers of Maharaja, cut the face from the body of

Amrita Devi- opposing the cutting of tree

Amrita Devi and her daughters also said on the spot. At this time, the day was Tuesday, so this day is known as 'Black Tuesday' alongwith this, while opposing the actions of soldiers of Maharaja of cutting the trees of Khejari, about 363 other Vishnoi persons were also killed. That's why in the Vishnoi community 'cutting of trees is strictly prohibited'.

By this incident, the situations became tense and full of emotions and the stage of starting of riots came into existence. The group of tree cutters, working under the control of Girdhar Das Bhandari, was also shocked after leaving the mission, he reached Jodhpur and conveyed the whole story to Maharaja.

Maharaja issued the orders immediately for stopping the work of cutting of trees and he declared this area as a 'protected Zone' for animals and trees.

This is a very unique incident in the whole world, that for the protection of Khejari tree, life was sacrificed. There is a tomb in Khejari village, of Amrita Devi and other Martyrs (Shaheed) in their memory. The people of Vishnoi caste, protect the life of deer likewise till today.

9. Maharaja Surajmal

After the death of Maharaja Badam Singh, his son, Surajmal Jat became the ruler of Bharatpur in 1756 A.D. He was called as plato of Jat caste, due to his political skill and bright wisdom. In his state, Agra, Meerut, Mathura, Aligarh etc., were included. Surajmal was comparatively more powerful king than all other states. In his military 1500 horse riders and 2500 soldiers were of normal nature. He left about 10 crore treasure at the time of his death.

Maratha leader Holkaar attacked on Kumher in 1754 A.D. Maharaja stopped the attempts of Nagibudola to make India as religious state with the help of Ahmed Shah Abdali. He also eliminated Afgan Sardar Asad Khan, Meer Bhakshi, Salavat Khan etc. In the year 1757 Ahmed Shah Abdali reached Delhi, and his military attacked the holy palace Brij, with the intention to abolish it. To save this holy place, Surajmal came forward only and his soldiers gave their lives also. Abdali returned to his destination.

When Sadashiv Rao Bhau was coming ahead to defeat Ahmed Shah Abdali, at that time itself, Peshva Balaji Baji Rao advised Bhau to pay attention to the advice of Surajmal, who was rising as a main power in North India. But Bhau did not pay attention on the advise regarding war and he had to meet the defeat in the war with Abdali. In this war, a big loss was occurred to the Maratha families in the state of Surajmal, to get shelter. But Abdali warned Surajmal to hand over those Marathas who reached his state and took shelter. But Surajmal refused to handover Marathas and accepted the challenge given by Abdali. This step was appreciated by other rulers and scholars as well. At the time of Maharaja Surajmal, this Jat state was at its utmost powerful position. In the middle time of Mugals rule, he established the most powerful state of Bharatpur. Bharatpur state became such a powerful place, that Mugals and other political forces also remained depending to demand help from this state.

10. Govind Guru

In Vagad area (Dungarpur, Banswara) Govind Guru made full efforts for the enrichment of Bheel community, in the field of social and moral values. He was a great society reformer. The birth of Govind Guru took place on 20th December, 1858 in the village of Basiyan of Dungarpur state. In the year 1880, when Swami Dayanand Saraswati came to Udaipur, Govind Guru was highly impressed by his thoughts and consequently he did a lot of work in the Bheel Community for the Social reforms and public Awakening. He left taking wine and meat. He started a big Independence movement among the Vanvasi's Bheel Community. This movement was most effective to the extent, that the Britishers, Kings and Jagirdars along with Priests who were working in Jungle, got afraid of this movement.

He established "Samp Sabha" with the object to organise Bheel Community and to bring them into the main stream of the society. He also started "Bhagat Andolan" with the intention to keep the Bheels in the Arena of Hindu Religion. Govind Guru provided social awakening through the Samp Assembly in the Bheel Community of Dungarpur, Banswara and a part of Gujarat with such works and movements of Govind Guru, the Administration got the doubt and started to press the Bheels to leave "Samp Sabha".

The former rulers when started to press Bheel Society to do the jobs of slavery and to leave the farming and fundamental rights were also snantched, then they revolted against the then

Rulers and started the struggle movement. Govind Guru gave the message of education and social reforms. The Britishers were of the opinion that such reforms and movements are aimed to establish "Bheel State". In April 2013, Govind Guru was arrested by Dungarpur state but afterwards he was released also.

After getting released from arrest, Govind Guru went to the hills of Mangarh, which is on the border of Banswara.

In October 1913, he managed to send the message to Bheel community, to reach to the hills of Mangarh consequently, Bheel people got collected in a big number. They started beating the police of Banswara state. They attacked the Hills of Mangarh also. The first conference of Bheel community was called on the hills of Mangarh. On Aswin Sukhla, Purnima, every year the conference of Samp Sabha, started to be organised. In this sequence, the first conference of Samp Sabha was held on 17th November 1913, on the hills of Mangarh. Where a large number of people gathered.

The governments of Banswara, Eder and Dungarpur got alerted. After the sanction of A.G.G., from 6th to 10th November of 1913, two companies of Bheel core, one company of Belegali Rifels and Jat Regiment reached the Hills and just after reaching started firing on the Bheels, in this attack about 1500 Bheels were killed as per government report. Hence, the Bhagat Movement was crushed and Govind Guru was announced the imprisonment of 10 years and he was sent to jail. Though, in this movement no big political ambition or interest of Bheels was involved, but Britishers and ruler took it as a big challenge and they got an excuse to kill the people through firing and they were put to death. This incident is known as "Jaliyawala Bagh Kand" of Rajasthan. Govind Guru was always supporter of non violence movement. This movement developed consciousness not only in Bheel community but in the other communities also. After this the Bheels decided to oppose and to give an open call against the unnecessary taxes and cruelty of the government. Britishers and state regime both had to face the voice against the rulers and Britishers.

11. Kali Bai

Kali Bai Bheel belonged to the place 'Rastapaal' of Dungarpur district. After the declaration of freedom movement of 1942, the inhabitants of Rajasthan also came openly to oppose the colonial rule of Britishers. Bhogi Lal Pandya, Sobha Lal Gupt, Manikya Lal Verma, co-operated in the establishment of "Dungarpur Seva Sangh". This organisation used to operate a school for the tribal people and down trodden persons of Bheel community. But in the regime period of Britisher's government, the operations of such schools were restricted. The Praja Mandal opposed very strongly i.e. the policy of British government, not to allow operation of schools in Dungarpur district and demanded the eradication of Colonial Rule in India. To the workers of Praja Mandal, the king of Dungarpur started torturing and they were sent to Jail.

Likewise, one school used to be operated at the House of Nana Bhai Khant. The state police reached to Rastapal on 19th June 1947. Nanabhai Khant refused to close that school. Police had beaten him very badly and he was sent to Jail. Nana Bhai Khant died due to the torturing of police. This incident increased and added to the more dissatisfaction and opposition of British Rule. Police started beating, the teacher Senga Bhai Bheel of the school, only because that after the death of Nana Bhai he continued the teaching in the school. Police tucked him behind the truck and dragged him on the road. The student of the school, Kali Bai could not see this incident even after refusal of the police, she ran after the truck and cut down that rope and got released the teacher from the terror of police. The police got more annoyed due to this action. So consequently, just after Kali Bai bowed down to take Sanga Bhai, police fired on the back of the Kali Bai and Kali Bai got down on the earth and became unconscious and

after ward she died in Dungarpur hospital.

A strom of dissatisfaction arose among the Bheels against the Vandalistic actions and murder of one teacher and one girl of the school. About twelve thousand people got collected with their Arms. The big pressure was laid up on the Maha Rawal Dungarpur that he should release the workers of Praja Mandal from the jail. He should try to get down the anger of Bheels and should make them agree to move to their homes again. Now in Rastapal a monuments of 13 years old Kali Bai is established and every year a fair is being organised in the memory of her martyrdom of that long rememberable girl and to pay homage to her achievements and actions done in such a infant age.

Lok Devata :-

Such people are known as folk gods (Lok Devata) who struggled and sacrificed for the defence of religion, land and animals. Till today the people have faith and honour in their minds for folk gods. In the memory of such folk gods, famous fairs are organised.

In the past time some people came forward before the public who did a lot of work regarding the security of people and animals specially cows, downtrodden classes and defence of religion and sacrificed their lives ultimately. Among such persons Gogaji, Tejaji and Pabuji's names can be remembered. Looking to their courage and functions of welfare people, have placed them among the category of Lok Devata (Folk Gods) and pay tribute and honour to them in the same way as it is being paid to recognise Folk God. In this series,

Tejaji **Gogaji** **Pabuji**

some famous people appeared in the public, who got influenced the people, by their Valoar, miracles and accomplishment. Among this category, Mallinathji, Dev Narayan and Hurbhuji's names may be included appreciately. All these persons are being included in the category of Folk Gods of Rajasthan.

1. Tejaji

Cow protector Tejaji was the resident of the village Kharnalieye of Nagaur district. He was born in the Bhandrapad month on 14th day of Vikram Sanwat 1130. He even did not realise that he was a married person because he was married in the childhood. One day when he was ploughing the farming land, his bhabhi reached farming land a bit late along with meals for him. Tejaji asked his Bhabhi how she got late in reaching here, then his Bhabhi replied that his wife is enjoying life at her parental place and I am being crushed due to overloading work. Tejaji felt it somewhat bad. So without taking meals, after knowing the address of his father-in-law's place. He started immediately to his In-law's house riding on the horse. When he reached his In-law's house, his mother-in-law was milking the cows.

When the noise of the nails of the horse of Tejaji, was heard by the cows, the milking cows stopped providing milk. The mother-in-law of Tejaji, uttered; on this happening that “who is the offspring of snake who has provoked the cow”? When Tejaji heard this sentence, his heart was hurt. He immediately got back. When the members of In-law's family knew about his annoyance, they tried to get him tense free and asked him to stay here but he did not agree. His wife after making full efforts, she could get his consent for staying one night, but Tejaji told that he would not stay in the In-law's house at any rate. Consequently he stayed at the house of one Gujri namely- 'Lancha'. In the night, some thieves came to the house of Lancha, and took away a few cows with them. When Tejaji came to know about this incident, he followed the thieves on the horse in the way he found that a snake was burning in the

wood pile, Tejaji took out from the fire that snake with the help of Teak of the spear (Bhala) then the snake said to Tejaji "I will bite you", Tejaji replied I shall come back after getting the cows released, then you may bite me. When Tejaji returned his full body was covered with the signs of blood. Then the snake asked him, your body is covered with blood, at what point, I should bite, then Tejaji took out his tongue from the mouth and said to the snake, "Bite here". The snake bit Tejaji's tongue and after his death, she also became Sati. The achievements of Tejaji regarding releasement of cows and to execute the words spread out speedily and at so many places the idols of Tejaji were put with due regards and the people started to worship him as Folk God. Such places are commonly known by the people as 'Sthanak'. Those people who suffer from snake bite, are taken to such Sthanak for the treatment. In the grand memory of Tejaji, every year, on Bhadrapad Shukla Dashmi, a Fair is organised, where thousands of people come and worship Tejaji as Folk God.

2. Gogaji

Goga Chouhan was the resident of Daderva (Churu District). His father's name was Jenhvar and the name of mother was Biel. Biel was the devotee of Guru Goraknath. Goraknath gave the snake, made of goggle essence and asked Biel that she should drink this snake after mixing into milk. Goraknath got pleased with the worship and faith of Biel, so it was provided to her as blessings. Consequently after drinking that milk, she gave birth to Gogaji. The parents wanted to get Gogaji married with Budoji's daughter Kamal Dey, but Budoji did not want it. One day Gogaji took the look of snake, sitting in between the flowers. When Kameldey tried to take flowers, that snake bit her. In the end the accustomed thread of Gogaji, was worn in the hand, and she got alive again, as such after this she was married to Gogaji.

Gogaji fought the battle against the Sultan of Delhi Firoj Shah. In this Battle, the two cousins Arjan and Sarjan, were also fighting from the side of Sultan of Delhi. Both the brothers were killed in the war.

Gogaji told his mother about this incident at his house. She got highly annoyed with Gogaji and asked him to the leave the house, and never show his face to her. Goga felt it very badly and took the tomb, in living stage itself. On every Navmi of Bhadrapad of Krishna Paksh, it is celebrated as 'Goga Navmi' and he is worshipped as a warrior. Goga Rakhi, of nine folded thread is tied to both Hali (Farmer) and 'Hal' which is used in farming. The Fairs of Gogaji are organised in Daderva, Churu, Ratangarh etc. The main place of Gogaji is known as "Gogamedi", which is situated in the Fort of Indermangarh. The followers of Gogaji dance along with the big flag in the hands, on the voice of Jhangar and Drums. Night awakening is also done on such occasion. The persons out of Rajasthan, also come to attend the Fair of 'Gogamedi'.

3. Pabuji

Pabuji Rathore belonged to Kolhugarh. The two courageous warriors were his associate, to whom he liked. When Pabuji became young, at that time a proposal of his marriage from the Sodha Rana of Amarkot was received. His engagement was finalised. Pabuji was keeping relation of sister like with Charan Devi, namely Deval. Deval was possessing with him a very beautiful and full of all merits, mare, whose name was "Kesar Kalvi" Deval used to protect her cows through this mare. Thejind Rao Kinchi of Gayal was having an eye on this mare and he wanted to get it. Between Jind Rao and Pabuji, there was some Pique (contradictory views for each other) state of relations also.

On the eve of marriage, Pabuji demanded maire (Godi) from Deval Devi. Deval told him about the talk of Jind Rao, then Pabu said that if it is necessary. I shall leave the work in between and I shall reach soon. Deval handed over the mare. The

procession reached Amarcot. Jind Rao used the event as an opportunity and took away the cows of Deval and ran away. Pabuji was taking rounds for marriage in the wedding place. At that time the news of Deval reached him. Just after getting the message, Pabuji left the rounds of marriage in between, and as per promise made with Deval, he took ride on Kesar Kalvi mare and followed Jind Rao. The cows were got realised but Pabuji died in that struggle. The half married Jodi, burned alive (Sati Hona) along with the dead body of Pabuji. This story of their glory is compiled in the Fad of Pabuji, and its reading is very popular. Pabuji is worshipped as a Lok Devata.

4. Ram Devji :-

Ram Devji is also very popular among the Folk gods. He got birth in 15th century in the village 'Runicha' near Pokran, in the house of Ajmalji and Maina Devi. He got married to Netal Devi. Baba Ram Devji became famous as a proven (sidha) Saint, brave, miraculous, dutiful, Protector of people and cows. He objected the caste base system of society and gave a message of social harmony.

Ram Devji gave importance to the mercy for all living beings, worshipping guru or teacher, glory of human being and making efforts for the welfare of the society. He was a big social reformer also. In the society, people followed the way of life like sitting with untouchables and to sing religious songs with them.

To protect and keep nearer as a sister Dali Bai from downtrodden class, to oppose religious showmanships. He emphasised on the unity of hindus and muslims. Such were his main works as a contribution to the society. Ram Devji gave preference to the importance of Guru and talked about the purity of work. In the country side areas, Baba Ram Devji is famous as cows protector, soft hearted and kind to Human being. He is worshipped as folk god not only in Rajasthan, but in Gujarat also. He was a symbol of social harmony.

Ram Devji

In the picture of folk god Ram Devji, it is seen that while riding on a horse. He is having in one hand Javelin and in the other hand tandoora, which is a symbol of power and devotion.

On the tomb place of Ram Devji, the temple, Ram Sarovar, Parn Bawdri, Tomb of Dali Bai are known as Memorials. In so many villages there are Sthanak and Temples of Ram Devji. Under the three carf tree, on the Plinth, the marks of small legs of Ram Devji, are established. The temples are known as Deval or Devra. The oath in the name of Ram Dev is also taken, which is somewhere known as the Aan of Ram Dev Baba. In the night, full night awakening is followed by the devotees, which known as 'Jamma Gagran".

He is worshipped by the Devotees through Folk songs and poetic stories about himself. He underwent the tomb in Vikram Samvat 1515 (1458 century). On his tomb place in Runecha (Ram Devra), a big fair is organised every year on Bhadra Pad Shukla 2nd to Dashmi. Persons from the nearby villages also reach and enjoy the fair of Ram Devji.

5. Dev Narayan

Dev Narayan is considered as one of the prominent Lok Devata. Dev Narayan belonged to the Bagdawat Dynasty. He was a snake Dynasty Gujar, whose native place was at present 'Nag Pahad' near Ajmer. Gujar caste is considered as most

organised, well cultured and warrior type of people, and they had a very glorious history from the ancient period. A detail knowledge, about Dev Narayan may be collected from the Folk stories or Tales being told among the Gujar society. In Dev Narayan Maha-gatha, Dev Narayan has been introduced as related to Chouhan Dynasty.

Dev Narayan

According to the "Fad of Dev Narayan". Manadalji gave birth to Heera Ram. Heera Ram gave birth to Bagsingh and Bagsingh gave birth to 24 sons, who were known to be 'Bagdawat'. Among these, the elder brother Sawai Bhoj and his mother Sadu, gave birth to Dev Narayan in 911 AC (Vikram Sanwat 968) in the month of Magh, on the Shukla Saptmi. He took birth on the earth as miraculous person in Malaseri.

Dev Narayan was a brave warrior, who fought a number of wars against the autocratic and afrocious rulers. He had been a good ruler also. He got a lot of accomplishment from the Divine Power. On the strength of such miracles and divine power, he gradually got regard as equal to god for Gujar caste and Gujar started worshipping as God of their society. In the South and Western part of Rajasthan Dev Narayan is worshipped by Gujar Society in the form of God and as Avatar of Lord Vishnu. The people of Gujar Society got free from so many problems, griefs and troubles, while worshipping Dev Narayan as Lok Devata.

In the great story of Dev Narayan, the battle between Bagrawats and Ran Bhinaya there is intersting description his last time.

Dev Narayan passed at Demali or Dehmali, in Beawar Tehsil. There 6 km away from Masooda. He died on Bhadra Pad Shukla Saptmi. Pipalde requested Dev Narayan that she may be left alone without any offsprings. So, before leaving the world for marching towards Heaven, Pipalde got one son and one daughter from Dev Narayan. The names of the off springs were Bila and Beeli respectively. His son himself became his first priest.

Dev Narayan was also a cow protector, like Lord Krishna. He searched five cows of Bagrawat Dynasty, who were quite different and unique, in comparison to common cows. Dev Narayan, just after awakening in the morning, he used to see saremata cow. This cow was given by the Guru of Bagrawat i.e. Roopnath to Sawai Bhoj. Dev Narayan had 98000 animals. Whenever the king of Ran Bhinay takes away the herd of cows, Dev Narayan. Fight with the king and always got released the arrested cows. In the force of Dev Narayan, had a number of cow herds and they were about 1444 cow herds. Their main job was to graze the cows and project them. Dev Narayan conveyed the message to his followers, to protect the cows.

He fought against the evils and frauds and tried to replace them by good values. He struggled against terrorists and protected the truth and established peace in the society. He helped every helpless person. His followers have built up temples (which are generally known as Devras) at different places in Rajasthan.

These Devras are mostly available in Ajmer, Chittorgarh, Bhilwara and Tonk. The main temple of Dev Narayan is situated at Sawai Bhoj on the Bank of Khari River Bank, in Assind Tehsil, Distt. Bhilwara. One most prominent temple of Dev Narayan is, in the village Jodhpuria, at the far distance of 9 km from Vanasthali, in the Tehsil

Niway. The worshipping of Dev Narayan is done by Bhopas mostly in Devras. These Bhopas visit various places of Gujar community and narrate and sing the glorious stories of Dev Narayan, through the Phad (painted picture of Dev Narayan on solded cloth).

The Phad of Dev Narayan consist 335 songs which have been collected and written in about 1200 papers and in about 15000 lines. These songs remain in the memory of traditional Bhopas. Among the Phads of Folk Gods in Rajasthan, the Phad of Dev Narayan is the biggest and most popular among the Gujars.

Social Reformers

Saint Pipaji

The old fort of Gagron, built up on the bank of Kali Sindh River, had been the birth place of Peepaji. He was born on Chetra Shukla Purnima in the rulers family of Khinchi's, in Vikram Sawant 1417. He was most courageous warrior and a popular Ruler who always protected the people. While ruling the people, he fought a battle against the Sultan Firoj, Tuglak and got victory in the Battle. But when he observed that in the battle lot of Assasination, Bloodshed from earth to water, he decided to become a Saint. The father of Peepaji was having more belief in worshipping of God and to be more spiritual.

Due to grace of goddess, there were no draught and epidemic in the state. Even if any enemy attacked the state, he was defeated. After resigning the throne, he became the disciple of Ramanand. Among the twelve disciples, Peepaji was one of them.

He is considered as a great social reformer of the state. His life and character, both were very great. Saint Peepaji awakened the movement of Bhakti and Social Reforms in Rajasthan.

Peepaji became path finder of Social Reforms, through his personality and works. Peepaji was a

Saint Pipa Ji

Saint, poet and Social Reformer of Nirguna Ideology. Peepaji made full efforts and gave birth to a new class, in the old class system prevailing in India, the labour class was created as a new class. The newly created labour class was of the character that it used to do labour by hands and always receited 'Brahm' from his mouth.

From the new of Social Reforms, Saint Peepaji, always criticised strongly, the outward Pomps, Rituals and customs and gave the message that God in shapeless and Nirguna and it is omni present. It exists in the heart of man itself, all kinds of good things and accomplishments the test and identification of God lies always in the feelings of heart and mind both.

In the right manner, Peepaji was the protector of the policy of coexisting of Public Welfare. He left the worldly life and adopted the path of Bhakti, but never told others to leave the worldly life and to run away from the life. He also criticised such Saints, who were Saints only by the clothes and not by deeds. The feelings of untouchability, to be under veils by ladies, were strongly opposed by him in north India by first time. The most effective message was given by himself, when he allowed and kept his

wife Sita, without veil life long, wherever, among the Rajputs the existence of keeping veils by the ladies was very much strong. The feelings of worshipping the Guru were highly possessed by him. He knew that without having Guru, it is not possible to get rid of worldlines.

Jambhoji:-

Jambho Ji

Jambhoji was the founder of Vishnoi Society. He got birth on Ashtmi of Bhadrapad Sukhla, in 1508 B.C. (1451 Ishvi) in the Pipasar Village of District Nagour. His father's name was Lohatji Panwar and mother's name was Hansa Devi. He did the job of grazing animal for about 20 years and after this, he became Saint and served the Society. He died in Vikram Sanwat 1593.

In Vikram Sanwat 1542, on Ashatmi of Kartik Krishna, he established the first Peeth at the place namely Sambhra Thal and established the Vishnoi Society. The Ruler class and the Elite class, both were impressed by him. The principles of Jambhoji were related to the day to day life of people. Jambhoji insisted the followers to follow 29 Rules, in the life. Vishnoi name was also given, based on (Biss-Nine) (20-9) figures, always stood for and Jambhoji was peace lover, soft hearted, self made, co-ordinator, liberal thinker, protector of Human Religion and environment. He was the supporter of Hindu Muslim unity and mutual coordination.

Jambhoji helped the common man at the time of draught. He explained that for the achievement of God, it is not at all essential to become hermit. Near Samrathal, at Mukam Place, Every year a Fair is organised twice in the memory of Jambhoji. Jambhoji always insisted on the purity of character and fundamental human values. The collective Nomenclature of his lessons, is known as "Sabadvani" The Vishnoi Society is continuously making efforts for protecting the trees and environment and the assassinations of animals, due to the preachings of Jambhoji.

Jasnath:-

Among the social reformers of Rajasthan, the name of Jasnath occupies an important place. In Vikram Sanwat 1539, Jasnath was born at Katriyasar Place (Bikaner). After attaining the age of 12 years, he became hermit and did a very strong Penance at Gorakh Maliya and he accepted death in Vikram Sanwat 1563. Like other devotional Saints, Jasnath also opposed the old customs and Hypocrisy Prevailing in the Society. He insisted on the Nirgun and Nirakar (Formless) Bhakti. He opposed caste system. He insisted more on self-controlling and actions based on Virtues. He also insisted on the fact that for the achievement of God, there must be a Teacher or guru. He started "Jasnath Sampradaiya". He constituted 36 Rules for his Panth. At the time of Night Awakening, the dance on the fire, is the most significant feature of Jasnath Panth. He gave the message of brotherhood and co-ordination among all human beings.

Dadu Dayal :-

Dadu Dayal was the main Saint of Bhakti movement of Middle Age. He was born at Ahemdabad on Ashatmi of Chetra Sukhla of Vikram Sanwat 1601. After adopting the life of Hermit, he picked up Mount Abu as his Penance Place in Rajasthan. From this place he went to Sambher. He preached about more than 50 days, to Akbar and his members of the government at Fatehpuri Sikari. Akbar got highly impressed by his Preachings and he stopped the killing of cows, in his regime. In the last days, he used to live at Narayana. At this place itself he expired in Vikram Sanwat 1660. He was having 152 followers out of them some names are as Garibdas, Rajjab, Sunderdas, Gangopal, Jag Jeevan Das, and Madhav Das. These followers spread out in the people, the Preachings of Dadu Dayal. His

Preachings are stored in lyrical style, known as "Dadu Vani".

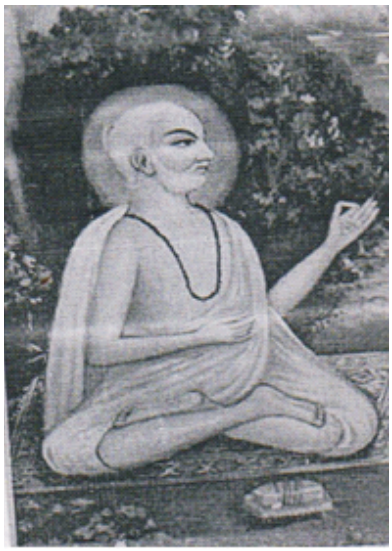
Dadu Dayal has expressed his views, in a very simple manner. According to his opinion, Brambh made the Onkar, and from Onkar, the five elements got into existence. The distance exists between the Soul and God, due to the Wealth (Maya). It is very necessary to have a Guru for attainment of God in life, it was his confirm view. According to him Pious companions, remembering God, to leave ego, control and worshipping fearlessly, are the true means of Bhakti. Daduji opposed and criticised the social plagiarism, hypocrisy, and social discrimination. Daduji is also known as "Kabir of Rajasthan", due to his both simple language and thoughts.

Ram Charanji :-

Ram Charan Maharaj was the founder of "Ram Snehi" Panth (Sampradaiya). He is famous as Swami Ram Charanji Maharaj. His original name was Ram Krishan Vijayvargiya. He was born on 24 February 1720, (Vikram Sanwat 1776 of Magh Sukhla 14th) at village Soda of Tonk District. He died on Vakrah Krishna 05th of 1855 Vikram Sanwat (year 1799) at Shahpura of Bhilwara District. He was the founder Head of "Ramdwara" at Shahpura. His childhood name was Ram Kishan. His father's and mother's names were Bhatram Vijyavargiya and Devhuti Devi, respectively. He was married to Gulab Kunwar. After his marriage, Jai Singh 2nd of Amer, appointed him to the post of Diwan of Malpura. After the death of his father, his interest in materialism reduced, and after some time he became Hermit and he got into contact of Guru Kripa Ram of Dantra village, near Shahpura of Bhilwara district and he became his followers. He did penance at the hills of Miya Chandji at Bhilwara. Ram Charanji insisted upon Nirgun Bhakti, but he also did not oppose Saguna Bhakti or devotion. He inspired people to speak the word "Ram Ram" Swamiji followed the way of specific Monism convention of Bhakti Sect. He advertised the name and Preachings of Shri Ram and due to Devotional feelings about Ram, his establishment of Peeth is known Ram Snehi Sect and it is famous by this name only.

Ram Charanji opposed Hypocrisy and Showmanships Prevailing in the society. He did not support to blind faith in Idol worshipping. He supported to the Equality of the people and opposed the caste base classifications.

Ram Charanji Maharaj explained to the people that, one should not move from one place to another in search of God, but one should search in himself. The writtings of Swamiji is stored as "Vaniji". This collection of writings has been published, in the name of "Abhinav Vani" of Ram Charan Maharaj from Shahpura (Bhilwara).



Ramcharanji

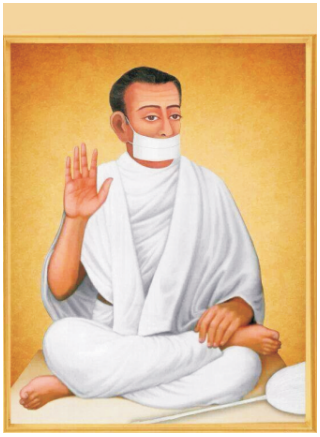
In Vikram Samwat 1817, the follower of Ram Charanji Maharaj, namely Ramjanji has made most effective attempts to advertise and expand the principles of Swami Ram Charanji. In the form of Ram Dwara at so many places were constructed for worshipping God there, especially to Ramji. In Shahpura, the famous Ram Dwara was constructed by the help of Maharaja Amar Singh and his brother Chatra Singh. At other places like Soda and Bhilwara, there are Ram Dwara's. Ram Dwara is

also known as "Ram Niwas Dham" In Rajasthan, Shahpura is the main place of Ram Sanahei Sampradaya. There is a International office of this Sect at Shahpura. Ram Charanji Maharaj always used to tell that any person of any caste, may come here to worship God, without any discrimination. The very meaning, which gives sound, is Ram Snehi means to Love God (Ram).

The 18th century, was the era of downfall of Rajasthan in relation to political, social and religious life. To filter such dirty environment, this function was done by Ram Snehi Sampradaya. The Saints of this Sect, advertise the Nirgun Brambh of Ram Bhakti. All the Saints of this Panth opposed the outer hypocrisy. They opposed the existing demerits in the society, very strongly. This sect became very much popular in Rajasthan and in nearby states, due to the existence of feelings of co-ordination among the people.

Acharya Bhikshu:-

In Jain customaries, the rise of Acharya Bhikshu is a new type of innovation. This great Saint was born on Thrayodashi of Ashadh Sukhla of Vikram Samwat 1783 (year 1726 of 02nd July), in the village Kanthaliya of Marwar. In Vikram Samwat 1808, on 12th of Magsir Krishna 12, at the attainment of the age 25, he became Muni, in the Sampraday of Acharya Raghunathji. He remained with him about 8 years, at that time the downfall of ones conduct was highly prevailing. A lot of Jain Saints were being corrupt and forgot the true path. They use to keep more tasty food, and they were more interested in making more followers. At that time, regarding the doubtful conduct of Raghu Nathji and his supporters, a high contradiction was there, in the followers of Rajnagar. Raghunathji sent a group of Sadhus under the leadership of Bhikhanji (Bhikshu) in the century 1758 (Vikram Samwat 1815) with the object to make understand and to make them in favour, such followers of Rajnagar, so that faith can be restored. After reaching to Rajnagar Bikhanji made full efforts to convince the followers of Acharya Raghunathji, but while having a logical discussion with the learned persons like Chataroji Porwal and Bachraj Oswal, Bhikhanji himself depend into a mental contradiction. The 1758 century had been the period of his struggle time. He studied deeply the Jain Agam. He realised that he has left the path based on the Principles of Religion and Sampradaya. After the end of Chaturmas, he went to his Guru Acharya Raghunathji and made him acquainted with the reality, but Acharya Raghunathji did not agree. As such, being compelled by the situation, Bhikhanji, broke up relation with this Guru Raghu nathji. In the 1760 century, in Jodhpur, the 13 followers of Bhikshu in the vacant shop in the market and were busy in doing religious activities. At that time, with Bhikshu, 13 Sadhu were also with wins. At this time the Dewan of Jodhpur, Fatehmal Singhvi was passing through the market, while having a discussion with him at that time 13 followers (Shravak) and 13 Sadhus (Saint) were available, looking to this scene, he was called as "Terapanthi". Under such situations, the followers of Bhikhanji, were being called as "Terapanthi" and as such they were teased, but Bhikhanji accepted immediately, this nomenclature and told that "Oh God, this is Tera-Panth, there is nothing of mine, so we all are ready to follow this Path, without fear, so we are "Terapanth" only. He explained the meaning of Terapanth, from the Numbrilogical way and told that five Mahavrat, five Samitee and three Gupti- these thirteen rules, are being followed by the community or person is only Tera Panthi", as such the struggle of Bhikhanji against the customs and devolution of conducts, which was known, as 'Dharm Gosh', gave birth to Terapanth" community or sampradiya.



Acharya Bhikshu

After getting separation from Acharya Raghunathji, the first Chaturmas of Bhikanji, was held at Kelwa. At this place, the number of his opponents were more, but Bhikanji did not have any fear in his mind. But instead of this, he took the opposition as a joke which made his soul more strong. The opponents bowed down before the strong self control and full courage of Bhikanji. Swamiji, established the "Terapanth Dharm Sangh" in Kelwa itself on Ashadi Purnima. The days of beginning of this Sangh were very critical and at every step, they had to face opposition, troubles, and torturing by the opponents, but Acharya Bhikshu (Bhikanji) left the house for the welfare of society. As such he replied, the opponents, through strong prayer and to adopt the path of Jain Religion, which influenced the people highly Acharya Bhikshu tried to spread out the principles of Jain Religion to the commonman, he adopted the path of Mahaveer Swami, while using the language of a common person. Bhikshu has written a lot of literature on Jain Religion, in Rajasthani Language.

Bhikhan (Bhikshu) as an Acharya of Tera Panth, through Chaturmas at various places, delivered spiritual lectures and influenced the people by his preachings regarding Jain religion. He spoke at various places, during various Chaturmas, like Kelva, Rajnagar, Pali, Pipad, Nathdwara, Amet, Siriyari, Kantaliya, Kherva,Bagdi, Barlu, Sawaimadhopur, Padu, Sojat etc. The most important specific aspect of his personality is, that he never paid attention towards the opposition and criticism by his opponents, but always converted such things into positivity. He expired at Siriyari (Pali) on Thursday, 02nd September 1803.

Acharya Bhikshu was the utmost supporter of the purity in conducts of the people. According to his opinion, the preachings of Mahaveer Swami are universal and to follow them in life, is very much troublesome today even. He always supported the cause of mutual tolerance and communal harmony among the people. He always directed and asked the Hermits (Sadhus) of his religious Sangh, to follow the discipline and modesty of single Acharya and also insisted that other Hermits (Sadhus) should not make other Sadhus as his disciples. He also made it compulsory that any person at his initiation wants to become Hermit, he or she must seek the permission of his parents and made it as a mandatory. He also refused and restricted for Sadhus to stay or live, in such buildings, which are kept reserved for their stay and also made it mandatory not to receive food from one house continuously and not to accept such food also which is prepared in the name of Sadhus only. It was also restricted by him for the permits not to possess more clothes than the limit and not to keep any currency also with them. He preached the followers also to adopt the principles of Mahaveer Swami, in the walk of life.

Acharya Bhikshu established the Terapanth Sect, in an organised, well managed and Rules governed organisation. He insisted on self discipline. He rendered the Principles of one Acharya, one disciple and one thought. He explained that the message of religion should reach easily to a common person, so that he may act upon in his walk of life and may go ahead to the path of salvation. The improvement programmers of Bhikshu Saint was more effectively expanded among the people and became popular also.

Major Dalpat Singh Shekhawat

(Hero of Haifa, Pride of Rawna Rajput Samaj)

Major Dalpat Singh Shekhwat

Major Dalpat Singh Shekhawat was born in deoli house, Jodhpur, the name of the world famous polo player, Hari Singh Shekhawat Rawna Rajput house on 26th January 1892. He was educated in England at the age of 18, and in the army of the princely states he started the military service in the

form of cavalary in Jodhpur lancer and reached the rank of major.

In the First World War the Turkish army captured Haifa. They were torturing the war prisoners and the front of the Turkish army was very strong. Then to overcome it, the responsibility of the Indian army was given to Major Dalpat Singh Shekhawat and he showed great example of bravery like a true commander and in just one hour, he got Haifa city freed which was the main city of Israel and achieved victory, but in this victory Major Dalpat Singh met with heroic death on 23 September,1918 in very short life of 26 years. In his memory colonel Harvey an officer in the British army told death was not only of Jodhpur (Rajasthan) but also damage for the entire British Empire. Posthumously Shekhawat was awarded the military cross. The highest award of the British army, He was honored by the name of Haifa hero.

The Israeli government celebrates this day as the hero of Haifa day and Major Dalpat Singh Shekhawat biography is taught by including it in their School's curriculum. One of the three cavalry soldiers in front of Trimurti Bhawan in Delhi is Major Dalpat Singh Shekhawat. The Indian army celebrates this day with great respect and bows down to his courage. One of his idols stand in idol royal gallery in London. Major Dalpat Singh Shekhawat, the pride of Rawna Society, was a brave man born in the society, he was not only famous in our country but also in the world.

Important Points

1. Among the great persons of Rajasthan, the public leaders, folk gods and social reformers, showed a new path to the people.
2. Bappa Rawal established an independent state in Chittorgarh and increased its prestige more and more.
3. Prithvi Raj Chouhan defeated Mohammad Gori, so many times in the Second War of Tarain.
4. Veer Durgadas set an example of Fedility while saving Maharaja Ajit Singh, from the clutches of Mughals.
5. Maharan Sanga, under his leadership, got organised the Rajput Rulers on Kings, form the object, to get safe from foreign evaders.
6. The popular war of Sumel, between Maldev and Shershah, took place in the middle of 1544 century.
7. The Jat state was at the highest peak position at the time of Maharaja Surajmal.
8. Guru Govind established the assembly of Samp, with the purpose to develop social consciousness.
9. Meera was a popular Saint. She spoke with all strongness against the discrimination of freedom and liberty, with the ladies.
10. The Bheel daughter of Dungarpur sacrificed her life and gave the soul against also, to save her Guru from the Tyrany of Britishers.
11. Panna Dhai was the burning example of sacrifice and fedility in Rajasthan.
12. Amrita Devi sacrificed her soul along with her three daughters also, with the object to protect trees.
13. Those great persons, who sacrificed their souls for the protection of Religion, laws and the land, are known as Folk Gods.
14. Gogaji, Tejaji, Pabuji and Ram Devji are main Folk Gods.
15. Among the social reformers, Dadu, Jasnath, Jambhoji, Ram Charanji, Acharya Bhikshu, etc. are most famous names and are remembered usually.

Objective Type Questions:-

1. Bappa Rawal was the Ruler of which place?

   (a) Chittorgarh (b) Udaipur

   (c) Marwar (d) Ajmer

2. In which year the war of Taraiyan was fought?

(a) 1186 (b) 1191

(c) 1192 (d) 1194

3. At what place, the war was fought between Maharan Sanga and Baber?

(a) Panipat (b) Khatoli

(c) Khanva (d) Tarayan

4. Govind Guru, established which organisation?

(a) Praja Mandal (b) Samp Sabha

(c) Lok Parisad (d) Bhagat Panth

5. What was the name of the Pabuji's Maire?

(a) Kesar Kalvi (b) Black Ghori

(c) Blue Ghori (d) None of above

Very Short Answer Type Questions:-

1. At which place Veer Durgadas passed his last days of Life?
2. When the Coronation of Maharana Sanga was held?
3. Write the two names of two main persons of Ram Dev?
4. Amrita Devi belonged to which place?
5. Write the name of the Birth place of Folk God Ram Devji?
6. Acharya Bhikshu started which Panth?
7. In which District the Mangarh Dham is situated/
8. Maharana Surajmal was the Ruler of which place?

Short Answer Type Questions:-

1. What do you know about the sacrifice of Nali Bai?
2. Write about the importance of Folk God Pabuji?
3. What is the "Phad" of Devnarayan?
4. What do you know about the early life of Meera Bai?
5. Explain the sacrifice of Panna Dhai?
6. What is Gogaji is worshipped?
7. Write about the social reforms of Jasnath?
8. What is the wordly meaning of "Vishnoi"?

Essay Type Questions:-

1. Write about the contribution of Saint Dadu, as Social Reformer.
2. Mention the achievements of Prithvi Raj Chouhan.
3. Mention are the reasons and results of struggle between Babar and Rana Sanga?
4. Write an essay on the important Folk Gods of Rajasthan.

Answers of objective questions :-

1 (A) 2 (C) 3 (C) 4 (B) 5 (A)

Chapter - 8

Political Development in India

India as a nation is not only a land, jungle, mountains and rivers base root stuff. This country was not only developed in cultural and religious fields, but it was fully developed in the field of politics also. The concepts of Chakrawati Emperors and Ashwamegh Yagna, in reality, had been the principle basic sources of political unification and to establish vast Empires. In the minds of our ascetics, India had been always as a nation to which they used to call "A country situated in the South of Himalaya and in the North side of the sea". Ravindra Nath Thakur has written in his poem :- "O heart of mine, awake in this holy place of pilgrimage in this land of India, on the shore of vast humanity. Nobody knows who urged them yet they came from different lands andmerged in a single body- the Aryans, the non Aryans, the Dravidians, the Chinese, the Scythians, the Huns, the Pathans and the Mughals- all of them like so many separate streams flowing irresistibly to loose at the end of there journeys there individual identities in one vast sea, all are collecting its prized gifts and the same irreversible process of mutual exchange and assimilation is taking place once again in that holy confluence of huminity."

Though it can be told that in the periods of History, India was ruled by various Rulers and Kings of different Dynasties. There had been a situation of mutual struggle between the two, but the existence of "National consciousness" has always been in India. The beginning of National Movement against the Colonial Government, gave a new and equal political identitity and strength to India. The diversities of language, caste, regions, community, dresses, different food habits, also carried an inherent unity of Indianness, and it was working very effectively in a secret manner. Likewise, it becomes clear, that if we look into the ancient history till present time, that political development had been achieved through uninterrupted manner in a continuous manner.

But on the eve of Independence Day, India was facing a land base political crisis, which was never faced by any country in the history. During the period of British Rule India was mainly divided into two parts. One part was known as "British India", where the rule of Britishers was there, it was being called as 'British India'. This 'British India' was divided into provinces by British Rulers, which were being governed by the Governors and his subordinates. On the other hand, the other part of India; was known as Princely States or 'Native States' on the record, these Native States were governed by various kings in a visible sense, but really speaking, the most of the Kings, underwent the various treaties with the British Rulers, by which they had accepted indirectly, the effective holding of British Rulers on them, and they were under the occupancy of British Rule. In the year 1947, when Britishers were leaving India, at that time there were about more than 500 Native States, including Rajwadas, Thikanas etc. About more than 40% area of the land of India, was occupied by the Rulers of Native States, where about 1/3 population was residing. The volume, position, political standing and ambitions were different of Native States. On one hand, there was big Native States all like

Hyderabad and Kashmir which were equal to any country of Europe, and on the other hand there were very smaller Jagirs, which were possessing only few villages only, just like 10-12 villages. There were few Riyasats in 11th to 16th century, who opposed the evaders very bluntly, but these were few riyasats also which were related to evaders themselves.

The East India company, which started its business in India as a commercial organization, got support of some Native States, which helped the company to have influencive control over the whole county, but on the other side, some Native States, tried to stop the establishment of new Imperialism of Britishers were put to an end itself by the powerful persons of the company.

Among the some Native States, which were having Subsidiary Alliance with East India Company to supervise such activities, there was a 'Political Department', which was functioning under the executive of Viceroy. In 1946, when the governance of Political Department was handed over to home ministry. The home ministry was headed by Sardar Patel, so the matters related to Native States came into the control of Sardar Patel. Viceroy Mount Baton, wanted that the debatable questions regarding Native States must be solved before providing Independence to India. So the Viceroy on 27th June 1947, organised a Riyasati Department and its control was handed over to Sardar Patel, in the interim government as a Home Minister. But at the same time, the British government declared in the Act of Independence of 1947, that with the Independence of India, the Native States will also enjoy the liberty to merge themselves with India or to go with the new country i.e. Pakistan. So, the task of unification of all Native States, was very hard and difficult and full of challenges, at that time, which was done successfully by Sardar Patel. Sardar Patel, Shri V.P. Menon, as his secretary and both the persons, prepared a 'merger proposal for maximum Native States, to be merged in India, before 15th August 1947, and this 'merger proposal' was got signed by the emperors and the Native States were merged in India legally. The merger of Hyderabad, Kashmir and Junagarh were pending.

The merger of those pricipal states took places in two phases, in both the phases, the temptation and the pressures of public were included in the threatening and clever policy. Hyderabad, Junagadh and kashmir playing stif policy and annouced that they did not intended to join either deominion. Thats why government of India adopted a strong policy towards native states. In condition of other states the nawab of Bhopal State Hamidulla Khan given resignation from the post of chairman chamber of princes in June 1947. With it he declared that they intended to remain independent. Along with rular of Bhopal Yashwant Rao Holkar, kashmir, Hyderabad and Trawancore too declared their intended to remain independent Junagadh ruler did accede to Pakistan, with the support of Bhopal and Dholpur rulars Muhammad Ali Jinnah to endeavour to attract Jodhpur, Jesalmer and Bikaner to intended with Pakistan. But Bikaner and Jeslarmer leave the association with Jodhpur and Dholpur, after getting security assurance from Sardar Vallabh Bhai Patel. In may 1948 Holkar of Indor also declared to intended with Indian federation. It was difficult for both states to remain hostile for long time due to the policy of Indian Government. Yet, Jodhpur Maharaja was still stout with his decision. Even there was one incident while to that extend of the mid-peace negociation between Lord Mount Batten and secretary of state department P.V. Menon, Maharaja Hanumant Singh unturned pistol towords Menon and said- “I am not going to bend you under pressure.” But after sometime Jodhpur fell alone in his fight and due to the pressure of Sardar Patel, in the end the Jodhpur became part of greater Rajasthan and joined the union of India. Sardar Patel announced in a public meeting at Udaipur on 14th Januray 1949 about the merger of Jodhpur.

The study related to the merger is clear that the origin of Hindu-Muslim princess in its origin is more than the geographical state of same princely states and some rulers had that crazy.

The Merger of Kashmir in India

The Kashmir, was the most important Riyasat of the colonial India. It was not only big in area, but it was highly important from the geographical and strategic point of view. Its borders were connected with Afghanistan, China and Tibbat. There were four main parts of Kashmir Riyasat, Jammu area, which is attached to the Border of Punjab, which is more plain comparatively. Kashmir valley, the high hills of Laddakh, and Gilgit and Baltistan in the west area of Kashmir Valley having a very less volume of population. The main work to bring together, all these areas under one umbrella, was done by the House of Rajputs Dogra, who won the Laddah in 1830 and in 1840 they snached Kashmir Valley from Britishers. At the time of Independence, this Riyasat, was very important, politically. Since 1925 century, there was the rule of maharaja Hari Singh. In 1932, Muslim conference was formed in Jammu and Kashmir. Afterwards this organization was named as 'National Conference and Sheikh Abdulla became a big leader of this organisation. Till 15th August 1947, maharaja did not take any decision regarding merger of Riyasat in any part and on the other side, Pakistan was also trying to get by hook and crook Kashmir should be merged with. Pakistan gave a lot of temptation to the King Hari Singh, but could not get any success.

Under such circumstances, Pakistan started to send its military persons under the grab of Infiltrators. Since Independence, from September 1947. By the end of October the Pakistan Military reached near to Srinagar. On 26th October 1947, a meeting was held on the position of Kashmir, in which the Prime Minister of Kashmir Shri Mehar Chand Mahajan and the leader of National Conference, Sheikh Abdulla. Both, mahajan and Abdulla, made appeal to India, that the Pakistani Evaders must be sent back by the assistance and active participation of Indian Military troops. Consequently on 26th October 1947, Maharaja Hari Singh signed on the same kind of "Merger Proposal" to be merged in India.

According to the Independence Act 1947 of India, after putting signature on the merger proposal, no one including the signatory also, was not given freedom to oppose it. Likewise, Jammu Kashmir state got merged in India and in the year 1950, in Part 'B' of the 1st schedule of Indian constitution, The Jammu Kashmir state was included.

In the year 1951, the election of the constituent assembly took place in Jammu Kashmir. All the 75 members of the assembly approved the merger of Jammu & Kashmir in India, on 06th February 1954. According to the Article 3 of the constitution of Jammu & Kashmir, it is inseparable part of India & shall remain forever and this Article will never be allowed to be amended. Accordingly, the then Maharaja, through the merger proposal and the declaration of the constituent assembly, the Jammu and Kashmir got complete merger in India forever and it became the inseparable part of India. Indian government sent its Army to Jammu & Kashmir, to save from the attacks of Kabalies from Pakistan side. By the end of November, Indian Military reoccupied the lost area in a big volume. Though about 1/3 part of the total land of Jammu and Kashmir was under the occupancy of Pakistan till now. Under these situations, on the request of Lord mount Betan, India carried this issue to United Nations Organization U.N.O. deputed one commission, which arranged the cease fire between India and Pakistan. Consequently, the one third land of Jammu & Kashmir is still under the occupation of Pakistan, which is known as 'Pak occupied Kashmir'.

The Unification (Merger) of Hyderabad

After Kashmir, Hyderabad was the second biggest Riyasat, which was situated on the Hills of

Deccan and was surrounded by all the corners the Indian Land. At the time of freedom, there was the Rule of Nizam Meer Kasim Usman Ali. In the total population of Hyderabad, about 85% people were Hindus and but in Military, police and administration, there was more influence of Muslims. Nizam was dreaming in the day to remain, an independent state on the strength of Muslim, Administration and Assistance from Jinna of Pakistan. When Lord Mount Betan advised the Nizam to join constituent Assembly, than it was told by Nizam that, if he is being pressured for this, then he will be compelled to think once to get Assimilation or Merger in Pakistan. Not only this, but Nizam tried to carry this issue before U.N.O. against India. In between this situation, a Muslim Furious organization came into existence namely "Rajakar" which started doing a lot of torture at a larger stage, and as such the Rajakar organization turned this issue of merger, into the problem of communal riots.

On the other side, such news also started to enter the arena, that through British Agents, Hyderabad Nizam is getting arms from the Pakistan. Under these circumstances, a lot of people started leaving Hyderabad, and entered into the area of Madras (Tamil Nadu) and as such the volume of population got increased there.

Looking to all such situations, Sadar Patel decided to take some quick decision, instead of waiting for sometime more and Patel decided to take Military Actions against Nizam and for getting the sanction of such decision, he requested Pandit Nehru, to call the meeting of Cabinet. In the meeting of cabinet Sardar Patel gave a presentation of Military action plan, in the cabinet, Prime Minister, expressed some doubt about such planning. But Patel expressed the view that it is very essential and told in this regard that "if we do not take outside our stomach, this Abscers, than it will be equal to dig a grave for ourselves" On 13th September 1948, India attacked Hyderabad from three sides and this attack was given a name of "operation Pollo". The Military persons of Nizam left the battle field, within two or three days. Rajakars also surrendered within four days. In this battle 42 Sainik of Indian Army died whereas Two Thousand Rajakars were killed. Consequently on 17th September 1948, Nizam accepted the Merger of Hyderabad in India. Sardar Patel went to Hyderabad, got signed the Merger letter from Nigam. Sardar Patel told that now Nizam is no more and Bharat has thrown away cancer (Abscers) from the way. And as such due to forsightedness, strongness, and courageousness of Sardar Patel, the Hyderabad could be merged and unified in India.

The Merger of Junagarh in India

Those Riyasats, which could not be merged in Bharat, till 15th August 1947, among such Riyasat Junagarh was one of them.

Now-a-days, this place Junagarh is situated in Gujarat state. At the time of Freedom, the Navab of Junagarh was Mohabbat Khan, where as a big part of people were Non Muslims. The holy Somnath Temple and famous Jain Pilgrimage 'Girnar' is also situated in Junagarh. Berawal, was the most famous fort of this Native States.

In 1947 itself Shah Navaj Bhutto, became the Diwan of Junagarh, who was the relative of the leader of Muslim League and Founder of Pakistan, Mohammad Ali Jinnah. On the Direction of Diwan, Nawab declared that Junagarh will be merged in Pakistan and on 13th September 1947, Pakistan accepted the proposal of Merger of Junagarh, in Pakistan. Really speaking, Pakistan wanted to use the question of Junagarh, for the negotiation on Kashmir issue. The acceptance by the Pakistan the proposal of merger of Junagarh, made more angry to Sardar Patel. Sardar sent Military troops to the two states, which were under Junagarh, i.e. Mangrol and Babriyavad for the merger in India and on the other hand a most popular Movement started against Navab, in Junagarh. Having being trembled by such circumstances, Navab, ran away to Pakistan. After

sometime, Diwan Shah Navaj was compelled to hand over Junagarh, to India. Indian government called for the Referendum of the Public of Jungarh. In February 1948, on the issue of Merger in India, by which its position can be more strengthened. And as such, consequently Junagarh was merged in India finally.

As such, after Jammu Kashmir and Hyderabad, Junagarh was the third Native States, which was merged in India, due to most powerful couragious steps of Sardar Patel. That is why Sardar Patel is known as the "Iron Man" or "Iron person of Modern India".

The Merger of Goa and Pondicherry in India

To oppose always, the Imperialism and colonialism, had been the policy of Independent India. This policy resulted into the desire to claim for reoccuping its own land which was under the Foreigners. Even after the going away of Britishers from India, Goa was under the occupation of Portugal, whereas Pondicherry (presently Puducherry) was under the occupation of France.

Just after the Independence of India the inhabitants of these places started movements for demanding Independence and to be merged with India. In 1954, the environment of Pondicherry became more disturbing and tenseful. For the merger in India, a big popular Movement was started. In Madras, before the diplomat offices, wide agitations got started every day for the merger in India. As such in November 1954, France handed over Pondicherry to India, which was highly welcomed by the people. In the year 1955, at the first time, on the occasion of Republic day, the "Jhanki" from the side of Pondicherry, was exhibited, and as such Pondicherry was merged in India peacefully. But Portugali's were not paying attention to the demand of Merger of Goa in India. They wanted to occupy Goa till it was possible for them. But the Dictator of Goa, oliwira salazar, told about Goa, that "It is a light of West on the Land of East" and "A symbol of Adventure of Portugal" and accordingly refused to hand over Goa to India. Excluding Goa, Daman, Dadar and Nagar Havelies were also under the occupancy of Portugal. In the year 1954-1955, due to Public Agitations, Daman, Dadar and Nagar Havelies were occupied by India. In Goa, a big number of Agitators were put in the Jails. About 10 years, India continued to urge with Portugal to give freedom to Goa, but no result was received. Ultimately in the year 1961, Indian Army was sent to Goa to get it free from the occupation of Portugal. By the "Operation Vijay" within two days, Goa was conquered and was occupied by India and as such in the end of 1961, Goa, got merged in India.

The Unification of Rajasthan

There has been a specific importance of Rajasthan, historically. The great rulers of Rajasthan, in the Medival perio, not only opposed and fought against the evaders, but also kept alive the glorious conventions of cultural values. At the time of freedom, leaving aside Ajmer and Merwada, whole of Rajasthan was divided into Riyasats. At that time in Rajasthan, there were 19 Riyasats, 3 Thikana and centrally governed provinces. The borders of Jodhpur, Jaisalmer, Bikaner, etc. Riyasats of Rajasthan, were very much nearer to the Border of newly established Pakistan, and the rulers of such Riyasats were given various temptations by Pakistan, with the intention to get them merged in Pakistan, so the issue of these Riyasats was very sentimental nature, which was handled by Sardar Patel, very efficiently.

It took the time about 8 years and 7 months for the unification and to get present form of Rajasthan and it was completed in seven steps:-

1. Matsya Association : In the first step of the unification of Rajasthan, the Matsya Association was formed. The areas of Alwar, Bharatpur, Dholpur, Karoli and Nimrana, were having equal geographical topology, so it was proposed to develop and Association, while mergering each other in one form. It's name was decided to be "Matsya Association" which was the name of these

areas, in the period of Mahabharat. On 18th March 1948, this Association was inaugurated by the Central Minister N.V. Goadgil. The Dholpur ruler was made as Raj Pramukh and Shobha Ram became Prime Minister and the capital was decided to be at "Alwar".

2. Union Rajasthan : In second step, Natie State like, Banswara, Dungarpur, Pratapgarh, Kota, Bundi, Jhalawar, Kishangarh, Shahpura and Tonk were joint together, it was known as East Rajasthan. It was also inaugurated by Goadgil on 25th March, 1948. The Ruler of Kota, was appointed as Raj Pramukh and Gokul Lal Asawa was appointed as Prime Minister. Kota was decided to be the capital of East Rajasthan.

3. United State of Rajasthan : Maharana of Mewar, was already ready for reorganization, even before the formation of East Rajasthan. On 11th April 1948, Mewar, signed the letter of Merger. In East Rajasthan, Mewar was also assimilated and joint Rajasthan was organised in this way. Its inauguration was done by Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru, on 18th April, 1948. The Maharana of Mewar became the Raj Pramukh and Manikya Lal Verma was appointed as Prime Minister of United Rajasthan.

4. United Rajasthan : It became easier of other states to be merged, after the merger of Mewar. On 4th step, Jaipur, Jodhpur, Bikaner, Jaisalmer, big Natie State were merged and as such the Greater Rajasthan came into being. On 30th March 1949, Sardar Patel inaugurated the Greater Rajasthan and the Maharana of Mewar, Bhopal Singh was made as Raj Pramukh and Jaipur was its capital. Hiralal Shastri was appointed as Prime Minister. This step of Merger being a very important attempt, so 30th March is celebrated as "Rajasthan Divas".

5. United State of Greater Rajasthan : In the whole process of unification, Matsya Association was also working well, but because it was connected area wise with Uttar Pradesh, it was felt necessary to take some final decision. So, on 15th May 1948, Matsya Association was merged in Greater Rajasthan, and the United Greater Rajasthan was organised and Sobha Ram Shastri was incorporated in the cabinet.

6. Rajasthan Union : After completing the various steps of Merger, the settlement of the Question of Sirohi was to be settled, whether it should be merged in Rajasthan or it may be merged with the former Bombay Province. On 26th January 1950, the two Tehsils of Sirohi- i.e. Abu & Delwara were merged in to Bombay state, and rest of the area of Sirohi, was merged in Rajasthan. The people of Sirohi, wanted that the above two tehsils should also be merged in Rajasthan. So this matter was given to the commission of reorganisation of states.

7. The Re-Organised Rajasthan : In Britishers Period, Ajmer- Merwara was the centrally governed provinces. So till 1956, it continued to be an Independent state of 'C' category. In the end, on the recommendations of the commission for reorganization of states, this area was also merged in Rajasthan and likewise Abu and Delwara were also merged in Rajasthan. The Border area, attached to the state of Madhya Pradesh, was also reorganised. The place Suneltappa of Madhya Pradesh was merged in to Rajasthan and Sironj of Rajasthan was merged in Madhya Pradesh.

Consequently on 01st November 1956, the process of unification of Rajasthan was completed the post of "Raj Pramukh" was abolished and as a First Governer of the state of Rajasthan, Gurumukh Nihal Singh took oath.

Reorganization of States :

After the Independence, the demand of reorganization of the states, arose in the form of agitation or movement. Specially the demand of reorganising the states on the basis of language, arose in a very strong form. Really speaking, even much more before Independence, congress in the year 1917, was agreed to support for organization of states on the basis of language to achieve Federal

Nation Building in the diversified Indian Society. But in the backdrop of Partition, after the Independence persons like Pandit Nehru were not in favour of linguistic organization of states. So, consequently the demands like Karnataka for Kannad speaking people, United Maharashtra for Marathi speaking people, Punjab for Punjabi speaking people, arose in India. But out of these, the most powerful demand came into being in the form of aggressive movement from Telgus for the establishment of Andhra Pradesh for Telgu speaking people and in October 1952, one person namely Shree Ramulo started hunger strike, for the formation of Andhra and after the strike of 58 days, Shree Ramolu died, the spreading over of this news, the environment of Anarchy was created in this area. After 2 days from the death of Ramolu, the government declared, that it is ready to constitute 'Andhra Pradesh' and in October 1953, the state of Andhra Pradesh was constituted. As such, Andhra Pradesh, became the first state, which was constituted on the basis of language.

After this, the demands of organization of states on the basis of language, arose very speedily. So, Indian government ordered to constitute a "commission of reorganization of states". Justice Fazal Ali was appointed as Chairman of the commission, and K.M. Panikkar along with H.N. Kunjru, were made members. In the year 1955, the commission handed over its report to the government, and on this basis, Indian Parliament passed the Act of states reorganization in the year 1956. Fourteen states and six centrally governed states were proposed to be reorganised, but the demands of creation of more states was coming from so many corners of the country and Agitations started for this demand, in various parts of the country. The biggest movement, among all, was started in Maharashtra. On the basis of this big agitation, government decided to divide Bombay into two parts, and hence one part became Gujarat. After this the question of reorganizing Eastern area of the country rose. In this area mainly people belonging to scheduled Tribes were residing where Christian Priests became more active, so as to expand the Christianity among the Tribe classes and consequently a lot of other separatists Agitations and activities started in which the movement of Naga Tribles is very important, which was started in the leadership of Fizo. Ultimately in the year 1963, Nagaland was constituted as a state for Naga's tribe. The likewise problems arose is Eastern Area, being under the Autonomous Mizo, where in the leadership of Lal Donga, a front namely 'Mizo National Front" was formed and a separatists movement was started there also. This problem was also settled by an agreement and in the year 1987, a new state in the name of 'Mizoram' was organised. In the year 1987 itself, Goa and Arunachal states were also made independent states, and they were taken out from the umbrella of centrally governed states.

Before this in the year 1972, Megalaya was also declared as a separate state Manipur, Tripura, and Megalaya states were also given the status of fully empowered states.

Under the leadership of Master Tara Singh, the demand of a separate Punjab state for Punjabi speaking people, was continued for a long time. So ultimately, in the year 1966, Punjab was reorganised and out of this a new separate state 'Haryana' was organised and Chandigarh was made a centrally governed state and it was declared capital of both Punjab and Haryana. The mountains oriented area, Himachal Pradesh was made a centrally governed area, which was given a status of Independent state in the year 1971. In Sikkim till 1975, there was a government of Choyagal Dynasty by referendum, Sikkim expressed the will for the merger in India and consequently through the 6th Amendment in the constitution made in the year 1975, Sikkim was made a state of India. In the year 2000, Chattisgarh was made, while separating some area from Madhya Pradesh, some area was taken away from Uttar

Pradesh and a new state 'Uttrakhand' was organised, and likewise, Jharkhand was made a separate state, while separating some area from Bihar. For the formation of Jharkhand, a movement was undercurrent, since Independence.

The demand of a new state 'Telangana' was also raised, to be made out from the some area of Andhra Pradesh, which took the shape of violent Agitation afterwards. So ultimately in the year 2014, a new state, from Andhra Pradesh, was formed in the name of "Telangana". Likewise, at present in India, these are 29 states and 7 centrally governed provinces, but still the demand of formation of new states, is being raised from so many areas of the country from time to time.

Important Points

1. Since the ancient period, India had been a unit, from the view of cultural, social and political aspects, where a lot of Chakravati Emperor established the big Imperialism.
2. In the period British Government, India was divided into two parts- British Bharat and Native States- British Bharat was under the direct control of British Rule, whereas Natie State were having the ornamental rule of Kings.
3. After Independence, for 'national Unification', Sardar Patel played a very important role. Due to successful efforts of Sardar Patel, Maharaja Hari Singh of Kashmir, became ready for the merger of Kashmir, in India.
4. Hyderabad Native States was merged through Military actions, where as Junagarh was merged, on the basis of Plebisite, after fleeing away of Navab, to Pakistan.
5. In the year 1954, Pondicherry was got free from the occupation of Frans and was merged in India, whereas to make free Goa from the control of Portugal is the Military Actions were taken in the year 1961.
6. Ath the time of Freedom, in Rajasthan, there were 19 Native States, 3 Thikanas and one Chief Commisrate area. In 7 attempts and steps on 01st November 1956, the unification of Rajasthan was completed.

Objective Type Questions

1. At the time of Independence, How many Riyasats there in India?

   (a) 562 (b) 300

   (c) 305 (d) 430

2. At the time of Independence, How many Native States were time in Rajasthan?

   (a) 29 (b) 19

   (c) 11 (d) 15

3. Who played the most important role, in the National Unification?

   (a) Pant Jawahar Lal Nehru

   (b) Dr. Rajendra Prasad

   (c) Dr. Ambedkar

   (d) Sardar Patel

4. In which year, 'Goa' was merged in India?

   (a) 1955 (b) 1960

   (c) 1961 (d) 1965

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Who was the King of Kashmir, at the time of Freedom?
2. When was Hyderabad merged in India?
3. Who was the Chairman of the Commission of reorganization of states?
4. Which was the first state, constituted or organised on the basis of language?
5. Who was having the control over Pondicherry?

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Describe the merger of Junagarh in India.
2. Write a short note on the contribution of Sardar

Patel for the National Unification.

3. Write the names of five new states, organised after Independence of India.

4. Write a note on the "Commission of Reorganization of States".

Essay Type Questions:-

1. Write about the different steps of the Unification of Rajasthan.

2. Describe the 'Operation Pollo'.

3. Mention on the circumstances of the Merger of Kashmir.

4. Under circumstances Goa was merged in India? Explain.

Answers of Objective Questions

1 (A) 2 (B)

3 (D) 4 c

Chapter - 9

The Constitution of India

The constitution of a country is a collection of basic laws. By these laws, not only the governments are formed, but the mutual relations between the government and citizens are also decided. The constitution decides the form of all the elements of government i.e. Legislature, Executive and Judiciary. It also formulates the powers and limitations of every organ of the government. Except these things it also formulates about the Rights and duties both, of the citizens, who will have to pay tax in how much quantum, police will be of which kind and nature, what will be the formate of Judiciary? All such things are also decided by the constitution of any country. Accordingly, the constitution of every country is always a Lively Model of any Nation. The Powers Vest in the people of the country, in the form of Democratic Government. In its ideal form, such powers should be used by the public, as it was used to be done, in Ancient Period, through "Assembly", Committee, but at the Present time the volume and form of the Nations are very big, where it is not possible to apply 'Direct Democracy' Now-a-days, this is the decade of "Representative Democracy" where, the people elect by their Adult Voting System, their representatives, and performs the functions of the government. People at the first time, uses such inherent power, when it formulated a constitution for the people and by the people. This constitution can be written and formulated or unwritten (means based on the old political conventions) also. As the constitutions of India and America are, formulated and in written form. Whereas the constitution of England, is unwritten and developed through conventions, mostly.

It is noticeable that for the first time during British Rule, India was governet through written statutes. At that time, for a long time, the British Parliament made laws for India, as Regulating Act, Pitts India Act 1813, the India Council Act of 1909, the Government of India Act of 1919 & 1935. Inside India, the political awakening started gradually. Likewise the demand of the making of constitution became the inseparable part of the demand for Independence, by the beginning of 20th century.

In the year 1922, Mahatma Gandhi presented the demand of forming of the constitution before the government and in 1925 the conference of all parties was held, in which the proposal of demanding the forming of constitution was passed.

When in the year 1939 the Second World War started. British Government had urgent need of help from Indian. So first time in the month of August 1940, the Britishers accepted the demand of forming constitution, while accepting the "Proposal of August" in July 1945, the new government of Labour Party came into power in England, which indicated that the forming of Indian constitution and to give Freedom to India will be done very shortly. So in the month of March 1946 the British government sent a commission, having three members, to India, which is known as "cabinet mission". According to the planning of cabinet mission, the 'constituent assembly' was formed, which developed and prepared the Indian

constitution. It was the opinion of the cabinet mission that the most satisfactory situation for the formation of constituent assembly would be when the forming of the assembly takes place, through the election through the system of casting the votes by the adult voters, but the Muslim League, started Violent Activities for raising the demand of forming of Pakistan for Muslims, and this action damaged the situation of law and order very badly. By the government Act of 1935, the state legislatures were formed in Indian Provinces. The members of these state legislatures were elected by the method of election. And the cabinet mission, provided the rights to the members of state legislatures, to elect the members for the constituent assembly, from their concern provinces. And on the basis of 10 lakhs people, one member for constituent assembly will be elected, this was decided formally. For example, if in any province, the population was about one crore, than 10 members were to be elected for the constituent assembly, by such province. And they will be elected by the members of Provincial Legislature. At that time, India was divided into two parts, one part was British Province and the other part was of 'Desi Riyasats'. For the Desi Riyasats, the different parameter of electing the members for constituent assembly was adopted which was applied in all over the country. But as there were no Provincial Legislatures, in Deshi Riyasats, so it was decided that the members from such Riyasats for the constituent assembly will be nominated. So, likewise, the constituent assembly was formed by the elected as well as by nominated members from whole of India.

The total numbers of the members for constituent assembly was decided to be 389, and out of this 296 from British India, and 93 from Desi Riyasats, were decided to be taken. In the month of July 1946. Election for 296 members for constituent assembly was held, in which Muslim League got only 73 members. And other places were divided into small parties, and on the other hand, through the "Mount Betan Plan" of 03rd June 1947, the division of India, was decided on the basis of communal point of view. The demand of Muslim League, was accepted that a new country namely Pakistan, should be made, for the Muslim population. So the constituent assembly was reorganised, and its number of the members was decided to be 324 finally. Ultimately 284 members of the assembly signed, on the constitution of India. The members from Desi Riyasats, entered the constituent assembly at the different timings. From the different Riyasats of Rajasthan, 13 members joined the constituent assembly. Hyderabad, was the only Riyasat, whose no representative joined the assembly.

On 09th December 1946, Monday, at about 11:00AM, the constituent assembly was inaugurated in a well managed way, in the central hall. In this meeting about 211 members participated. Sacchidanand Sinha was elected as temporarily Chairman of constituent assembly. Sh. B.N. Rao, was appointed as Legal Advisor. On 11th December 1946, Dr. Rajendra Prasad was elected as permanent Chairman of the constituent Assembly. On 13th December 1946, Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru presented the "proposal of object", which was accepted on 22nd January 1947, For the formation of Indian constitution, various committees were set up, in which, most important committee was select committee and it was set up in August 1947. The select committee was consisting seven members and it's Chairman was Dr. Ambedkar, who was not only a famous advocate, but most informative person of Legal field. The main work of preparing draft of constitution, was to be performed by this committee. The constituent assembly was supposed to pass it, after a long debate, arguments and by casting of votes. So Dr. Ambedkar, is also called the father of the Indian constitution.

Dr. Rajendra Prasad

Dr. Ambedkar

After considering the proposals of various committees, the select committee published the first draft of constitution in the month of February 1948. The people of India, were given 8 months time to study the draft of constitution and to give suggestions. After 8 months, keeping in mind the received suggestions and amendments, the draft was prepared and put up in November 1948 before the constituent assembly. This draft was read out three times in the constituent assembly. On 28th November 1948, the Indian constitution was finally prepared. As on the same day the constitution was adopted, enacted and spirited. The last meeting of the constituent assembly was held on 24th January 1950, and on this date the members of constituent assembly signed the Indian constitution. On 26th January 1950, the Indian constitution came into force. In the constitution, there is one preamble (which is called as object also) 8 schedules, 22 parts and 395 paragraphs. At present instead of 8 schedules they are increased to 12. The preamble is known as the soul, conclusion of the constitution and it is a key to understand the constitution. The constituent assembly performed some other works also, along with making of the constitution. On July 1947, it adopted the National Flag and in January 1950 it accepted the National Anthem and National Song. Dr. Rajendra Prasad was elected as first President of India, who took the oath on 26th January 1950. As well as, with this election of President, India became a Republic state, in the history of world.

In this way, the constituent assembly completed the historical work of formulating Indian constitution, within 2 years, 11 months and 18 days, but our work is not complete, by completing the work of formulating of the constitution. Dr. Ambedkar told in the constituent assembly, in November 1949, "I feel that in spite of the constitution being good, but those who use it, are inefficient, the constitution will also prove to be so. In the concluding speech Dr. Rajendra Prasad said,"If those who will be elected are qualified, honest and of good character, they will make the defective constitution best. If they lack merits constitution will not be able to help the country.

Every constitution is a mirror of the values, ideals and dreams of its makers and founder persons. The constitution may attain its objects, for this we will have to become responsible, Nationalist and Sacrifying citizens.

The Salient Features of Indian Constitution

The Indian constitution is unique one, in the world. It carries a lot of such features which make it quite different constitution from the others constitutions, which are as under:-

1. The largest constitution of the world :

The constitution of India, is the biggest in volume, in the world. In the constitution not only the Federal government arrangement is there, but it also consists the administrative arrangement of the states also. Whereas the constitution of America is comparatively a bit little. And the main reason for this is that there separate constitutions are meant for all the states, whereas in India there is no separate constitution for the states.

2. The Federal character :

There are two types of constitutions- one is Federal, and the other is Unitary, which is based on the nature and type of relations between the Federal government and the state governments. The constitution in which there is a distribution of powers between the Federal government and state governments, and for the protection of this type of distribution of powers, there is a judiciary. This is

known as a Federal type of constitution. In Indian constitution, the distribution of powers between the Federal government and state governments, have been made through three schedules i.e. Federal list, state list, and concurrent list. It was natural to adopt this type of constitution due to bigger in form, thick and high population and diversities in India.

3. Single Citizenship :

This is a very unique feature of Indian constitution. In general, in the Federal system of the government dual citizenship exists. One is of the country and the second of the state, in which he is residing as that of America, but in India, inspite of this, that though there is a federal form of government, yet we have only single citizenship. All of us are Indians. To reside in any state of the country, does not denote the separate citizenship of that state. This is co-operative element for the national unity and national unification.

4. Parliamentary form of Constitution :

There are three organs of the government- (A) Legislature, (B) Executive, (C) And Judiciary.

The form of the constitution can be either Parliamentary, or Presidential, based on the nature of relations between legislature and executive. The executive of India, means the Prime Minister and his council of Ministers, are responsible to the Legislature i.e. the Parliament, for its functions and period to govern. Such system is called as Parliamentary form of the government.

5. The Independence of Judiciary :

The Judiciary, is independent from the two organs of the Government, this is the other specific feature of the constitution. The Judiciary, i.e. the Supreme Court has the power to interpret the constitution and to protect the constitution.

6. Right to Vote for Adults :

This is the most important feature of Indian constitution, that in India, without any discrimination of any ground, all persons, who become adults, have been given the right to vote universally. In the beginning the minimum age for becoming voter was 18 years, but now it has been change to 21 years. In the other countries of the world, the citizens of various countries had to undergo a big struggle for getting the right to vote, but in India, inspite of illiteracy and less political experience, all Indians got the right to vote, without any discrimination.

7. Fundamental Rights :

The development from all the corners, is not possible in the absence of citizen rights. The farmers of the constitution were aware of this fact. In the part three of the constitution total six fundamental rights were given to the citizens. All such rights may not be misused, so the reasonable restrictions have also been imposed on the rights.

8. Principles of Directive Principles :

Those rights, which are necessary for the progress of person, and the farmers of the constitution also wanted to provide such rights couldn't be converted to fundamental rights, such rights were incorporated in the principles of Directive Principles for the states it is not compulsory to apply or execute, but they will always exist as ideals for the states performance, and the state shall be guided for framing of the state policies.

9. Various Sources of the Constitution :

At present, no constitution can claim to be purely original. Every constitution is inspired by one or other constitution. The concept of fundamental rights and Independence of Judiciary have been adopted from American constitution, where as the concept of Parliamentary democracy has been taken from the British constitution. The concept of 'Republic' has been adopted from France and the principles of Directive Principles have been inspired by the constitution of Ireland.

Fundamental Rights in the Constitution

Rights are such claims of the person, for development, which are accepted both by the society and state. When such rights are incorporated in the constitution and they are protected by Judiciary then such rights, take the form of "Fundamental Rights". The narration of fundamental rights in the constitution is the basic feature of Democratic constitution, and the farmers of Indian constitution were very much conscious about this aspect. Formations of various committees for the making of constitution one committee was kept for fundamental rights. The farmers of the constitution wanted that there should be impact of Indian cultural conventions and the basic values, being carried forward from the Vedic period. So the discussion on fundamental rights consumed 38 days. Dr. Radha Krishnan, told that "Fundamental Rights are the promises made, with our emotions and a treaty, being done, with the civilized world".

In reality, by incorporating the fundamental rights, along with security of the National unity and Integrity, the hard work of protecting the interests of people have been performed. This is the only reason that the detail narrations of fundamental rights in the constitution, is of that high extent, than any other constitution of any country in the world.

In the Articles 12 to 35 of Part 3 of the constitution Fundamental Rights have been incorporated. In the original form, there were 7 fundamental rights but by the 44th constitutional Amendment of 1978, the Right to property "has been removed from the category of fundamental rights, and made it only a Legal Right".

So, now the total number of Fundamental Rights are 6 only in Indian constitution.

1. Right to Equality (Article 14 to 18) :

The framers of the constitution were aware of and conscious about the existing inequality in the society. They knew that till the inequality from the society is not removed, it will have no meaning in reality, so they made, the right to Equality" as first fundamental right of the constitution. According to the right to equality, everybody will be equal in the eyes of law and the citizens will get equal protection of law, and no one can be prevented from such equality. The state will not do any discrimination with any citizens, on the basis of religion, birth place, form of race, caste and sex. Likewise, there shall be no restrictions on the use of shops, public restaurants, hotels, public wells, pounds and bathrooms, on all above grounds. All persons have been provided equal opportunities and rights, to enter the government services and appointments afterwards. No person shall be deemed to be disqualified for government service, on the basis of religion, caste, sex, and birth place. But for scheduled castes, backward and tribes, socially and educationally, females etc., special provision can be arranged and made, which includes 'Reservation' except this, in the concept of equality itself, the untouchability has been controlled and has been made a punishable offence, and providing all kinds of degrees has been stopped, so that among the citizens, inequality on any ground, may not come in force or become visible only. Bravery in military and intellectuals, will continue to be honoured by providing Honour by awarding Honorary degrees-like Paramveer Chakra, Mahaveer Chakra, Bharat Ratna, Padam Bhushan etc.

So, through the concept of right to equality in constitution, not only establishes equality before law, but social equality also, by which the mass good feeling may flourish.

2. Right to Freedom or Liberty (Article 19-22)

The constitution provides, the next fundamental right, after right to equality, is right to freedom, by which the citizen can develop his personality to the best quality. The citizens of India possess, the right to express views, to organise and hold conferences and meetings and organizations peacefully, but without any arms.

To move and reside anywhere in India and the right to get service, to adopt any profession, business etc, but on all the above freedoms, the logical reasonable restrictions are applied. The right to speech does not mean the insult of anyone disobediency of the Judiciary, and violation good conduct and morals. Every individual is co-related with the society, so he has all kinds of freedom, to same extent, that he does not create any hurdle in the way of other's freedom.

The constitution provided this right also that no person can be deemed guilty for committing any offence, till he has not acted in contravention of any law, while doing such work. Nobody can be punished twice for a single offence. Likewise no person can be compelled to give evidence against himself.

The most important narration of fundamental rights, is in Article 21; which provide the right to live, or life, which is related to the freedom of both soul and body. According to this Article any person can be prevented from such right only, by the established procedure of law. As per the 86th constitution fundament, 2002, the new Article 21(A) was inserted and by which it has been made mandatory for the states, that every state will manage free education for children having the age from 06 to 14 years.

Morever, this kind of freedom has also been given that if anybody has been arrested, in a very short time, the reasons of arrest shall be disclosed to him. He cannot also be prevented from taking help of any advocate of his choice. It is the legal duty of the police, that any arrested person should be put up before Judiciary, within 24 hours of arrest.

3. Right Against Exploitation: (Article 23, 24)

Any person, may not be exploited either by state or any other body else. So, the constitution provides the right against exploitation. According to this provision, the restrictions have been laid down, on traffic in human beings, forced labour, and jobless practices. The child labour has been fully restricted by imposing the rule that no children, below the age of fourteen, shall be employed or used, in any industry, mines and other dangerous works.

4. Right to Freedom of Religion: (Act 25 to 28)

According to Article 25, all the persons are entitled to freedom of conscience and the right to freely to profess, practice and propagate religion. But this freedom can be restricted on the ground of public order, morality and health. Therefore it entitles anybody to make conversion, but it does not entitle a person to force conversion.

Likewise, for the works of management for religion, religious institutions like Temple, Monastery, Gurudwara's establishment, have also been incorporated in fundamental rights. This has also been ensured that any institution, being funded by government, can't provide any religious education.

5. Cultural and Educational Rights(Act 29-30):

The Indian constitution has kept a unique feature that among the category of fundamental rights, the right to education and culture has been included, which specially protects the interests of minorities in India. According to this right, that any group of citizens, who carries a special language, religion, script or culture, will be always rightful to protect and keep them safe. Along with this, the minorities groups based on religion or language, shall be empowered to open the educational institutions of their choice and to regulate them also.

6. Right to Constitutional Remedies (Act 32) :

It is not sufficient to narrate the fundamental rights in the constitution only, but this kind of arrangement is necessary to be kept also, by which the rights can be implemented and cannot be violated. The right to constitutional remedy is an instrument, which protects the rights. Under this, it is the right of every citizen, that he can knock the

door of Supreme Court, when his fundamental rights are violated. Judiciary can issue five kinds of orders for the protection of fundamental rights; like- Habeas Corpus, Supreme order, Protest, Right to Question, Transmission Writt. Dr. Ambedkar while explaining the importance of this arrangement, commented that this is the Heart and Soul of the constitution.

Directive Principles of State Policy

The Directive Principles of the state policy have been narrated in the Chapter IV, under Article 36 to 51. This part has been incorporated with the inspiration from Ireland, and gives a form of the welfare state for the people.

On the one hand fundamental rights are the sources of individual development whereas on the other hand, Directive Principle of State Policy are the means for the achievement of collective Social Development also. In these Direct Principles such things are included, by which the social and economic development can be achieved. To implement, such policy principle by the state, it requires a lot of various economic sources, so the implementing of these principles have not been made mandatory for the future governments. It means, in the absence of the implementation of such policy principles, doors can't be knocked of Supreme Court. Likewise, the Directive Principles are not fit for protest, whereas for fundamental rights, Protect can be raised lawfully before the competent court.

In reality, these principles are the ideals for the state, and state will try to formulate policies, in the right of Directive Principles of the state. In the constitution, it has been provided that a schedule or list has been given of rights, which are other than fundamental rights, which such should also be given to citizens.

Government has tried to implement some principles. In some industries the improvement of labour problems and providing minimum wages to the unskilled labour in the organised and unorganised industries. Government has taken so many steps for the encouragement of small and village industries also. Government has done a lot for the development and welfare of the schedule castes and tribes. Even for the health of females and their delivery problems, government has taken a lot of helping steps.

To implement the Directive Principles, the Right to Education has been given in legal shape. In the whole country the Panchayat Raj Institutions have been given a constitutional status. To some extent, through the Mahatma Gandhi Maha Narega plan, the guarantee to Right to work, has been extended. For the upliftment of school going children's health, the lunch management has been made, for the children, and for their good health, and it is being provided free of cost. It is fully free of cost, this is an good attempt for implementing the directive principles. Government has published the General Insurance plans for common man, from the government side at the minimum premium and people to a great extent have been connected with opening of their bank accounts, provided social and economic protections, still there are so many other Directive Principles are lying pending, which requires implementation also.

Now-a-days even, the males and females are not getting equal salary for equal work. The inequality of income is increasing day by day, instead of decreasing. In the Article 44 of the constitution, the states have been directed that “the state shall try to make equal or common civil code for the all citizens of India. It means that in the field of all the social life, i.e. marriage, divorce, property; the state shall have the powers to enact laws, for all such aspects of social life. But till today, from a long time after the applicability of constitution, we could not make and apply or execute the common civil code. Separate religious sects are still having separate and individualistic laws. Even after, the advice of Judiciary given for so many times, we

could not get success to evolve common civil code for social life.

Likewise, it is also incorporated in the Directive Principles of state, that the state will take steps to restrict the slaughtering of cows, calves and dairy cattle. A big part of India, pays full regards to cow and recognise as most pious animal and equal to mother itself. The cow does not only have the religious importance, but it contributes to a big extent in economy and increases income also. Inspite of all these aspects, still the full restriction on the slaughtering of cows, couldn't be made effective in whole India. This duty of the state is also being directed by constitution, that the state will try to develop the field of Agriculture and Animal Husbandry, in an organised way on the basis of modern and scientific ways. So it is clear that state has still due to make more efforts.

The Fundamental Duties of the Citizens

The feelings of duties are naturally connected with the concepts of Rights. There is no existence of rights, in the absence of duties. Though, when the constitution of India was adopted, at that time, in the form of Rights, Fundamental Rights were in existence and in the form of Duties the incorporation of Directive Principles of state, were there, but the civilian's duties, were not included in the constitution of India.

By the 42nd constitutional amendment of 1976, the place has been accorded to the narration of the duties of citizens, in the part 4A and Article 51A of the constitution. Though the constitution is silent about intervention, that if any citizens does not obey his duties, whether he can be forced to obey his duties, whether he can be punished by any law. According to Article 51, these duties have been included in the constitution, which are as under:-

1. To abide by the Constitution and respect its ideals, institutions, National Flag, National Anthem.
2. To cherish and follow the noble ideals, which inspired our National struggle for freedom.
3. To uphold and Protect the Sovereignty, unity and integrity of India.
4. To defend the country and render national service when called upon to to so.
5. To promote Harmony and the spirit of common brotherhood amongst all the people of India transcending religious, linguistic and regional or sectional diversities; to renounce practices derogatory to the dignity of women.
6. To value and preserve the rich heritage of our composite culture.
7. To protect and improve the natural environment including forests, lakes, rivers, and wild life, and to have compassion for living creature.
8. To develop the scientific temper, humanism and the spirit of inquiry and reform.
9. To safeguard public property and to abjure violence.
10. To strive towards excellence in all sphers of individual and collective activity so that the nation constantly rises to higher levels of endeavour and achievement.
11. Who is a parents or guardians to provide opportunities for education to his child or, as the case may be, ward between the age of six and fourteen years.

Important Points

1. Constitution, for any nation, is always a basic document for the running of government of any state and for deciding the relations between the government and the state. The constitution of America is recognised as the first written constitution of the world.
2. The constitution of India was formulated through the planning of 'cabinet mission'. In the constituent assembly, Both kinds of members i.e. Elected and nominated, were

there. The first meeting of constituent assembly was held on 09th December 1946. Dr. Rajendra Prasad Ji was its first President.

3. For the formulation of constitution, various committees were framed. Among them, the most important committee was "standing committee" It President was Dr. Ambedkar. Keeping in mind, the contribution of Dr. Ambedkar, in the making of constitution, he is called as "The Father of Indian Constitution".

4. Indian constitution is the biggest constitution in the world. At present, it consists of 12 schedules, 22 parts and 395 articles, except the Preamble.

5. Indian constitution declares India as Federal, Parliamentary, Democratic Republican State.

6. The constitution provides various fundamental rights to citizens, in which the rights to liberty, the right to equality, right against exploitation, right to religion, right to education and culture and right of constitutional remedies are most significant.

7. The Directive Principles, function as a moral duties for the state. By the implementation of such principles, citizens will be able to develop socially and economically which will lead to their welfare and the concept of the "welfare state" will be achieved in practical.

8. By the 42nd constitution amendment of 1976, the duties of citizens have been incorporated in the Article 51 'A' of the Part 4 'A' of the Indian constitution at present, they are 11 in number.

Objective Type Questions

1. By which plan, the constitution of India was formulated?

   (a) Mount Baton (b) Vavel

   (c) Cabinet (d) Crips

2. When was the first meeting of constituent assembly by held?

   (a) 9th December 1946

   (b) 11th December 1946

   (c) 13th December 1946

   (d) 06th December 1946

3. When was the constitution of India adopted?

   (a) 26th January 1950

   (b) 26th November 1949

   (c) 30th January 1948

   (d) 15th August 1947

4. How many fundamental rights to Indian citizens have been provided ?

   (a) 7 (b) 8

   (c) 5 (d) 6

5. Which Article incorporated the common civil code?

   (a) Article 44 (b) Article 48

   (c) Article 49 (d) Article 50

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. How much time was consumed in the making of Indian constitution?

2. How many members were there in the constituent assembly?

3. What did Dr. Ambedkar call the Right to constitutional remedies?

4. When were the fundamental duties incorporated in Indian constitution?

5. How many Articles are there, in the Indian constitution?

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Write a short note on the right to equality.

2. Mention any four directive principles.

3. Describe any four fundamental rights.

4. Mention three salient features of constitution.

5. What is the importance of Independent Judiciary?

Essay Type Questions

1. Describe the Indian constituent Assembly?
2. Write a short note on the Right to Liberty.
3. In what way, the Directive Principles make the state to be, of welfare kind?
4. Describe the fundamental duties of citizens.

Answers of objective questions

1 (C) 2 (A) 3 (B)

4 (D) 5 (A)

Chapter - 10

Local Self Govrnment

In India, at local level to increase the participation of local persons, to fulfil this object, the local self government was established. Local self governance, is the most powerful instrument of Democratic Decentralisation of Powers in the government. In the year 1992, by 73rd 74th constitutional amendment act, they have been given the constitutional status.

Meaning :

The meaning of local self government, is connected with that level of governance where the governance is being conducted by those local institutions, which are being elected by the people, which have been given some powers and some duties to be done and serve the local people, while being controlled ultimately either by local or central governments. The very basis of local self government is like this, that the local people know and understand more about the local needs and problems both, and they can solve them easily.

According to the Dictionary of Britanica, local self government means "Instead of complete state, one internally restrict power of centre, which is authorised to take decision and execute them, in a small area". The local self government is being called by different names in different countries. In India local self government, in France local prefect and in America as municipal government. Local self government has some drawbacks also. In this system, due to collapsed locality, the narrowness and selfish tendency were increased. Due to division of governance liabilities and duties for e.g. a large number of office bearers, extra vacancy and so on, the local self government suffers from lack of efficiency and unwanted extra expenses take place.

It is necessary for the success of local self government, that people should have high moral character, honesty and sense of responsibility for implementing duties. People should not use the right to vote, on the basis of caste, religion but it should be used and vote should be casted on the basis of qualification and merits of the candidate. The secret of the success of local self government, lies in the co-ordination between the powers of central or regional powers of controlling the lower one and the independence of the local self institutions like Municipalities, Panchayats and Panchayat Samitis etc.

The system of Republic and Local Self Government in Ancient India:-

There had been a convention in ancient India, regarding Local Self Administration. The word "Panchayat", denotes about the system that it is a group of five elected persons, by which a lot of uncountable country side people, were governed. The Panchayat Administration, gives indication towards the tendency of local self government. In various periods of history, even after the coming up and downfall of Monarchies and changes in social and economic setup, the influence of such (local self government institution) has been in force, till today, in one or the other forms.

Koutilya, in his famous book "Economics", explained that for the achievement of local self

government, the powers of the state are to be decentralised, in the following format. In that format, the Janpad Administration was divided and named as 'village' collection (10 villages) Karvtick (2000 villagees) Dronamukh (400 villages) and local level (800 villages).

Koutilya developed the concept of local self government in this way that town level institutions were named as "Pur" and with one local officer namely 'Sthanik', and in villages "Gop" (Sarpanch) was named as Administrator, they should have co-ordination between the two. In the ancient period, the best example of local self government, was there in the regime of "choll rule", in the South India. In the regime of choll rule, the villages were being administered by "Nadu Councils".

In India, the construction of local self government are in two types, first is 'Urban Local Self government and the Second one is, rural Local Self government. Rural local self government is also known as "Panchayati Raj System" in India.

Development of Local Self Government in Rajasthan:-

Even before the modern reorganisation of Rajasthan, in some Riyasats of Rajasthan, as Bikaner (1929), Jaipur (1938), Sirohi (1943), Bharatpur (1944), and Karoli (1949), there were Panchayat Raj laws which were functioning and in execution.

Rajasthan had been utmost forward state, in the field of establishment of "Panchayat Raj" in joint Rajasthan. The ordinance of Panchayati Raj was executed in the year 1948. After the reorganisation of Rajasthan in 1949, under the chief Panchayat officer, a separate department of Panchayat was created. By Rajasthan Panchayat enactment of 1953, (which came into force on 01st January 1954), the reorganisation of Panchayat was made. In regard to Democratic Decentralisation, a three tier system, being recommended by Balwant Raj Roy Mehta, committee, Rajasthan Panchayat Samiti and Zila Parishad, Act 1959 was introduced.

On 02nd October 1959, the former Prime Minister, Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru, inaugurated the modern three tier system of Panchayat Raj in the Nagour District and he indicated towards it to be a very big historical step in the field of local self government system. Like this Rajasthan got the opportunity of becoming first state in India, in which the modern three tier system of Panchayat Raj Administration was adopted so as to implement the idea of local self government. In Rajasthan, for the urban area and for its local administration, the Rajasthan Municipal Act 1959, was enacted.

In Rajasthan, for the purpose of improving the system of Panchayat Raj working pattern various committees have been constituted from time to time, for suggesting the new directions for more improvement. The important committee's names are as under:-

A. Harish Chandra Mathur Committee 1963

B. Sadik Ali Committee 1963

C. Girdhari Lal Vyas Committee 1975

D. Har Lal Singh Khara Committee 1990

E. Arun Kumar Committee 1996

F. Shiv Charan Mathur Commission Committee 2000

G. Gulab Chand Kataria (Cabinet) Sub Committee 2004-05

The Rajasthan government has enacted Panchayat Raj Act 1994 and amending the Rajasthan Municipal Act 1959, in the year 1994, in pursuance of 73rd & 74th constitutional amendments. By which, more participation of women or females and the downtrodden classes of the society was ensured.

For the urban local self government at present, the Rajasthan Municipal Act, 2009 is in force.

The Rural Local Self Government :-

Rural local self government institutions work

on different levels. Their description is given below.

Gram Sabha :

The Gram Sabha, is an institution, which execute directly the concept of Direct Democracy in practice. The group of all adults citizens of the rural area is called as 'Gram Sabha'.

Every citizen of a Panchayat area, attaining the age of 18 years and whose name is entered in the voter list of the concern Panchayat Area, shall be a member 'Gram Sabha'. By the 73rd constitutional amendment, the 'Gram Sabha' (Village Sabha) has been given a constitutional status. In the Chapter 2 'A' of the Rajasthan Panchayat Raj Act of 1994, the details of Gram Sabha, has been written. For every village Panchayat, there shall be a village assembly. The meetings of village assembly, will be presided over by Sarpanch deputy, in his absence and if both are not present, then the elected person by the present members of gram sabha. The Quorum for any meeting of village assembly is the 10% presence of the total strength.

There shall be two meetings of gram sabha every year. The first meeting shall be called in the first quarter of the financial year in which the discussion will be held on the important subjects:-

A. The Accounting details of last year.

B. The proposals for the working action plan for the current financial year.

C. The last audited report and the answers, submitted in that regard.

The second meeting will be held in the last quarter of the financial year, in which discussion on the following points/ subjects shall be made:-

A. The expenditure details of the year.

B. There will be plan for physical and financial actions to be executed in the year.

C. The amendment proposals in any proposed work will be presented in the first quarter meeting.

Budged and Tax proposed of Gram Panchayat

The meeting of Village Panchayat on Budget etc., can be held by these methods- on the request of 1/10 members of Village Panchayat, or if it is desired by Panchayat Samiti Zila Parishad or state government, to call the meeting as per direction, it shall be held within 15 days from the date of desire for calling the meeting.

The development officer, or any person nominated by him, of the concersn Panchayat Samiti shall take part in the meeting. The Panchayat Secretary will write the minutes of the meeting proceedings, and it will be read out by Panchayat Secretary in the end of the meeting and it will be signed and approved by the present members in the meeting of village Panchayat. According to this Act, the subjects on which discussion is held and a resolution is passed, it should be signed and approved by the majority members of the total present numbers in the meeting. The village Panchayat shall be responsible and answerable to the Village Sabha.

Gram Panchayat:-

On the basis of the enactment of state government, for every Panchayat Circle, consisting a village or a group of villages, there will be a Village Panchayat. The 'Village Panchayat' is also called the executive committee of 'Village Sabha'. Every 'Village Panchayat' will function as corporate body, which shall have perpetual succession and a general seal.

According to the Rajasthan Panchayat Raj Act of 1994, it is necessary to have one Sarpanch and 9 Ward Panch, on every Panchayat, having the population upto three thousand, and on above every one thousand or its part, there shall be two ward panch. For example, if in any Panchayat, the population is 4600 person, then in this Panchayat, there shall be one Sarpanch and Thirteen Ward Panch. In every Panchayat one Sarpanch and for every ward of Village Panchayat, one Ward Panch

for each, shall be elected directly by the people. Only that person can contest the election of Sarpanch, who is having age of 21 years and is a registered voter of that Panchayat area.

The term of Village Panchayat is being kept for five years, as it is for Panchayat Samiti and Zila Parishads. In Rajasthan, there had been 9900 Village Panchayats in the year 2016.

In Village Panchayats, the reserved places for scheduled caste & tribes, and backward classes shall be according to the rules, based on Rotation basis. For females class wise reservation shall be as per rules, available in the concern act.

The standing committee is an instrument for providing help in the functions of Panchayat. In Rajasthan, for the Village Panchayat, the standing committees are made for some specific subjects like, Administration, Establishment, Finance, Taxation, Development, and Production Programmes, Education & Social Service, along with Social Justice. These standing committees are formed in such a manner that every member of Panchayat may get a place, in one committee atleast.

Any Panchayat may have meeting as many times as required for the execution of its functions. But it is essential to call the meeting once in 15 days, at the fixed place. For conducting the meetings of Panchayat, it has been decided that the Quorum shall be deemed to be present, if the one third members, out of the total members, are present in the meeting. The meetings of Panchayat shall be presided by Sarpanch, in his absence by deputy Sarpanch and in the situation of non presence of the above two, any member of Panchayat, who is elected for this work, will preside over the meetings of Panchayat. All decisions are taken by Panchayat, in the meeting on the strength of majority votes, of the total present members. The Sarpanch or deputy Sarpanch while presiding the meeting has veto vote, and it can be used when the votes casted by the members are equal. The Sarpanc deputy Sarpanch of gram Panchayat, can be removed by the no confidence motion, only after two years from the date of their joining the post. This no confidence motion should be passed by the ¾ members out of the present members in meeting.

Functions of Gram Panchayat :-

In the 1st schedule of Rajasthan Panchayat Raj Act 1994, the functions of Village Panchayat have been decided, which are as under in short:-

1. Common work :- Village Panchayat shall prepare yearly plan and yearly budget, for its development. Similarly, helping at the time of Natural disaster, to remove unauthorised encroachment on the public property and to prepare statistics of the village for so many purposes.

2. Administrative work :- Village Panchayat will perform the following administrative functions mainly:-

To mark numbering the premises, work of census, to plan about the agriculture production improvement programmes, to prepare description for the execution of development plan for village, to evolve an efficient system, for the correct use of the funds, being allocated by the Central Government, for some specified works, to control over the land of community, Barn and Pasture (for animals free movement), to collect the information about population statistics, and about birth, death, marriages, registration figures, to protect and maintain the record of Village Panchayat.

3. Other work :- The main other functions of Village Panchayat are as under:-

Including Agriculture and Gardening expansion, and their development, Animal Husbandry and Milk Dairy, small irrigation, khadi and village cottage industries, drinking water, roads, rural electrification, poverty elimination programme, primary and old persons educating informally and library, cultural activities, like market fairs, village sanitary, public health and public welfare, women and child development,

welfare of weaker section of the society, public distribution system, the maintenance of community's property, inns, puddles, parking, slaugter houses, public parks, playing grounds, and regulation of wine shops etc.

Panchayat Samiti :-

The middle step of the Panchayat Raj system, is known as 'Panchayat Samiti'. The period of working span is for 5 years, alike the other organs of Panchayat Raj system. At present in Rajasthan there are 295 Panchayat Samiti. According to Rajasthan Panchayat Raj Act 1994, the state government can declare any local area of a district, as a block, for which there shall be a Panchayat Samiti. Each Panchayat Samiti will be a corporate body, which will have a perpetual succession and a general stamp.

In every Panchayat Samiti there shall be the following members:-

1. The elected members from the regional Election Areas.
2. All MLAs, representing the area of concern Panchayat Samiti.
3. All Sarpanch of Village Panchayats, of that particular Panchayat Samiti.

According to the Act, that if in any Panchayat Samiti area is having the population upto one lakh, shall bear the 15 constituents, and having more than this Quantum of population in that area, on every 15,000 population, two constituents shall be increased. In the election of Panchayat Samitis, the seats have been reserved as per rules, for schedule castes, tribes, backward class and women and all such reserve seats shall be allocated on the basis of rotation, every time as per rule. The duty of conducting the election of Panchayat Raj Institutions, have been given to State Election Commission. In the structure of Panchayat Samiti, normally, it has Pradhan, deputy Pradhan, Block Development Officer, Public Relation Officer and other civil servants, for performing the main functions of Panchayat Samiti. For each territorial constituency, one representative is elected by the votes of the concern area of Panchayat Samiti. All such elected members from the territorial constituencies elect Pradhan and deputy Pradhan, out of themselves.

These members are also having the rights to remove Pradhan or deputy Pradhan, on the basis of passing no confidence motion, by the ¾ majority votes of the total present members.

As per the Act, every Panchayat Samiti will hold meeting once, in a month, for the fulfilments of its duties. For the purpose of Quorum, it has been decided in the Act, that there should be atleast 1/3 members should be present, out of the total members. All the decisions, approvals of the proposals etc, shall be taken by the majority vote, of the total present members in the meeting. All the proceedings of every meeting shall be written in the proceedings register or copy.

Functions of Panchayat Samiti:-

In the second schedule of the Act, the main functions of Panchayat Samiti, have been narrated, which are as under:-

1. To prepare yearly plan and budget for Panchayat Samiti and to discuss and approve, the yearly projects or plans of the Subordinate Panchayats.
2. The Agricultural work, including the extension of Agriculture.
3. Land reform and soil conservation.
4. Micro irrigation and drinking water.
5. Poverty eradication.
6. Animal rearing, dairy and fisheries.
7. Rural housing
8. Education, including primary education
9. Roads, markets and fairs
10. Health, women and welfare of weaker classes.

11. Statistics disaster-aid, co-operative and library work etc.

Zila Parishad :-

The rural local self government, means the highest unit of Panchayati Raj System, is Zila Parishad or District Council. In every district, there shall be one Zila Parishad. The tenure of its members is 5 years. The Zila Parishad plays a very important role of a supervising authority regarding the execution of the plans and projects of the Rural development and progress. Zila Parishad plays the role of co-joinder chain between the state government on the one hand, and Panchayat Samiti and Village Panchayat on the other. Zila Parishad shall organise the meeting once, between the 3 months period and the Quorum shall be deemed to be present, if 1/3 members of the total number of Zila Parishad. The proceedings of every meeting shall be recorded and written, in the proceeding register, under the supervision of an executive officer.

The Zila Parishad (District Council) is organised by the following four types of members:-

A. Direct elected members from regional areas .

B. MLAs and MLs from Zila Parishad.

C. Registered MLCs from Zila Parichad.

D. All the Pradhans of Panchayat Samitis, of the area of that concern Zila Parishad.

The members mentioned in the above category of (B) (C) and (D), shall be allowed to caste vote in regard to the proposal of removal of Zila Pramukh or deputy Zila Pramukh but in other matters, they will be able to cast votes.

In any district, upto the four lakh population, there shall be 17 constituencies and if the population exceeds the limit, then for each 1 lakh population or any past population, two constituencies shall be increased. For these constituencies, the reservation, for schedule caste, tribes, other backward class and women, shall be on the basis of rotation as per rules.

The voters of concerned Zila Parishad, elect the representative from the each constituency. Afterwards, all the elected representatives (members) elect Zila Pramukh and deputy Zila Pramukh, out of themselves. They also have the rights to remove Zila Pramukh or Deputy Zila Pramukh, by bringing the no confidence motion, having the support of ¾ members majority. For the functioning of Zila Parishad, there is pre executive officer, one Junior Engineer, one Accounts Officer and other officials, so as to enable Zila Parishad to performs the functions more efficiently and effectively.

The election of the members of Zila Parishad shall be conducted by state election commission. Every Zila Parishad shall constitute the five (5) standing committees for the different group of subjects, given in the Act, if it is needed, for other subjects, additional committees can also be formed. The state government can constitute a five members committee, for each Zila Parishad, which will supervise the working, planning and execution of functions.

Functions of Zila Parishad :-

These are the following important functions as narrated in the third schedule of the Rajasthan Panchayati Raj Act.

1. As a general work, Zila Paarishad has to prepare the plan of economic developments social justice and plans for further.
2. To included subjects Agriculture Production, and to encourage, use of developed methods and instruments. To organise Agriculture Fairs and to provide training to Farmers.
3. Micro irrigation projects and underground water resources conservation also upto 2500 acre and to encourage the farming of vegetables and fruits in the shape of gardening.
4. The publication of the statistics of the functions of Zila Parishad and Panchayat Samities, and proper use and co-ordination

with other information.

5. To encourage the rural electrification and survey of new connections and supply.
6. Soil conservation for social forestry, to drop barren land and afforestation
7. Arrangement of veterinary hospitals, efforts to check diseases and dairy development, poultry farm, pigeries and fisheries.
8. To identify the traditional experts artists for domestic and cottage industries. To organise the training programmes for crafts man and supply of raw material needed by them.
9. Construction and maintenance of rural roads bridges office buildings and identification of connecting roads.
10. To establish primary health centres and their maintenance, to organise the programmes of vaccination, and family welfare programmes for mother and the infant's health.
11. Providing aid and developing education facilities, scholarships, backs for SC, ST, OBC children.
12. To execute the programme of poverty remoral effectively and to organise successfully the programmes regarding social reforms activities.
13. To establish upper primary schools, adult education and to provide the facilities of library.

Urban Local Self Government:-

The Urban Local Self Government has been given the status of constitutional institution by the 74th constitutional amendment, made by the Act of the 1992, and implemented w.e.f. June 1993. The state of Rajasthan also followed, the 74th Indian Constitutional Amendment and to execute the feelings and characteristics, the Act which was already in force. In 1994 it was Amended in regard to, so many sections of the Rajatshan Municipal Act of 1959 and it was modified accordingly. At present, the Institutions of Urban Local Self Government are being regulated and controlled by the Rajasthan Municipal Act of 2009. At present, in Rajasthan there 7 city corporations, 34 Municipal Councils and 146 Municipalities. As per the Act, as amended from time to time, the Institutions of Urban Local Self Government are functioning, which are as under:-

Municipal Corporation :-

City corporation is the highest Urban unit of local self government. In Rajasthan, as per 74th constitutional amendment expectations, In every expanded urban area (which carries the population more than 5 lakhs) the city corporation is constituted. At present, in Rajasthan, at all 7 Divisional Head Quarters, city corporations have been constituted. The names of the places of Divisional Head Quarters are as under-

Jaipur, Jodhpur, Kota, Ajmer, Bikaner, Udaipur and Bharatpur. From the organizational point of view, Jaipur is the biggest corporation. City corporation is a corporate body, which has a universal succession. It carries a general stamp and it can file the suit in the name of the corporation. It also has the time tenure of 5 years.

In the internal organization of city corporation there are council, mayor, deputy mayor, chief executive officer, corporation commissioner, and other officials and some committees of various subjects, for performing the basic duties. The state government, divides the area in various constituencies, on the basis of population. Such territorial constituencies are called as 'wards'. Among all the members of wards, the seats are kept reserved for schedule caste, tribes, women and other backward classes, on the basis of population as per rules based on the rotation system. From each ward, one member is elected by Direct Voting System by the people, all the adult voters are authorised to cast

their votes. After the 74th Amendment in the constitution, in Rajasthan, the elections for city corporations have been held for five (5) times.

Mayor and Deputy Mayor :-

The Chairman and Deputy Chairman of city corporation are called as Mayor and Deputy Mayor, respectively. The members of the corporation elect any member as the Mayor and Deputy Mayor, out of themselves. There are provisions for reservation to the post of Mayor or Deputy Mayor. Mayor is the first citizen of the city and his tenure is five years. These posts can become vacant, due to death, resignation, or removal by the no confidence motion, under such circumstances, the members of the corporation again elect the Mayor or Deputy Mayor, out of themselves, for the remaining tenure. The Mayor presides over the meeting of corporation. Mayor may call any information or report from the Chief Executive Officer. In the absence of Mayor, the Deputy Mayor performs all functions.

The State Government appoints one Chief Executive Officer and one commissioner to provide help in the execution of functions of the corporation. The Chief Executive Officer can participate in the meetings of the council and its various committees also. The preparation of the documents, Record, and Budget, is being done under his supervision. He is responsible for the execution and application of the policies, approved laws and rules, made by the council. All the officials and officers perform their work, under his control, with an objective to provide help in working to the corporation, in the concern Act, it has been provided to have different committees on various subjects.

1. The Executive Committee, which shall be organised, by the following persons:-

(A) Mayor (B) Deputy Mayor (C) The opposition leader in the council (D) 7 members, being elected by the council, which will include two women members also.

The Chief Executive Officer shall be ex officio chairman of the executive committee. Apart from this, there are other few committees also in the council, as finance committee, health and sanitation committee, building and construction works committee, Rules and by laws committee, Dirty colonies improvement committee, mitigation of crime committee and compromise committee etc. apart from this, if there is a need to form other committees on some more subjects, such committees may also be organised.

The Functions of Municipal Corporations :-

The city corporation, mainly, does the main functions of three types i.e. necessary, optimal and special. Necessary functions, management of pure drinking water, public electrification work, the construction of roads and toilets. The construction and maintenance of public roads, severage, toilets and sanitation.

To keep the record of birth and death in the corporation's area, the regulation and arrangement of cremation, to manage primary education, to destroy old and dangerous buildings, to control and stop the dangerous business, to supervise and maintain the property of the corporation, the regulation and controlling of all eatable places, like hotels, restaurants and public resorts, and to publish the yearly reports of the various organs of the corporation etc.

Optimal works are such kind of work are included, and performed, subject to the availability or means and sources. Such functions can be described as under:-

Public parks, maintenance and construction of public libraries, cultural stages, the arenas, to organise fairs and exhibitions, the plantation and maintenance of shady trees. To help poor and inefficient people, to organise the musical concert on the public places etc.

'Special functions', are related to hazardous and emergency situation, like- Famine relief and to

save the people from epidemic and to control the spread of such disease in other areas.

The city corporation earns the income, by leving some different kinds of local taxes, so that the duties can be performed efficiently and perfectly. Taxes like- property tax, tax on animals, profession tax, entertainment tax, land and building tax, tax on the rental income etc. are applicable. These taxes are levied by a legal process, provided in the concerned Act. The income from other sources, like fees on transfer of property, is additional source of income. Along with these sources of income, the government also provides financial help in the form of'grant'.

Municipal Council :-

Municipal Council, is the second stage, in the form of Urban Local Self Government. The state government can sanction and establish, the Municipal Council in any smaller urban area, having the population from one lakh to 5 lakh. The municipal council is a legal body constituted under the law. It has a particular seal and also has perpetual succession. The Municipal Council can purchase or sell any property in its name. They are liable to undergo legal liabilities and suits of civil or compensation can be filed against it. And it can also file suit in the courts against any culprit or defaulter or criminal. At present, in Rajasthan, there are 34 Municipal Councils, the names of the places are as under:-

Kishangarh, Beawar, Alwar, Bhilwara, Chittorgarh, Dungarpur, Banswara, Churu, Dholpur, Shri Ganganagar, Hanumangarh, Jaisalmer, Jhalore, Jhalawar, Junjunu, Nagour, Pali, Rajsamand, Sawai Madhopur, Sikar, Karoli, Sirohi, Tonk, Barmer, Baran, Bundi, Pratapgarh, Dosa, Makrana, Gangapur City, Hindon City, Bhiwadi, Balotra and Sujangarh.

In municipality, there is a elected council or executive. The territory of the municipality is being divided in various constituencies on the basis of population, which is known as 'ward'. The elected persons from the ward is known as 'councillor'. The determination of the total numbers of wards, are being decided from time to time, though notifications. The councillors are directly elected through casting, adult's votes, by the persons living in that constituency. The members of Parliament and Legislature i.e. (M.P. and M.L.A.'s) are also honourable members of the council. The system of reservation for the post of councillors, is the same, as like city corporation. Municipal council, constitutes some committees for the better performance of its duties, which are of standing and temporary nature.

Chairman and Vice Chairman :-

The President and Vice President of Municipality is called as Chairman and Vice Chairman respectively.

They are elected by the councillors of Municipality from themselves. Their term is five years. In the events of one's death, or resigning or passing of no confidence motion, the elected councillors can again elect Chairman or Vice Chairman (President or Vice President) for the remaining part of the tenure. The President presides over the meetings of the council and control the officer and officials, appointed for execution of the already decided policies.

Functions of Municipal Council :-

The Municipal Council also executes the same functions, as designed for city corporation, of all the three categories i.e. compulsory, voluntary and special functions. By the 74th constitutional amendment, in the schedule 12th of the constitution, the works determined for the Municipal Council have been listed in this schedule, which are as follows:-

1. Town planning
2. Regulation of land
3. Planning for social and economic development
4. Roads and bridges

5. Providing of water for residential and commercial, domestic industries
6. Public health and Sanitation
7. Fire extinguishing services to be provided
8. Urban forestry and protection of environment
9. Slum development
10. Protection of interest of weak, mentally and physically disabled persons.
11. Poverty removal.
12. Development of public parks and play grounds
13. The development, maintenance and construction of electrified cremation centres and cremation land.
14. Registration of birth and death
15. Electrification of roads
16. Construction of vehicle parking and bus stand.
17. Regulation of mines
18. Regulation of slaughter houses

Municipality :-

In the whole country, for the formation and organising the local self government, the population has been the main basis for the nature of local body i.e. Municipality, or Municipal Council or City Corporation etc. In Rajasthan also, on the basis of population local body administration has been set up. For the transitional small areas, having the population less than one lakh, the Municipality has been established. The village area, which is on the way to become urban or city area, has been called as 'Transitional Areas'. For the transitional small areas, in 74th constitutional amendment, it has been provided that in such areas, there shall be 'Town Panchayat'. But the government of Rajasthan decided that instead of 'Town Panchayat' there shall be Municipal Boards (IInd & IVth category) of various categories. At present, their strength of the above categories are respectively is 13, 58 and 75. Likewise, in Rajasthan total 146 Municipal Boards have been established.

The area of Municipality, in the form of Territorial Election Area, is being divided in various 'wards', on the basis of population. The number of wards, in different municipalities, is being decided by the state government, through issuing of notifications, as and when it is required. The member of Municipality Board, is being elected directly by the Secret Ballot System applied to adult voters. Any person, whose name is registered in the voter list of the concerned Municipal Area, having the age of 21 years, may contest the election of councillor.

The reservation of the wards, for the scheduled caste, trible and women, have been decided on the basis of the proportion of the population, by rotation as per rules. The determination of reserved wards is decided by lottery system, before election. The women and persons belonging to reserve class, can also contest for any general seat. For the implementation of the duties of municipality, the meeting shall be called at least for one day in two months.

Chairman and Vice Chairman :-

The members of Municipal Board elect out of themselves, one President and one Vice President. The Municipal Board, prepares the policy of local self body's working and functions, in the leadership of President. The implementation of the policies is done by the officer i.e. the executive officers and with the help of other officials working under him. The term, powers, and functions of President and Vice President of the Municipal Board, are more or less. Same, with that of municipal Council. In the Municipal Boards, the reservation for the post of President shall be decided by the government through the formula of rotation as per rules, from time to time.

In Rajasthan is all the Municipal Boards, there are various committees on various subjects, for the

purpose of better performance, and result oriented implementation of the policies. Some of them are as Finance, Health and Sanitary, Building and construction, Rules & sub rules, Improvement of dirty colonies, the elimination of crimes and settlement committees. The Municipal Board can by its discretion may constitute more committees on other subjects also.

Functions of Municipality :-

It is worth mentioning here, that the of the functions and powers of city corporation have been written in the previous pages, that kind of all compulsory, voluntary and special category functions, shall be implemented & performed by the Municipal Boards also. According to the 74th constitutional amendment, the functions to be done by the city corporation and Municipal Boards, which have been listed in 12th schedule of the constitution, has also been described in previous pages, the same is applicable to Municipal Boards also.

Cantonment Board :-

The word 'cantonment' is generally used for the residential place of soldiers. In the old time, the civilians also started living in the residential area of soldiers, so the government of India, enacted a separate act, for solving the problems of such mixed colonies, For the organisation of local body, the Act was enacted in 1924, in the name of cantonment Board Act. This Act desired to establish cantonment Boards in such areas, which will function as like the Municipal Board or council or corporation. The cantonment Boards are directly administrated and controlled by the defence department of Indian Government. At present in Rajasthan at one place in Ajmer, i.e. in Nasirabad cantonment Board has been established. At present in India, all the cantonment Boards shall function under a new law, implemented from September 2006.

The Chief officer of Military, becomes the President of Cantonment Board. The organisation of Board, consist of nominated and elected members both. The Vice President is elected from the non Military elected representatives. The term of the elected members of such Board, is five years, and the term of nominated member, continues, till he continues in chair for the term period. The nature of functions of constituent Board, are just like the Municipal councils & Boards. In the local area to perform the work of light management providing, sanitary and health oriented works are also to be done in the concerned area. The Board, for the implementation of its functions depends on the grant in aid of central government and also generate income, by imposing some local taxes, in their areas.

Efforts of Local-Self Government Rajasthan :-

1. In the situation of removal of any member of local body, due to any reason, belonging to scheduled caste, trible, women class, the person belonging to the same category of reservation, shall be elected the President of the local body.
2. There is a restriction for contesting election by such person who has been convicted for years or any person against whom the cognition has been taken by the court or charges have been made against him.
3. With the object to increase the participation of local people in village development and to strengthen, the village community feelings, the “ward assembly” has been established, as the Primary unit of Local Self Government.
4. Any person, who wants to contest election, and having more than two children, then he will be deemed as disqualified and would not be able to contest the election.
5. The Rajasthan village development state services, has been started, and the selected persons in such services will be given the Duty of Implementing the planning of Panchayati Raj Development Process.
6. The basic qualification for any person,

intending to participate in Panchayati Raj Election, have been decided, which are as under:-

a. The members of Zila Parishad & Panchayat Samiti- 10th class passed.

b. Members Sarpanch of the Panchayat of the scheduled areas- 5th class passed.

c. Sarpanch of other Panchayats- 8th class passed

7. Any person contesting the election of Panchayat should have a toilet in his house, in full working order.

8. Similarly, the qualifications for the Municipal Body, council and corporation have been decided along with the condition of existing toilet in working order, in his residence.

Important Points

1. In our country, there was a good format of Republican Government (Local Self Government) in the period of Choll Rule.

2. By the 73rd & 74th constitutional amendment, the rural local self government and the urban local self government, received the constitutional status and uniformity respectively.

3. The 'Gram Sabha' in the legislature of 'Gram Panchayat'. All the proposals for the development programmes in the area of Panchayat are being prepared by this unit.

4. In the three type system of Panchayat Raj Institutions, with the intention to establish proper co-ordination, the Pradhan has been made the officio member of Zila Parishad and the Sarpanch is member of Panchayat Samiti.

5. In Rajasthan, the three tier system of Panchayat Raj is in force, in which there is a Village Panchayat at village level, Panchayat Samiti at Block level and Zila Parishad at the District level.

6. The election, of Panchayati Raj Institutions and urban local self bodies, is being held within the decided term of 5 years.

7. In Rajasthan, there are 9000 village Panchayats, 295 Panchayat Samities, 33 Zila Parishads, 146 Municipalities, 34 Municipal Boards, and 7 city corporations along with one cantonment Board.

Objective Type Questions

1. By which constitutional amendment, the Urban local self government received the effective and powerful position?

(a) 44th Constitutional Amendment

(b) 74th Constitutional Amendment

(c) 42nd Constitutional Amendment

(d) 73rd Constitutional Amendment

2. How is Gram Sabha formed ?

(a) By the registered members of the voter list of the concern area of Village Panchayat.

(b) By all people living in the area of Village Panchayat.

(c) By Panch, Sarpanch and Up Sarpanch.

(d) By the registered voters of the Panchayat Samiti area.

3. Which is not the institution of Urban Local Self Body?

(a) Municipality (b) Village Panchayat

(c) Municipal Council (d) City Corporation

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Which state, of the Union of India, executed the three tier system of Panchayat Raj at the first time?

2. By whom is Sarpanch elected ?

By whom is Sarpanch elected ?

3. From which institution is Pradhan related?
4. In which cities of Rajasthan city corporations have been formed?

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Describe the functions of Village Panchayat.
2. Which members form Zila Parishad?
3. Write short note on 'Cantonment Board'.
4. Describe the duties of Mayor.

Essay Type Questions

1. How is the Panchayat Samiti formed ? Describe functions which are implemented by it.
2. Describe the works and formation of Municipal Council.
3. "The Progress of villages is not possible without Panchayati Raj". Give your opinion.

Answers to Objective Type Questions

1 (B) 2 (A) 3 (B)

Chapter - 11

Foreign Relations

Foreign Policy of India: From Past to Present

In India, there has been an old glorious convention in regard to Global relations. India has always tried its best, to develop a bridge with other nations for the attainment of good relations, right from its independence till today and this kind of step has been supported by the whole world. In the course of its freedom movement even, India has repeated its priorities of having better relations with other countries, from various stages. In regard to, International Relations, India has its clear stand that there should be peace in the world. India has always supported the concepts of the freedom and right to decide by oneself, of other countries of the world. India has also supported the Principle of co-existence and the International organization, meant for the protection of the rights of all the countries. India has always opposed the concept of Imperialism. And in this way, even before Independence India has explained the objectives and ideals of its nature of Foreign Policy.

The Aim of India's Foreign Policy

The Principles of Peace, Friendly Relations, and Equality, have been preferred in Indian Foreign Policy. India has always adopted a clear cut strong stand, while keeping the co-operation and good faith with other countries. The main three base pillar, of Indian Foreign Policy are- 'Peace, Friendship & Equality'.

In the objectives of Foreign Policy, the protection of National Interests, is the most important element. India has always tried to co-adjust, the National Interests, with the interests of International World.

Our best ideals based on Humanity and the best values of life, are becoming the main basis of long existed Foreign Policy. This kind of well cultured thought has given the continuity to Foreign Policy in every period. In the Article 51 of Indian Constitution, under the subject of Directive Principles of the state, the basic elements of Indian Foreign Policy has been incorporated.

The main objectives of Indian Foreign Policy are as under :-

1. Efforts for International Peace and Security.
2. To solve the International Disputes, through Mediators.
3. To develop cordial relations with all the countries.
4. Trust in International Laws
5. To keep away from Military agreements and groups.
6. To oppose Imperialism and Colonialism.
7. To oppose discrimination and helping the Nations, who are struggling for their Freedom.
8. Facilating trade, industry and financial relations Transfer of Technology between countries.
9. To help, in solving the problems, and challenges, before present International

Community.

10. In South Asia, making the position of India, on the basis of Friendly Relations and Mutual co-operation.

The Determinants India's Foreign Policy :-

There were some challenges and special circumstances before India, at the time of getting Freedom, in the year 1947. So in deciding the Foreign Policy's basic, the following elements possessed important place in the then period:-

1. The whole world was divided into two groups, at the time, when India got Freedom, so India decided not to join any group politics, and kept away from groupism. Means, it can be said that India remained 'Neutral'. It was the utmost priority of India to develop fully in the economical field, and for the attainment of this goal, India needed help from all the countries of the world. This scene gave birth to the concept of Neutral Foreign Policy, leaving aside, both the Leaders of Big groups of Nations.
2. To strengthen the security arrangement along with the objective to maintain unity and integrity of India.
3. The Geographical reasons also played important role in determination of the nature of Foreign Policy. To protect our territory had been the top priority on the one hand. In East India is nearly situated in Russia and communist, and on the other hand, in the South is China. East part and the South West part, is surrounded with Sea. The main interest of India vests in the self security, peace and mututal friendships.
4. The Ancient culture has also affected the determination of Indian Foreign Policy. The worldly Brotherhood, Humanism & Peace, had been the inspiring factors of our way of life from the Ancient period.

Chief characteristics of Indi's Foreign Policy:-

1. Policy of Non Alignment :

Due to compelling circumstances, the world was divided into two groups. One group was in the leadership of capalistic America, and the other group was in the influence of communist Soviet Russia. India decided to have distance and to keep away from both the groups, being affected by Ideology and National Interests both India followed this path and centralised on its development, this policy was called as Policy of Non Alignment, in due course of time this policy centralised, the Principle of Judicious and Independent approach towards the problems of the world. From this point of view, this policy is of constructive and positive nature.

In the situation of Non Alignment, any country may have friendly and balanced relations with the Nations of both groups, and can achieve the objectives of one's Economical Development.

Non Alignment disagrees to keep any Military Treaty with any one group. This Non Alignment Movement opened a new way of development for the Nations, which could get the freedom in a short time, along with India who was also liberated from the slavery of British Rule. A new third stage got opened for taking correct or incorrect decisions, in regard to International Disputes.

In the field of making a Movement to the policy of Non-Alignment, the Prime Minister of India, Pandit Jawahar Lal Nehru, The President of Yugoslavia, Marshal Titto, The President of Egypt, Nasir and the President of Indonesia Sukuru, played very important role. In fifth decade this non alignment movement took the proper shape in World Political Arena.

A summit in the year 1961, was called, which is known as 'Belgrade Submit', in which the issue of Disarmament and World Peace, were heavily pressed. The 16th Summit, was held in the capital of gran, i.e. Tehsan, in the month of August 2012.

About 120 countries participated and issues like Disarmament, Human Rights, and Regional Subjects, were discussed in detail.

The question, regarding the utility and relevance of the non alignment movement, arose from time to time, after the end of cold war and deorganisation of Soveit Russia, but it can be told, today also, that, in reference to new challenges and International issues, for finding out solutions, through this kind of stage, is still important and useful. This non alignment movement has proved its utility in the recent years; in the field of solving and helping, of the issues like- New Colonialism, Human Rights, Environemnt, Economic and Regional, Social critical issues.

2. Panchsheel :

Panchsheel is the word defining, the meaning of 5 preachings of lifestyle, told by Gotam Budha, in Buddh religion, which is propounded by him. Panchsheel denotes the five Principles of the way for the Human life. The principle of Panchsheel, has been used first time, in the field of Foreign Policy, on 29th April 1954, applied in one agreement with China, made by India, in relation to Tibbet. Almost all the Nations of Asia, have adopted the Principles of Panchsheel; in the latter period, this principle of 'Panchsheel' got International identitiy and recognition. These 5 principles are as under:-

1. Policy of non attacking
2. Respect of higher authority and regional unity of one another
3. Equality and mutual gain
4. Not to interfere in the internal matters of each other country
5. Peaceful co-existence

The principles of Panchsheel, is the symbol of moral power. Pandit Nehru told once, that "if the maximum nations of the world give recognition to these principles, than a big part of the International problems will be solved easily".

In the beginning, the 'Panchsheel" was known, as the basic character of Indian Foreign Policy in the world, but after the attack by China, is the year 1962, proved that this principle is nothing but a confusion only. This attack proved a big shot to the failure of Foreign Policy and hurt the International Prestige of India also. The critics feel, that the attack by China, is a political failure of India. Though the faith in Panchsheel still continues, in the Foreign Policy of India, but in the International field, there is lack of attribution to moral values and peaceful thinking, so the possibility of success of Panchshella, in International field, seems to be very much limited.

3. Peaceful co-existence :

In Indian Philosophy, the Principle that "The whole world is our Family" has been incorporated since beginning. This denotes about the feeling that people and countries, having different religious and different social values, may live peacefully all together in the world. India has undergone the maximum friendly treaties and commercial agreements. India, through its Foreign Policy, has tried to give the message that though the contradictory ideology and different views of nations, they may co-exist peacefully. This policy is the foundation of constructive development. India, from the beginning had been against the war and supporter of Disarmament and of world peace.

India has played the role of mediator on so many occasions, whenever the possibility of war came, into being. At present, in the world, a number of Nations are having Nuclear Power. For the progress and development of backward and developing countries, the environment of 'peace' is highly necessary or compulsory even. Really speaking, the peaceful co-existence make the International Relations very strong and healthy, and provide the practical ways of keeping mutual relations.

4. Opposition of Imperialism and partheid :

India itself had been a victim of Imperialism. It

could realise the worst results of Imperialism. That is why India always opposes, any kind of Imperialism at any place, in the world. After Independence, India supported all such countries of Asia & Africa who were struggling for getting Independence from the clutches of Imperialistic Nation. India always stood to support such Nations, who want to decide the goal themselves by self determination. India believes that the Imperialism and colonialism are the instruments of exploitation. To oppose the concept of Imperialism and Colonialism is the elemenatary ideals of Indian Foreign Policy, by which, India continued to encourage the moral strength of such nations, who were fighting against exploitation.

Likewise, to oppose Racial Discrimination and Apartheid also had been the main features of Indian Foreign Policy. India had been supporter of equality for all Human Races and species. The concept of differenciating on the basis of species is against the principle of equality. The discrimination based on species, is against the concept of equality and it pollutes the International environment. In the past period, India discontinued diplomatic relations from South Africa, only because to show the opposition towards Discrimination based on Apartheid.

India also supported openly, the Africans of America and African people of Rodeyshiya who were opposing the discrimination based on Apartheid. India also, co-operated such countries, who imposed restrictions on such countries, where the discrimination based on Racil base and based on Apartheid. India also provided strength to its voice on such issues, through the stage of U.N.O. also.

5. To Support United Nations Organization:

India, has been a supporter of United Nations organisation since its beginning, right from that time and till today. India continuously supported the policies and functions of this International Institution. The United Nations Organization is established at International level, who maintain peace in the world and is busy to perform its various works, related to many walks of life of Human Beings. India has always obeyed its orders, paid honour to International Laws also.

On the issue of India- Pakistan, India always followed the decisions quickly taken by U.N.O. from time to time. This establishes the commitment and loyalty towards U.N.O. So many Indians occupied important posts in U.N.O. and increased the glory of India. Whenever, it was needed, India provided its peace Army to U.N.O. for the maintenance of Peace in the world. At present, India is continuously trying to become permanent member by security council of U.N.O., but China and sometimes America also do not support India's stand.

6. The Nuclear Policy of India:

After 1960, India started to decide the nature of Nuclear. It became necessary, in the interest of Nation, that a clear cut policy should be adopted. At this, under the garb of disarmament, the countries, (which were having atomic power with them), Like China, America and Russia wanted to weaken India.

The former President of India, Late Dr. A.P.J. Abdul Kalam, is known as the Path finder of Nuclear Power Programmes of India. He used to tell that 'India is situated, between two Nuclear Power oriented countries. The insecurity of India's integrity and borders, started becoming visible gradually. So it became essential to become self dependent, in the field of Atomic Power, Nuclear Weapons, and competency in the field of Missiles.

India has been a peaceful country since beginning and it always stood for applying Disarmament, but India was compelled to become self dependent in the field of Nuclear Power and Missiles, due to fast changing world scenario and discriminatory Nuclear Power Programmes. The conditions related to the treaties of Nuclear disarmament and Nuclear non Proliferation were discriminatory, so it was not acceptable to India. In the field of Nuclear experiments, India is following

the basic policy, keeping in mind the Principle of Peace in the world.

India performed its first Nuclear test during the Prime Ministership of Mrs. Indira Gandhi in the year 1974. After the gap of 24 years, the Second Nuclear Experiment was done in 1998. The Former Prime Minister of India, Shri Atal Bihari Vajpayee took this courageous decision, leaving aside all International Pressures. All the five countries, already having Nuclear Power, reacted fast on the policy of India. India has made it clear, time and again, that India is committed to the concept of Nuclearless world. But, till the other countries and not destroy their Arms, till that time India will also possess the minimum Nuclear Arms. The wider Nuclear non Proliferation Treaty is not made without discrimination by that time India will not sign such Treaty in near future also.

7. SAARC:

The full name of 'SAARC' is 'South Asia Association for regional co-operation'. The seven countries of South Asia organised this forum jointly. These countries are- India, Pakistan, Bangladesh, Nepal, Bhutan, Sri Lanka and Maldiv. The 'SAARC' was organised in December 1985. This organisation is meant for mutual co-operation between 7 countries of South Asia. This organisation insist on mutual co-operation, increasing mutual good faith and to reduce tension. In these countries, there is a big possibility of mutual co-operation, in the field of poverty, illiteracy, development and malnutrition etc.

Leaving aside, Maldiv, rest of the all countries are part and parcel of Indian subcontinent. Due to these reasons, their cultural and historical inheritance is more or less similar. 'SAARC' has done large functions in the field of Agriculture, Health, Education, Environment basic subjects.

India, occupies an important place in South Asia Region and posses influence position. All 'SAARC'; countries are having the borders at that places, which are co-joined with the Border Areas of India. All rivers of SAARC, countries, flow and move, through and inside the area of India. So, it is just natural, that in all such fields, the 'SAARC' countries look at India, for betterment. The 14th Summit was held in Delhi, in the April 2007. In this conference, Afghanistan was made the 08th member of 'SAARC', and along with this, the representatives of other countries also participated in the Summit, which indicate the interest of such countries with 'SAARC'. The 18th Summit took place in Nepal, in November 2014.

8. The Problem of Terrorism:

Today, the entire humanity is suffering from terrorism. Backward and developing Nations are in the grip of terrorism, but the developed, powerful and prosperous countries, are also affected by the danger of Terrorism. To start violent activities against the lawfully established governments and to terrorize their people, is “Terrorism”. The threat of violence, individual violent activities, and to terrorize the people of any state, is terrorism. The South Asia's countries, including India, are suffering from the violence of Terrorism, but America is also not untouched.

Terrorism is a serious challenge to India. In India, at present, about 31 terrorist organizations are active, out of them, some organizations are having their Head Quarters in Pakistan occupied Kashmir and in Afghanistan. Excluding these places, in the other countries of world at various places they have offices, with the objective to terrorise the governments from time to time.

In Jammu and Kashmir and in other parts country, the disruptive incidents are being done by the groups of Terrorists. In December 2001, the Parliament of India, was attacked by the terrorists belonging to Jaish-e-Mohammad and Lasker-a-toyba Terrorist organisations.

The 'Shadow War', being sponsored by the Foreign Terrorist organisations, is a very big

problem for India. The terrorism is the offspring of poisonous character and ill mentality existing in the state governments. This sponsored terrorism is having a very frightful format. A large number of countries, in the world, are giving shelter to terrorist organisation, only for fulfilment of their malafide interests. These organisations have sophisticated weapons, explosives, finance and other resources of a bigger volume.

Inspite of discussing the terrorist problems, in various, uncountable talks, conferences, the problem is still in its full force. In the countries, being affected by terrorism, the mutual faith between the countries have been lessened and economic resources are also damaged. Let us hope, that in coming time, the world will be free from Terrorism and they may be moved towards using to economic funds and resources, in the development and progress of people.

The Evaluation of Foreign Policy of India

Indian Foreign Policy has been capable of protecting its National Interests. It is based on the higher values of Humanity and due to this, it has added to the glory of India. Though, sometimes, it has been criticised to some extent, taking into consideration of Military and Economic areas, yet it can be issued that the Indian Foreign Policy could have changes also, keeping in mind the changing scenario and demand of time. This is the reason, the elements of continuity and dynamism are visible in the Foreign Policy.

India, has now started to centralise itself on the Economic Aspect, India is really very serious, in regard to commerce and business in International field. The process of improving relations between India & America has been started. The trips of American President Barak Obama to India in 2010 and again in 2015, have given the indications of improving relations between the two countries. The rate of India in South Asian countries and developing countries, to lead them, also indicate the positive changes in Indian Foreign Policy. The nuclear experiments, made by India, has broken the monopoly of China & Western countries. Thus, it proves that the Indian Foreign Policy supports the cause of peace, and good faith on one hand and is capable of protecting its National Interests, on the other hand. The Indian Foreign Policy has also established a cultural identity in International World.

The Indian style, food, dresses, culture etc. have got recognition in International field. Really, in the previous Decades, India has developed economically and technically also. Due to Dynamic Foreign Policy, India has got a new role, in world politics.

Important Points

1. The Foreign Policy of India expresses the glorious traditions, right from past to present time. The basic Pillars, of this policy have been the best ideals like world peace, friendship, universal brotherhood and co-operation.
2. The main aim of Indian Foreign Policy is to harmonise itself as well as international interests .
3. The main decisive elements, Indi's Foreign Policy are contemporary situation geographical elements and influence of ideologies.
4. The non alignment, is the chief feature of Indian Foreign Policy. It means to keep away from both the groups and to stand in a neutral manner and to centralise on the the development of the country.
5. India propounded the “The Principle of 'Panchsheel' which includes the aspects like, to follow the policy of non-attacking, honour of regional unity. Equality, the policy of non intereference and peaceful co-existence.

6. India considers it bad to distinguish on the basis of colour and race. India opposes it.

7. India supports United Nations organisation, to maintain world peace and brotherhood.

8. India gave a new look to its nuclear policy, keeping in mind, the changing scenario of the world and oppose the discriminative policy of Nuclear Empowered nations with the other countries including India also.

9. The 'SAARC' was established in the month of December 1985, by the combined attempts of seven countries, from the South Asia Region.

10. The problem of terrorism, is a serious challenge for India.

11. India has taken some new strong actions, clarifying the opinion but no solution is visible in near future.

Objective Type Questions

1. In which year was the Belgred conference of non alignment held?

   (a) 1963 (b) 1961

   (c) 1953 (d) 1958

2. The five principles of Panchsheel, are based on the Philiosophy of -

   (a) Mahaveer Swami

   (b) Swami Vivekanand

   (c) Swami Dayanand

   (d) Gautam Buddha

3. In which year the Panchsheel Indo China pact was done?

   (a) 1950 (b) 1954

   (c) 1955 (d) 1960

4. Where the 18th SAARC conference was held?

   (a) India (b) Pakistan

   (c) Nepal (d) Bhutan

5. India perform its first nuclear test, In which year?

   (a) 1984 (b) 1974

   (c) 1975 (d) 1980

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. What are the main basie Pillars of Indian Foreign Policy?

2. What is the most important element among the basic elements of Indian Foreign Policy?

3. In which Article of Indian constitution, are the main elements of foreign policy included?

4. Which leaders played an important role, in providing the form of ' Non Alignment' movement?

5. Write full name of 'SAARC'.

6. Who are thread-holders of the India's Nuclear Policy?

7. Which international organisation does India support for world peace?

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Describe the main ideals of India's foreign policy.

2. What do you mean by non-alignment policy?

3. How do the geographical elements affect India's foreign policy.

4. After the end of cold war, throw light on utility of non-alignment.

5. Describe the principal of Panchsheel.

6. What do you mean by peaceful co-existence?

7. Write a short note on the problem of terrorism in India.

8. Describe India's role regarding the U.N.

Essay Type Questions

1. Describe the main aims of Indian Foreign Policy.
2. Describe the decisive elements of India's foreign policy.
3. What are the main characteristics of Indian Foreign Policy.
4. Discuss the Nuclear Policy of India.
5. Evaluate the Foreign Policy of India.

Answers to objective type questions

1 (B) 2 (E) 3 (B)

4 (C) 5 (B)

Chapter - 12

Physiography of India

(Special Reference to Rajasthan)

Introduction :

Our country India is great in terms of both geography and history. Its area is so wide that generally it is considered as 'sub-continent'. It is a part of Asia continent but herself seems like a continent. India is a largest country of Indian sub-continent in South Asia. In the North it is bounded with Himalayan Ice covered peaks, in the South till Kanyakumari, in the East upto Eastern Himalayan and Ganga-delta in Bengal and in the West slightly East of Indus-delta in Kutch of Gujarat, it is spread in thousands of square kilometer area. This land part is comprising extensive plains of North India, high snow capped mountains in a North, Thar desert in the West, Indo-Myanmar group of hills in the East and uneven plateau, ancient fields and coastal plains with coconut trees. This country receives good amount of heat from tropical sun and moisture from monsooni rain.

Indian main land is stretched between latitudes of $8^0$4' N to $37^0$6' N and longitudes between $68^0$7' E and $97^0$25' E. The southern most point of India is Indira point at latitude of $6^0$45' N. Tropic of cancer ($23^0$30' N) passes through almost the middle of our country, which divides India into almost two equal parts. The standard time of India is perceived from the longitude of $82^0$30' E. This line passes from close to Allahabad.

The broadness of India can be speculated by the very fact that it has the expansion of 2933 km. east to west and 3214 Km. between north to south. It has a land frontier 15200 Km and the coastal boundary is 7516.6 Km long (including Lakshdweep Aandman and Nikobar islands) It covers a area of 32,87,263 square km. Pakistan, Afganistan, China, Nepal, Bhutan, Myamaar and Bangladesh are the neighbouring countries attached to the land boundary of India. In the perspective of area India is the seventh largest nation in the world. Population of India is now 121.6 crores (according to the census of 2011). India accounts for the 2.42% area of the whole world, while it contains 17.5% of the worlds population.

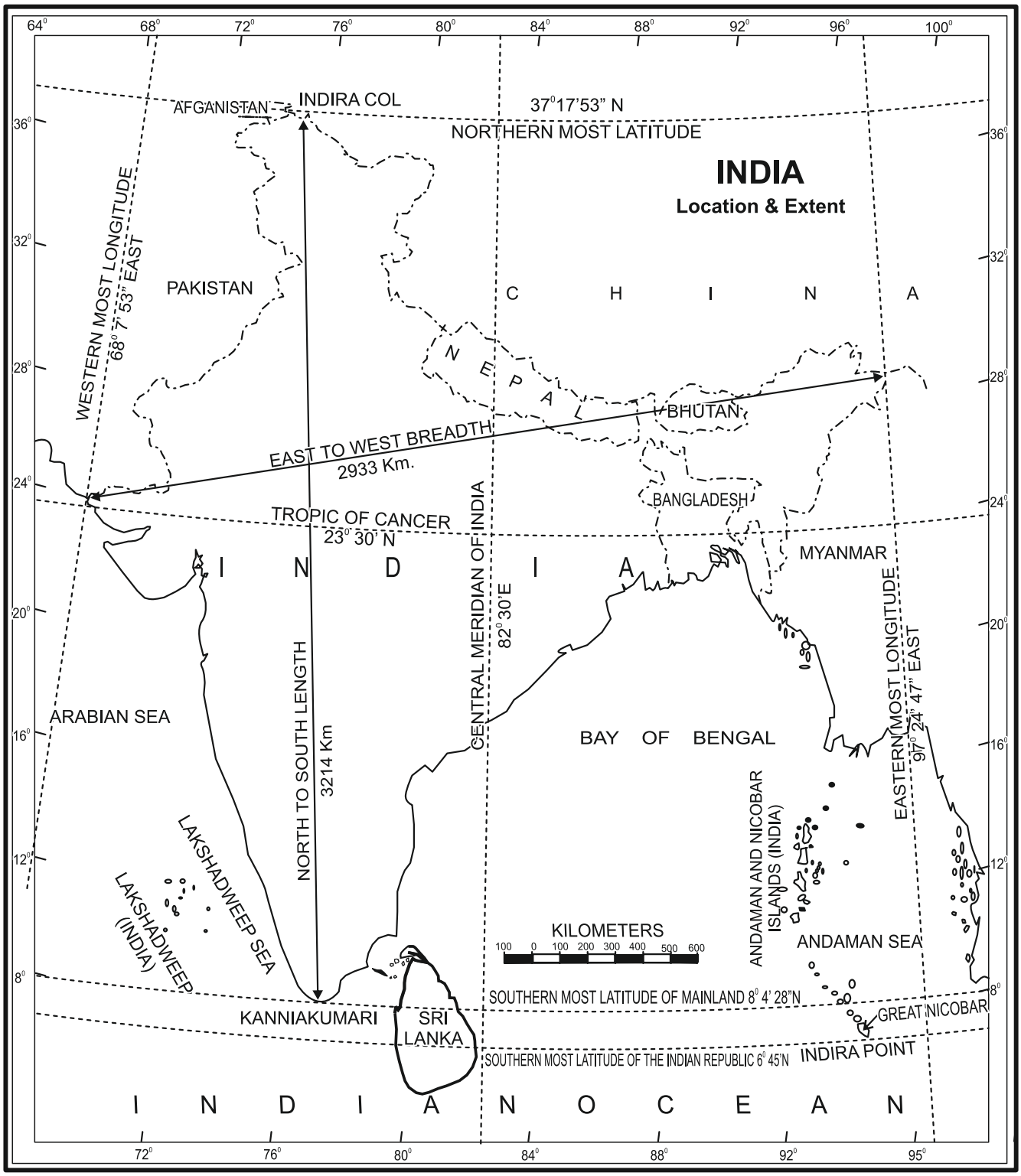
Physiographic Regions of India :

Meeting with geographical diversities is natural because of the vast geographical area of India. India is considered as a sub continent. Mountanious part occupies 10.5%, Hills 18.6%, plateau 22.7% and the plains occupies the 43% of the total area of the country, In the north there lies the huge mountain ranges of Himalaya which have many icy peaks, beautiful valleys and great passes. India can be divided in to five Physiographic regions-

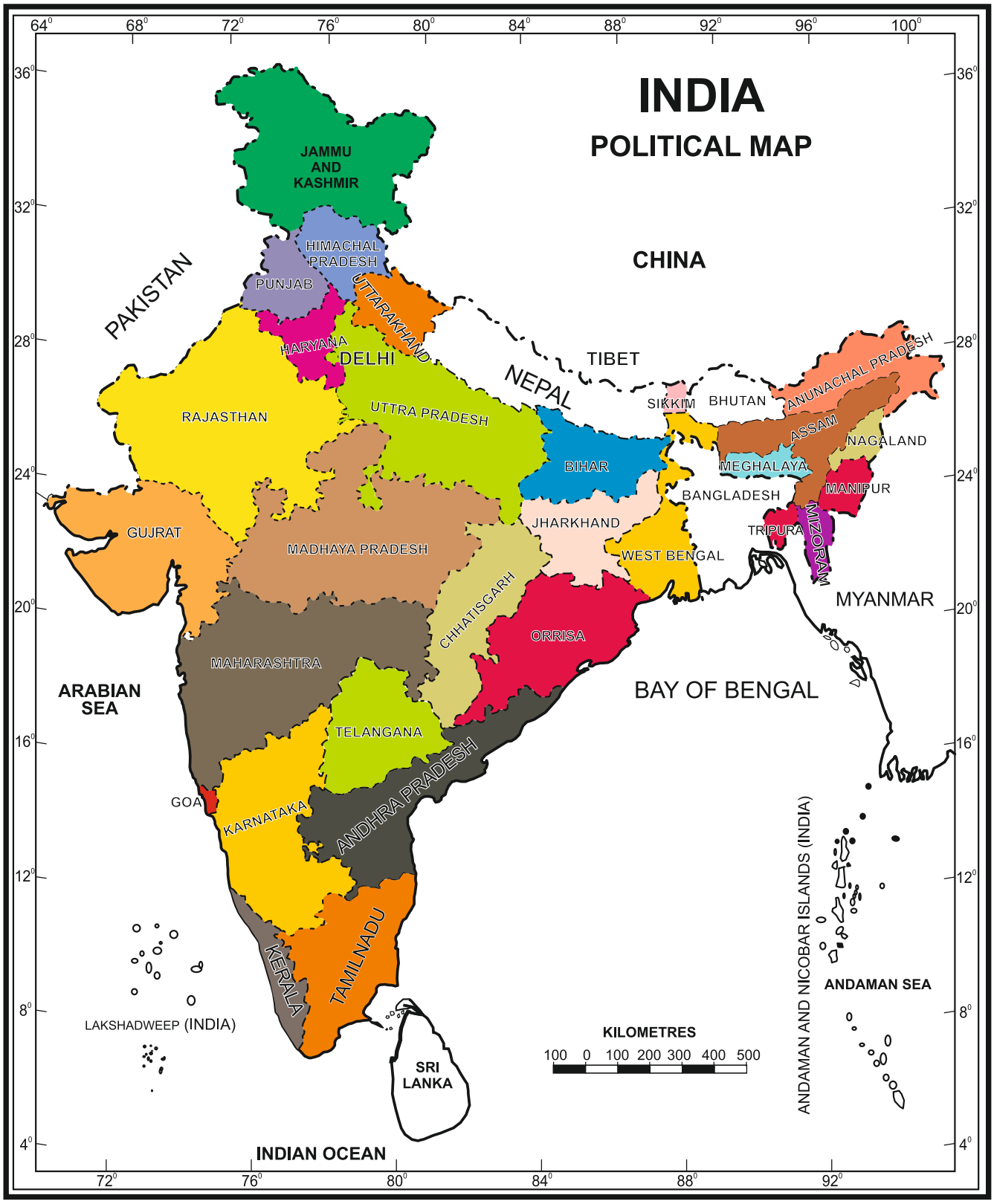
1. Northern mountain region
2. Great plains of the north
3. Peninsular plateau
4. Coastal plains
5. Islands

(I) Northern mountain region -

The Himalayan mountain is stretched over the north frontier of India from west to east in the form of a wide arc in the area of around 5 lac



Map 12.1 : Location & Extent of India



Map 12.2 : Political Map of India

square kilometers. This area is extended in 2400 km of length and in a width of 150 to 200 km. This is the highest mountain of the world. This range is a part of mountain system radiated from Pameer knot. Emerging from Pameer knot in the west it is spread up to Arunachal Pradesh. According to the geologists, an extension of Tethys sea was there where now lies the ranges of Himalayas. Due to the twisting of the layers of sedimentation formed by geological commotion in the time laps the surface of this sea got an elevation. Thereby new folded mountain ranges were formed.

1. Greater Himalaya - Major peaks : Mount Everest, Kanchanjanga, Nanga Parbat and Nanda Devi
2. Lesser Himalayas - Major ranges-Peer Panjal and Dholadhar
3. Outer Himalayas - Jammu, Giri, Mishmi Daphala Hills etc.

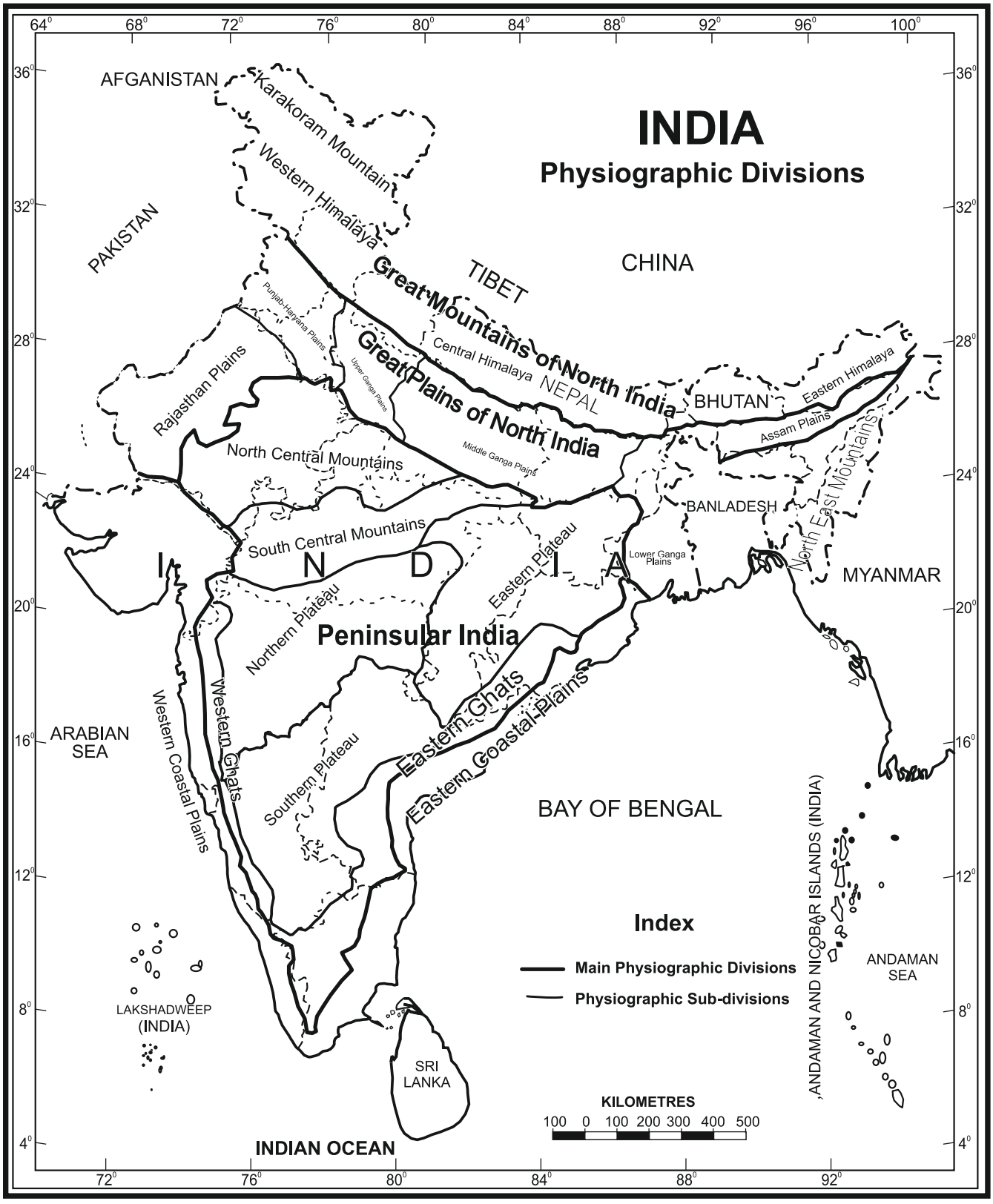
(1) Greater Himalayas : The northen most mountain ranges of the Himalayas, which are also known as inner Himalaya, Himadri etc is called greater Himalaya. This Mountain range is spread in 2400 km. length from Sindhu river bend in north west to the river bend of Brahmputra in the east making the shape of an arc. Its average height is approximately 6000 meters and the average width is 25 km. Here about 40 mountain peaks are higher than7000 meters. World's highest peak Mount Everest is also located in these mountain ranges. It's height is 8848 meters. Avatar Singh Chima was the first Indian who climbed Mount Everest in the year 1965. Bachendri Pal was the first Indian woman who climbed this mountain peak in the year 1984. Kanchanjanga (8598 meters) is the highest Himalayan peak in Indian territory, which is located in Sikkim. Joji la, Shipki la, Mana la, Neeti la etc. are the mountain passes of this range. The famous Ganga and Yamuna rivers of our country originate from this region.

(2) Lesser Himalayas : This mountain range is situated in the south of the greater Himalayas which is also known as middle or Himachal Himalayas. Its width is 60 to 80 Kilometers. It has an average height of 4000 meters but at many places here the mountains are of 5000 meters and above height. Dholadhar and Peer Panjal are its important mountain ranges. Banihal is the main pass. Snowfall is witnessed for 3 to 4 months in winter season but the summers are pleasant and healthy. Many tourist attractions like Shimla, Masuri, Nainital, Darjilling, Ranikhet etc. are located here. On the higher slopes of this range coniferous forests are found and the grass lands are found on the lower slopes which are called 'Marg' (Like Gulmarg, Sonmarg etc.) in Kashmir.

(3) Outer Himalayas : This is the southern most range of Himalayas. It is known as the outer Himalayas or the Shivallik ranges. This creation is latest amongst all the ranges of Himalaya. In the west this range is starting from western Jammu hills and continuous upto river Tista in the east. After that, with an interval of 80 to 90 km. these ranges are further extended upto Arunachal Pradesh. This range is about 10 to 50 kilometers wide and it has an average elevation of 900 to 1200 meters. In Jammu it is known as Jammu hills and in Arunachal it is called as Mishmi, Abore and Daphala hills. This whole region is forested. In the middle part of Shivallik hills, the rivers have cut these ranges and deposited alluvium in broad gaps and form higher valley plains. In the east these are called 'Dwars' like Haridwar and in the west called 'Doons' like Dehradoon.

Importance of Great northen mountains :

These great mountains of north India are strategically important, along with this these mountains protect us from cold waves coming from north in winter season and ensure good monsooni range in Indian region through creating barrier for moisture laden winds in summer season. This mountainous region of north India is the origin of great perennial rivers. The tourist places located in this region are important for tourism development in India.



Map 12.3 : Physiographic Divisions of India

(II) Great plains of North India -

This place is situated amidst the Himalaya mountain and the peninsular plateau regions. Since ancient times this tract is known as Ganga-Indus plain but due to the partition in the year 1947, the Indus river with plains of its tributaries Jhelam, Chinab and Ravi are now lie in Pakistan. So this Indian region is now called as the plains of Satluj-Ganga-Brahmputra, which is formed by the sediments brought by these rivers and their tributaries. The arc shaped plain is 2400 kilometers long and 150 to 300 kms wide. This is an area of various dooabs. Dooabs are the plains made up off alluvial deposits lying between two rivers. The parts of Punjab, Hariyana, Uttarkhand west Bengal and Jharkhand are included in this plain. In the western part of this plain there are vast arid and semi-arid spread in the west of aravalli in western Rajasthan and some parts of Punjab, Haryana and Gujarat. Geographically, these are also included in the great plains of north India.

Geographical Classification -

(a) Bhabar area : It has the expansion of 8 to 16 km wide strip from Satluj to Tista river at the foot hills of Shivallik. After emerging out of the mountain region and just entering to the plain, due to the decreasing slope, the rivers lay up heavily unsorted debris of rocks (in this area there are deposits of finer rock particles to large size pebbles) in this foot hill area. Due to this majority of the rivers flow underground in this region.

(b) Tarai Sector : Tarai sector is the part of the plain south to Bhabar, where the underground water flow of Bhabar reappears on the ground. Marshes are found here due to the decrease in slope and irregular water flow. Dense forest, high grasses as kans, elephant grass etc. are found here in abundance.

(c) Bangar terrain : Highlands made by old sedimentation are called Bangar where the flood water of rivers cannot reach today. These are found in the north west part of Uttar Pradesh and Uttarkhand mostly.

(d) Khadar terrain : These are the low lands formed by new sediments and coop soil where the approching flood water keeps on laying new layers of soil every year. This type of plains are known as 'Khadar' These are mostly found in eastern U.P., Jharkhand, Bihar ind west Bengal.

The Plain Area of Thar Desert :

It is said that in geological history this reason was full of green vegetation. But due to varrious land movement and climatic change this region has dry desertic conditions today. This desert is extended from west of Aravali mountain to the plain of India in north west. The average elevation of these desert plains is 150 to 380 meters and it covers the 640 km. long and 250 to 300 km. wide area. The strong winds form sand dunes here. Here, Sambhar, Loonkaransar, Deedwana, Pachpadara are the major lakes of saline water. Salt is made in these lakes. According to the geologists, this region was a fertile land earlier. Many large rivers used to flow here. Finding the residues of Saraswti river are its proof.

The importance of Great Northern Plains -

These plains are made up off alluvium deposited by rivers thus these are highly fertile plains. Abundant water is available here for drinking and irrigation purposes due to network of several rivers. Rivers have been as a means of cheap transport. Dense network of roads and railways is available due to the flat nature of this place. Most of the industrial, commercial and religion cities are situated here, here like- Delhi, Haridwar, Mathura, Varanasi, Amritsar, Agra, Patna, Kolkata etc.

(III) Peninsular Plateau :

In ancient lava built terrain extended in the South of vast Indian plain there is a tract situated which is spread in to 7 lakh square km. It is surrounded by the sea on three sides, the base of this triangular plateau and the cape of Kumari is its top in the south. From the highlands of Rajasthan to the Kanyakumari it has the maximum length of 1800 km. and maximum width is 1400 km. approximately. The average elevation of this plateau

from the sea level is 600 meters. It stretches from south east Rajasthan, Gujrat, Jharkhand, Madhya Pradesh, Chatisgarh, Orrisa, Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesha, Karnataka, Tamilandu and partially in Kerala too.

The Penisualr India can be further divided as follows -

(a) Western Ghats : The western edge of the Southern plateau which is of continuous hills is known as Western Ghats. It is also known as Sahyadri hills. The Nilgiri hills are found in the south of western ghat. Its slope towards Arab Sagar is acute and slow in the east. Having an average elevation of 1000 M. the Sahyadri keeps the serial extension from Tapti valley to the cape of Kumari which includes. The passes Bhor Ghat, Thal Ghat and Pal Ghat. All these have met with eastern Ghat in south. Anai mudi (2695 meters) is the highest peak here.

(b) Eastern Ghats : These are smaller relatively than the western Ghats and situated far away from the coast line with irregular presence. There Ghats are spread parallel to eastern coast in almost 800 km. There are extended from Mahanadi valley in north to Nilgiri mountain in South. All the rivers flowing towards the East have lopped enough the eastern Ghats. They have the average height of 600 meters.

(c) Deccan Plateau : This terrain is very ancient and solid. Which is formed by the volcano ejected lava. Containing fertile black soil, this terrain of plateau is stretched almost in 5 lakh square kilometers. Parts of South East Rajasthan, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh and parts of Karnataka are included in it. This plateau keeps the average height of 600 meters. Due to its eastern slope all the rivers related to this plateau flow towards the east. These rivers have divided it into many small plateaus like Chhattisgarh, Maysur plateau, the plateau of Rayalseema, Telangana plateau etc.

Importance of Peninsular Plateau :

Rich mineral deposits are found here. The black soil is fruitful in the production of cotton. Valuable monsoon forests of teak, sheesam and sandal wood are found here. There are waterfalls found in rivers which are the sources of hydro power. Pachmadi, Mahabaleshwar, Udagmandam (Ooty) etc. are the tourist destination in this region.

(IV) Coastal Plains :

There are coastal plains located on either side of the Deccan plateau along the Sea coast. These coastal plains can be further divided into two parts. These plains are made by either rivers or the action of sea waves.

(i) Western Coastal Plain : Starting form the gulf of Khambhat this field extends up to the Kumari Antreep. It keeps an average width of 65 kms and Maximum elevation of 180 meters with the length of 1600 kms. Fast flowing rivers are found here. This plain is much wide in the north. Narbada, Tapti and Mandvi rivers flow here. The north part of this coast is knwon as Konkan and Malabar is the name of Southern part. Its main seaports are Kandla, Mumbai, Goa, Cochin and Manglore. Dense population is found here due to good Climate, fertile soil and trade facilities.

(ii) Eastern coastal plain : It is spreading from estuary of Ganga to the Kanyakumari. It is much wider than the Western plain. Its length is about1500 km. and average width of 120 kilometers. These plains are narrow in the north and wide in the south. The northern part of this coast is called Uttri Sarkaar and the Southern part is known as Coromandal coast. Mahanadi, Krishna, Godawari and kavery are the major rivers form delta here. Vishakhapatnam, Chennai Paradweep and Tootikoran are the main seaports. Chilka, Pulicutt, and Koleru are the lakes found here.

(V) Islands :

Near Eastern and Western coast of India, Arabian sea and in Bay of Bengal there are many Indian islands situated. Most of the islands are located in Bay of Bengal. The major islands are Andaman and Nicobar, Lakshdweep and Shriharikota etc. The Southern most point of India

i.e. 'Indira point' lies in the southern most part of great Nicobar island of Nicobar island groups.

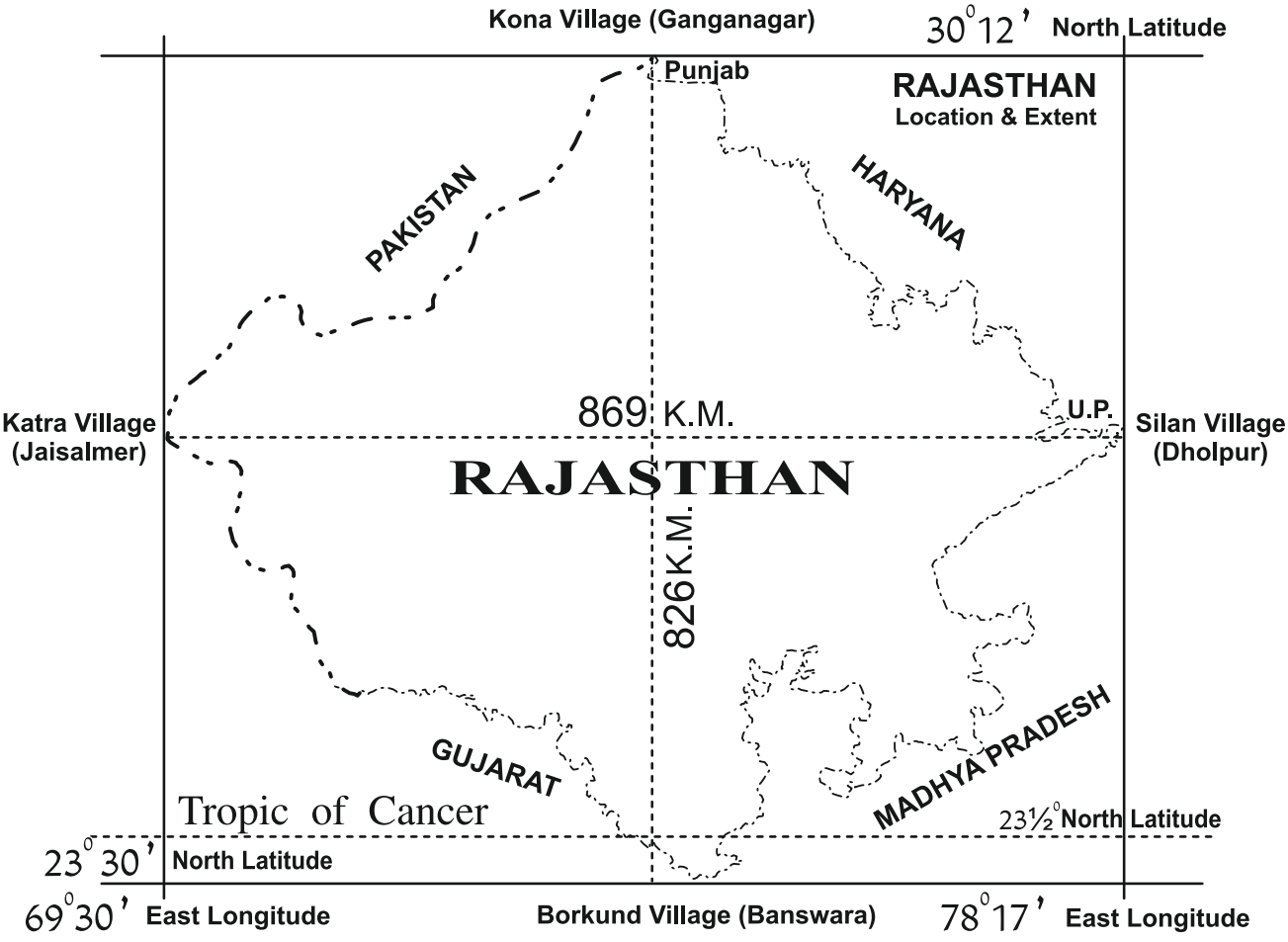
(a) Andaman and Nicobar group of Islands : These islands are located in Bay of Bengal 1248 km South to Kolkaata. This group of islands comprises almost 265 islands Sundari trees are found in abundance at the island coasts here. The major islands are north Andaman, central Andaman, South Andaman, little Andaman, Barren and Ruth-land. Nicobaar island lies 128 kms South to Andaman islands. The island lies in north of these island groups are known as Car Nikobaar, in central part there are Kamorata, Tilanchang and Trasa, in southern part there is Great Nicobar island are the major islands.

(b) Lakshdweep Islands : Its Situated near the Western coast of India in Arabian sea. There are 25 important islands. This region is spread in the area of 109 sq. km. Here the islands located in the northern part of 11^0 north are called Amandivi and towards its south called Kennor islands. Coconut trees are found there in abundance. This is truly a coral island. Cherbaniani, Kalpni and Minicoy are important islands here.

Geographical Regions of Rajasthan :

Introduction :

According the geographical, historical, economical, social and cutural point of view Rajasthan is a state of great diversity. In the north west of India having the shape of a kite. It is located between the latitudes 23.3 to 30.12 North and the longitudes 69.30 to 78.17 east. Tropic of cancer (23.30 North latitude) passes south to it. The

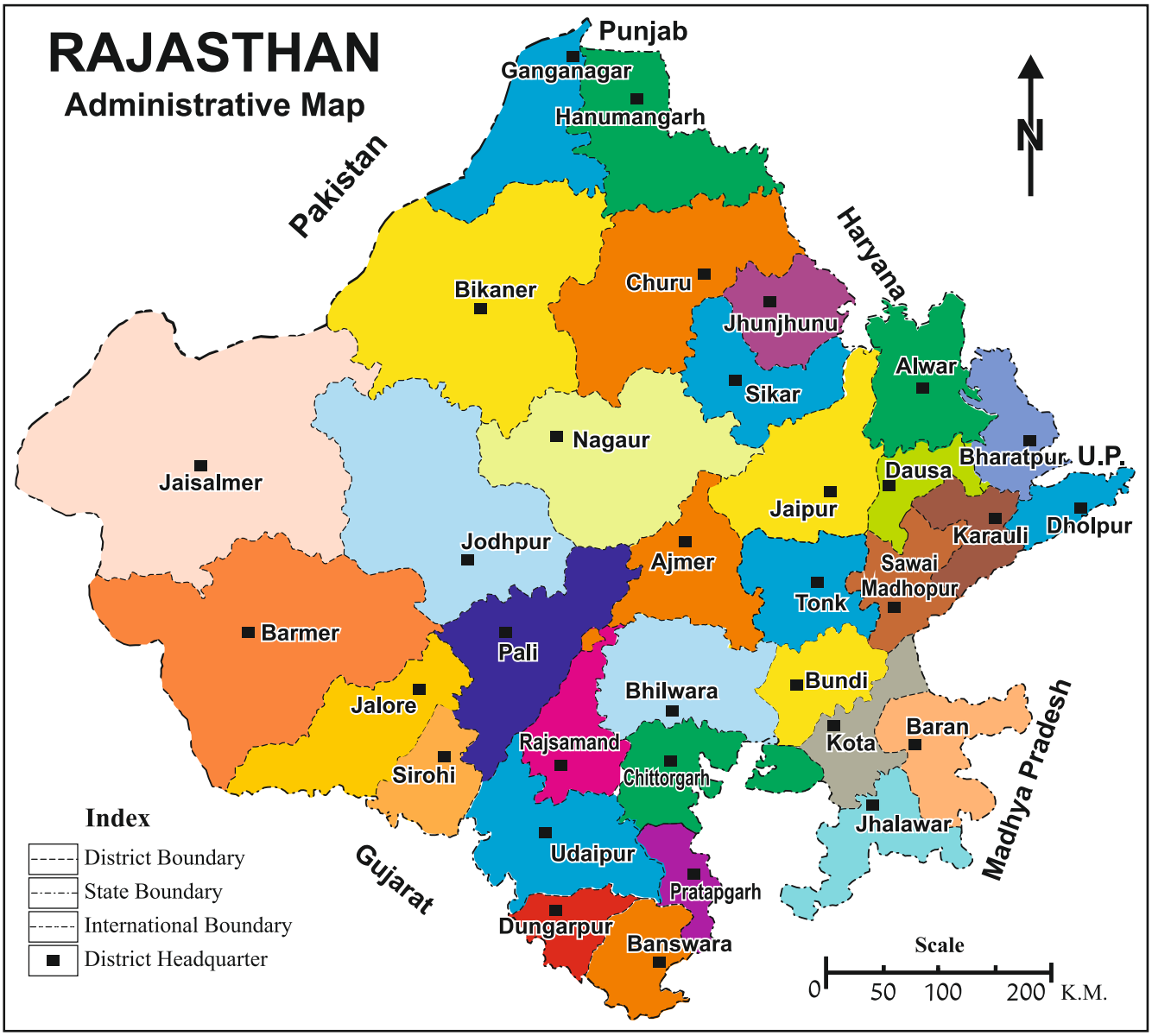


Map 12.4 : Location & Extent of Rajasthan

maximum length it covers from East to West is 869 kms and from north to south the maximum width is 826 kms. It covers the total area of 3,42,259 square kilometers which holds the 10.43 persent part of our nation . It stands first in terms of area in India.

The state shares its north western and werstern boundary with Indo-Pakistan border that extend upto 1070 kilometers. Rajasthan is bordered by Uttar Pradesh and Madhya Pradesh in the east Punjab and Haryana in the north and Gujrat and the districts of Madhya Pradesh in the south. According to the census of 2011, No. of people reside in the state are 6,85,48,437 and the average population density stands at 200 people per square km.

The integration of Rajasthan was completed in 1956 after the independence. At present it is divided in to 7 division, 33 districts and 244 Tehsils (Subdivision) administrativlely. Jaipur, Ajmer, Bikaner, Jodhpur, Udaipur, Kota and Bharatpur are the divisions. In terms of area the district of Jaisalmer is the biggest and Dholpur is the smallest district.

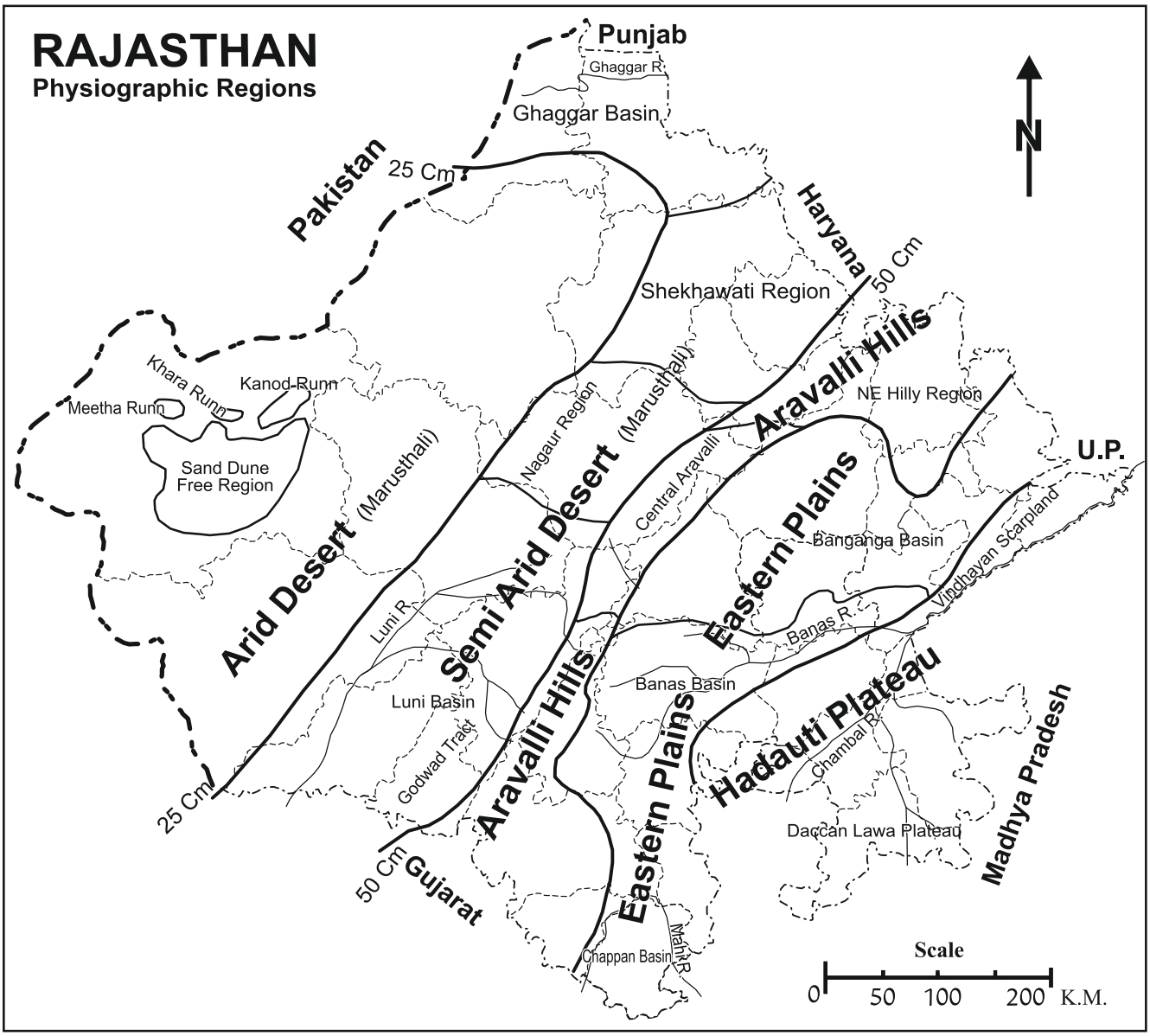


Map 12.5 : Administrative Map of Rajasthan

The names of 33 district are Ajmer, Alwar, Baran, Banswara, Barmer, Bharatpur, Bhilwara, Bikaner, Bundi, Chittor, Churu, Dholpur, Dausa, Dungarpur, Sriganganagar, Hanumangarh, Jaipur, Jaisalmer, Jalore, Jhalawar, Jhunjhunu, Jodhpur, Karauli, Kota, Nagaur, Pali, Pratapgarh, Rajsamand, Sawai Madhopur, Sikar, Sirohi, Tonk and Udaipur.

The Physical appearance of Rajasthan :

Geographical land views like mountains plateaus plains and deserts all are found in Rajasthan. In the west of Aravalli mountains there are arid and semi-arid plains in Rajasthan where landforms are found which are made by wind action. In these sand-dunes are most important. Most of the Western and North Western part of Rajasthan was the only relic of Tethis ocean which was inundated with the soil brought by the Himalayan rivers in the timelapse. It is suppose that the residues of the Tethis ocean, the salt water lakes like Sambhar, Deedwana, Pachpadara, Loonkaransar etc., are still exist in Rajasthan.



Map 12.6 : Physiographic Regions of Rajasthan

In Rajasthan the Aravalli mountain range and the southern plateau are the part of Gondwana land. Aravalli is considered as one of the oldest mountain ranges of the world. It is a major watershed of the state and divides the drainage system of Rajasthan into two parts. Physical appearance of the state has got its present from due the mingled effect of geologic stirs, geological structure and the water flow system also. Mountains, Plateaus, Plain and deserts are found in the surface appearance of Rajasthan which have been made from the shale groups to the newer alluvium deposited by winds.

According to available physical varieties and geographical situations Rajasthan is divided into five regions as follows :

(a) Western desert plains

(b) Semi-arid region

(c) Aravalli region

(d) Eastern plains

(e) South eastern plateau region

(A) Western desert plains :

This is the biggest region is size and can be devided in to three paralled belts. Marusthali, Bangar and Rahi which are spread from west to east. Marusthali incldues plethora of Mounds, Bangers are the extensive plains of sand and Rahis are the fields formed due to flood of small rivers. It has the average elevation of 150-300 meters. The eastern border works as a threshold of 25 cm rainfall. Sand Mounds known as 'Dhore' in the local dialect are found here. Now Indira Gandhi canal has brought a change in the ecology of this region.

(b) Semi-arid region :

It is streched from north -east to south -west in the west of Aravali mountain range. It keeps 300-450 meters of average height. western border works as a threshold of 25 cm. rainfall. It covers the parts of Barmer, Jaisalmer, Bikaner, Pali, Jalore, Sikar, Jodhpur, Jhunjhunu, Churu, Nagaur, Ganganagar and Hanumangarh districts. Some of its part comes under the region of under ground drainage. This is called Bangur in Rajasthan Luni Basin. Shekhawati, Nagaur high lands and Ghagghar plain are considered the sub regions of it.

(c) Aravalli Region :

Aravalli is also called Aadavala mountains. It is stretched 682 kms in length from Delhi to Khedbrahma near Palanpur town of Gujarat. This is regarded as one of worlds oldest mountain ranges. Its height declines from southwest to north-east. Gurushikhar of Mount Abu in Sirohi district is the highest peak of Aravalli having 1722 meters height. Colonel James Todd has called it "The peak of saints" It is the highest peak between Himalaya and Nilgiri. It is in sub-regions divided further as in North east hills, middle Aravalli, Mewar hills or the Bhorat plateau and Mount Abu.

(d) Eastern Plains :

It is spread in the Eastern part of Aravalli mountains in the state. The low land of chambal basin and Banas and Mahi Basins are comprised in it. Underground water streams, Plains made by flood, river edges rugged forests are found in Chambal Basin, Banas basin is bifurcated in Malpura - Karauli and Mewar plains. The Mahi plain located in the southern part of this region is called as 'Plain of Chhapan". Mahi and Banas are the major rivers of this region.

(e) South-eastern plateau region :

It is also known as Hadoti plateau. It is spread in to Baran, Bundi, Kota and Jhalawar districts. Here black fertile soil is found in excess, Chambal is the major river in this area. The famous Chuliya water fall is located on Chambal near Bhensroadgarh. The plateau region between Bhansroadgarh and Bijoliya is known as Upper mall. Alluvial Basin was formed in Baran and Kota by Chambal and its tributaries Kali Sindh and Parvati. Mukundare and Bundi Hills are located in this part.

Important Points

1. Our country is divided into five geographical regions Northern hilly region, Gangetic plain of north Desert of Thar, Deccan plateau and

coastal plains and islands.

2. Northern hilly region is further divided in to three parts greater himalaya. Lesser Himalaya and Sub-Himalaya.
3. Great Gangetic plain of north is densely populated due to its fertile plain land mass.
4. Southern plateau is a store house of ample mineral resources.
5. Coastal plains are divided into two parts Western coastal plains and Eastern coastal plains.
6. Islands: Coastal islands alluvial soil islands and stony islands.
7. Rajasthan is the biggest state in India located between 23.30 to 30.12 North latitudes and the longitudes 69.30 to 78.17 .
8. Major physical regions of Rajasthan are western desert land, semi dry land, Aravali region, Eastern plains and south Eastern plateau.
9. Gurushikher is the highest peak of Aravali Mountain range.

Objective type Questions :

1. The line passing through the center of India is -

   (a) Tropic of cancer (b) Center line

   (c) Tropic of capricon (d) Equator

2. The northern mountain region is the part of -

   (a) Aravali (b) Pamur knot

   (c) Armenia Knot (d) Kailash Mountians

3. The most populous part of India is -

   (a) Central Gangotic plains

   (b) Thar desert

   (c) Southern plateu

   (d) All three are wrong

4. India's southern most point, "Indira Point" is located in -

   (a) Andaman (b) Nicobar

   (c) Lakshdweep (d) Minikaaya

5. Rajasthan's position in India in terms of area is-

   (a) First (b) Second

   (c) Third (d) Fith

6. The smallest district of Rajasthan is -

   (a) Karauli (b) Dungarpur

   (c) Dhaulpur (d) Siker

7. The highest peak between Neelgiri and Himalaya is -

   (a) Gurushiker (b) Ser

   (c) Mahabaleshwar (d) Achalgarh

Very short answer type quesitons :

1. What is 'Dhore' ?
2. Which is the most populous territory of India ?
3. Where are Bhabar found ?
4. Where are 'Murg' found ?
5. What is the total area of Rajasthan ?

Short answer type questions :

1. Name the three major parts of Himalayas.
2. Explain the importance of Decan Plateau.
3. What is the difference between east & west coast of India ?
4. Mention names of those Indian islands which have been formed by corals.
5. Describe the features of desert land of Rajasthan.

Essay type questions :

1. Classify India into physical sections and describe one of them.
2. Explain in detail about the Northern hilly region.
3. Describe the importance and features of Deccan Plateau.
4. Divide Rajasthan into Physical sections and

describe one of them in detail.

Mark in maps :

1. Show the major physical sections in map of India.
2. Show the major Indian mountain peaks in the map.
3. Mark physical sections of Rajasthan in its map.

Answer to objective questions :

1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (a) 4. (b) 5. (a) 6. (c) 7. (a)

Chapter - 13

Rivers and Lakes of India

The rivers have special significance in India, in context to monsoon climate. Indian culture and civilization developed in the valleys and rivers. Most of the historical cities of India, are situated on the banks of different rivers. Drinking water, electricity, irrigation, inland water transport, industrial utility etc. are types of facilities. The Rivers occupy a very important place in the field of social and economic development of India. The many important industrial and commercial centers also developed on the bank of rivers. In our country monsooni rain shows uncertain supply of water due to variability in amount and time of monsoon. A importance of river water again increases during the years of poor monsoon. Though, in such period the water level of rivers also decreases.

On the basis of origin and drainage, Indian rivers, can be divided into the following categories-

1. Himalayan rivers or rivers of Northern India.
2. Peninsular rivers or rivers of Southern India.
3. Rivers flowing internally

1. Rivers of Northern India:-

The maximum Rivers of North India, are having their origin from the Himalaya Mountain. These Rivers flow throughout the whole year, because they have been originated from the Glaciers of Himalayas. The Rivers of this region, can be divided into three Run off orders.

A. Indus river system

B. The Ganga river system

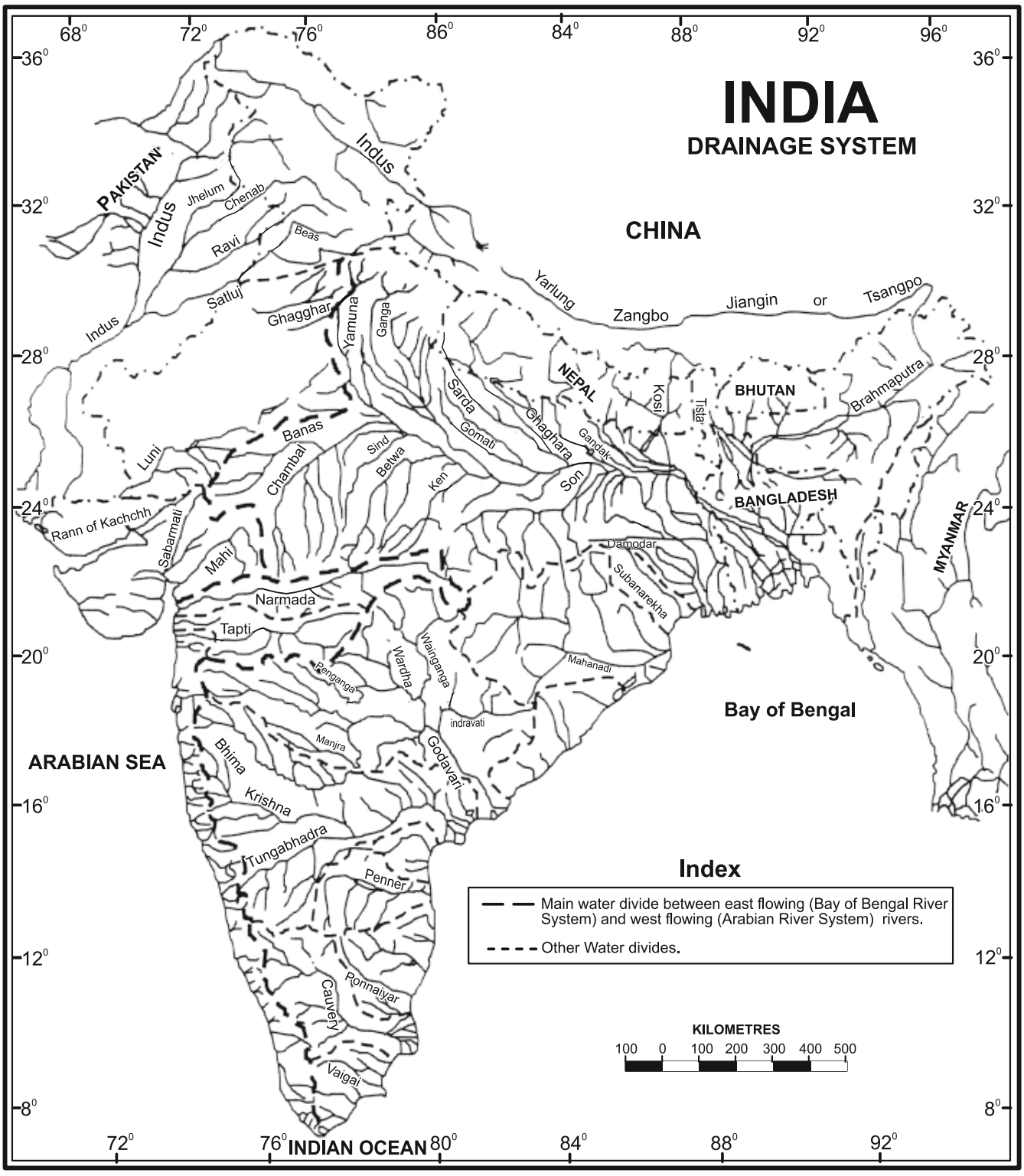
C. Brahmputra river system

(i) Indus river system :-

It includes the Indus river, along with other tributaries Satluj, Beas, Chenab, Ravi and Jhelum. The catchment area of these Rivers, is about 11 lakh and 50 thousand square kilometers. Out of which, about thirty Lakh and 25 thousand kilometer is in India, where as the remaining river area has gone in Pakistan. It means, the upper flowing area and the lower flowing area of River, is in our country and the lower flowing area of the River, goes towards Pakistan. The origin place of satluj River is situated in the “Rakastal” area of the Kailash Mountain, which is in existence near the Mansarovar Lake on the South past hills. On this River, in the Punjab, near Ropad, the Bhakra Nangal Dam is there. On the long path on its way, it falls in Beas River on Jhelum River, the famous tourist city 'Srinagar' is situated.

B. Ganga river system :-

The origin place of Ganga River, comes through “Gangotri” Glacier. At Dev Prayag, the two streams of Alakhnanda and Bhagirathi, get mingled and becomes 'Ganga River'. It enters the ground area, near Haridwar. The main tributary River of Ganga i.e. Yamuna comes out from “Yamunotri”. Like, Chamble, Betwa and Ken etc. which come out from Vindhyachal Mountain, ultimately mingle in 'Yamuna' River. The Yamuna River, gets merged in 'Ganga River' near Allahabad, which is known as 'Prayag' or 'Sangam' from the North Zone, the small Rivers like- Ram Ganga, Gomti, Ghagra, Gandak,



Map 13.1 : Drainage System of India

Kosi and Mahananda on the one hand and from South River 'Son' etc., get mingled up in one big River and this is known as 'Ganga River', which enters in Bangladesh near Farraka. Here, this is called 'Padma River'. Later this river merge with Bhramputra River, before falling into the bay of Bengal and forms a delta. The famous delta of Ganga-Bhramputra is called "Sunder van", which is the biggest delta of the world.

C. Bhramputra river system :-

The 'Bhramputra' River originates from Kailash mountain near Mansarovar Lake, situated in Tibbet. This River flows in the North direction and reaches as far as the North face of Himalaya. Here it is called as "Sangopi River". From this it flows towards South direction and afterwards it gets curve in West direction, continues to flow in 'Assam'. Ultimately merges into 'Ganga', while entering Bangladesh. It has many tributary Rivers, like Dibang, Lohit, etc. also merge into Ganga, but reaching from the opposite directions and on its right Bank, the Rivers which mingle ultimately, as tributary Rivers- are Bhareli, Sabans Siri, Manas etc. Rivers like Dibang, Lohit, Kapili, Dhansiri, Buri Dihing etc. fall on the left Bank of the main River. It carries a lot of soil, while flowing in the way. In the delta part, the Ganga-Bhramputra river, get divided in the channels of Madhumati, Padma etc.

There is a map of drainage system of Rivers in India

2. The Rivers of South India:-

The quantity of water decreases, in the Rivers of South India, in the summer season Maximum Rivers flow from the West to East. The maximum Rivers of South fall in the bay of Bengal and remaining some Rivers fall in the 'Arab Sagar'. In South India, Rivers can be divided mainly into two categories-

A. Rivers falling in to the Bay of Bengal and

B. Rivers falling in to Arab Sagar

The Rivers falling into the Bay of Bengal:-

The maximum Rivers of Peninsular Plateau get out from the West and fall into the Bay of Bengal. The main Rivers of this area are, like- Damodar, Godawari, Krishna, Kaveri, Bhima, Maha River. Tungbhadra and Pennar. Some of them are described as under:-

A. Kaveri River:-

It originates from the 'Durg' District of Karnakata. The Kaveri River, is called as 'The Ganga River of South India'. The water of this river, has become a reason of dispute between Karnakata and Tamil Nadu. The fertile District of Tanjavur is situated in the delta of Kaveri River, which is called as 'Garden of South'.

B. Mahanadi river:-

It originates from the Raipur District of Chattisgarh state. On this River, the Hira Kunda Dam has been built up. The Delta of this place is very fertile.

C. Krishna River:-

It originates from the Western area, nearby Mahabaleshwar. The Anicut has been constructed near Vijaywara, on the Krishna River, and Canals have been spread out for the supply of water meant for Agriculture etc. This falls into the bay of Bengal, while forming a Delta area in the surrounding land.

D. Godawari River:-

This is the biggest River of Peninsular Plateau area. This River originates from the western valley of Triyambkum plateau, which is near Nasik, in the state of Maharashtra. It has more width in the last part of River. It creates the Delta of Triangle size.

The Rivers falling in the Arabian Sea:-

The Rivers, which fall in the Arabian sea, amongst them, the main Rivers are 'Narbada' and 'Tapti'. Narbada is the longest river. This River originates from Amarkantak, and flows in the 'Bhrans' Valley. In this River, there are few

remarkable and delectable scenes, near Jabalpur, in the 'Bharaghat area' there are beautiful rocks of marble and waterfall of Kapildhara. The 'Tapti' River get out from the Betul District of Madhya Pradesh state. Rivers like Mahi and Sabarmati also fall in the Arabian sea like Tapti river.

THE LAKES OF INDIA

There are many Lakes in India. They are different from each other, from the point of view of their shape and other characteristics, merits and demerits both. Most of the Lakes are permanent, but in some Lakes, water appears in the rainy season only. Some of the Lakes are natural which have come into existence due to Air, Rivers and Human Activities, whereas as some Lakes have been built up by glaciers which are known as temporary lakes.

Most of the fresh water lakes are situated in the Himalayan Region. Due to Rocks and Soil, when the way of Glacier becomes narrow, they are fall water of Glacier. The mostly lakes of this category filled up work, are situated in Himalaya, in which Dal Lake, Nainital, Nokuchiya Tal and Bhimtal are the important Lakes. The surface of land went down in the old period, and as such the Wooler Lake of Kashmir, came into being. After the end of Volcano, when it became cool, the Rainy water came out from the mouth of volcano, and thus, the Lonar Lake got its birth in Maharashtra. On the Banks of River, the sea currents make the Sand Dunes and get separated the water area from the sea. Such Peculiar lakes are available in the coastal areas of India, in a good number. The Chilka Lake of Orrisa, Pulicut Lake of Nailore and Koleru Lake of Andhra Pradesh are the examples of such Lakes. In the low lands of desert of western Rajasthan, lakes are form due to the accumulation of rain water. There are many large size saline water lakes in Rajasthan such has Sambhar, Didwana, Lunkaransar and Pachpadra Lakes. In Rajasthan these are called Talai or Dhand. In the year 1893, in the way of Alaknand River, some parts of the Hilly area of lower side, came downwards, and as such the 'Gohana Lake' got its existence. In the plain regions, in the absence of lowering part, the River flows in Shrimp size slowly, than the Lakes come out, like Charadan or the shape of the nail of cows and when floods come, the water is poured in such Lakes. In the middle Valley of Ganga and Bhramputra Rivers, such Lakes are available.

THE RIVERS OF RAJASTHAN

Chamble is the only River in Rajasthan which flows through out the year. In this state, the Aravalli Hills work as great water divide.

The drainage system area, can be divided into three parts:

A. The Arabian sea drainage system

B. The Bay of Bengal drainage system

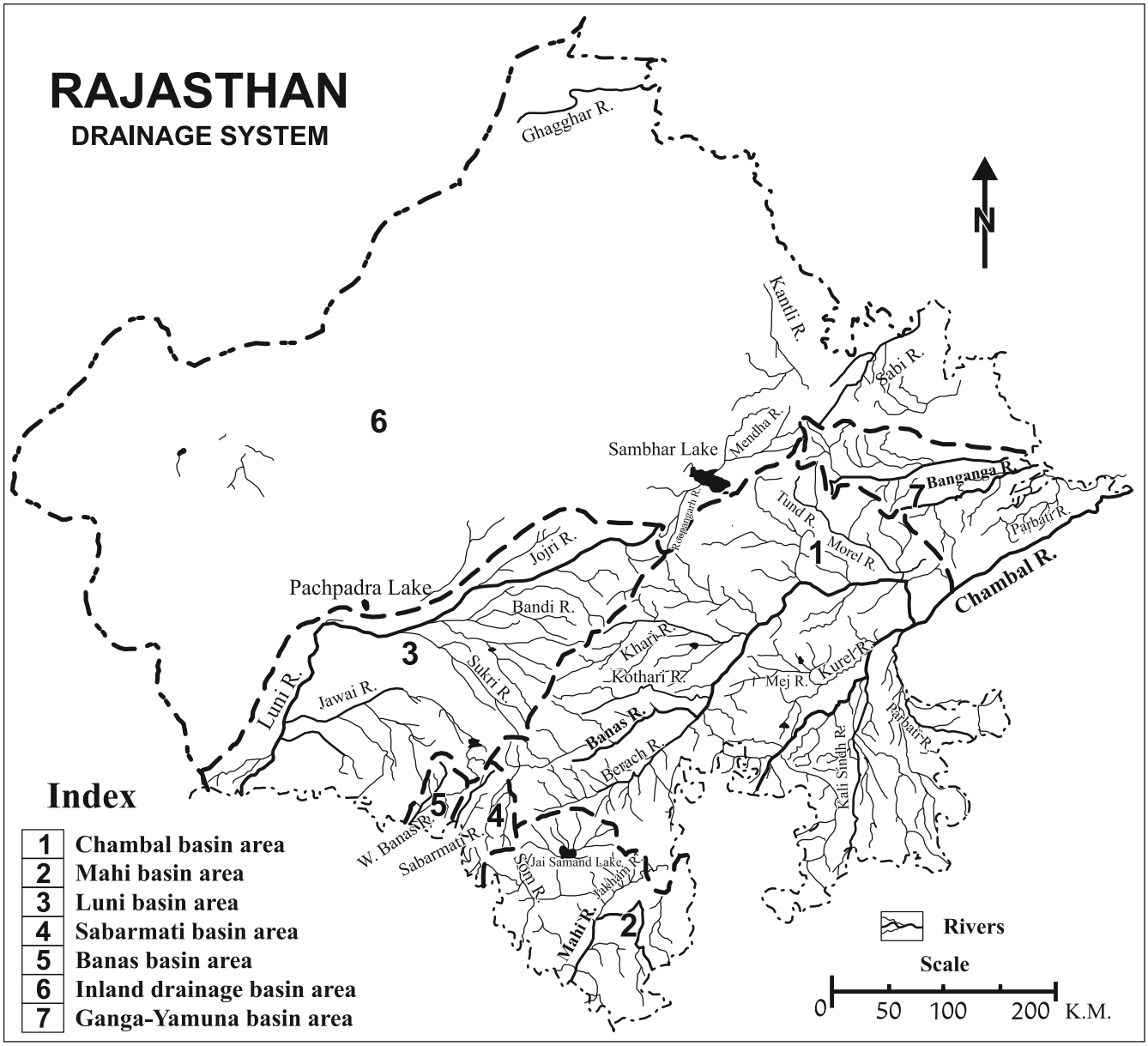
C. The Inland drainage system

A. The Arabian Sea Drainage System :-

This field is related to the River Mahi and Sabarmati. The Mahi River gets out from the place 'Minda' of the mountains of Vindhiyachal, situated in 'Dhar' district, of state of Madhya Pradesh. This falls in the Gulf of Khambat. This location creates a border between Dungarpur and Banswara and on the banks of 'Som' and 'Jhakam' in the confluence point, the Fair of Beneshwar is organised emery year. On this River, near Banswara, the dam of Mahi Bazar Sagar has been constructed. The Tributaries Rivers of this main River, are Som, Amba, and Jhakam etc.

B. The Bay of Bengal Drainage System :-

All the Rivers connected to this field, are merged in the 'Yamuna River'. The related Rivers, to this field are- Chambal, Banas, and Baanganga. The Chambal River gets out from the Janapav hills, which is nearby to Mahu of Madhya Pradesh state. This enters in Rajasthan through the touching area of Chittorgarh to Madhya Pradesh Border, it runs through Chittorgarh, Kota, and Sawai Madhopur gets merged in Yamuna River in Muradgang of Uttar Pradesh.



Map 13.2 : Drainage System of Rajasthan

On this River Dams like- Gandhi Sagar, Rana Pratap Sagar, Jawahar Sagar and Kota Beraj are constructed. The 'Banas' River originates from the place known as "Bheroka Math", near by Kumbhalgarh. This is also called as "Hope of Jungle", this river, merged in the Chambal River near Rameshwar, of Sawai Madhopur district. On this River, the famous "Bisalpur Dam" has been constructed. The other Rivers like Berath, Gambhiri, Kothari, Khari, Parvati, Kali Singdh, are also covered by this Runoff field.

C. Inland Drainage System :-

In this field, such Rivers exist, which begin from some place, but do not reach to sea- they become invisible while flowing for few months, at any time. Such Rivers are Luni, Kantli, Kakni, Ghaggar, Sabi, Mendha etc. The Luni River originates from 'Nag-pahar'. This River disappears in the Rann of Kutch. The 'Mendha

River' falls in Sambhar Lake in Rajasthan.

Saraswati River

According to Righved, the Saraswati River, which is the best among all Rivers, the best among the mothers and Goddesses, originates from Rupan glacier of Shivalik. This glacier after reaching till "Addibadri", gets changed into water and takes the form of streams, which ultimately, while following the plain areas of land, become River.

The Saraswati River related to Vedic and Puran period, has come into being, by mixing the water of two streams- from Tributary Rivers- Dashwati and Hiranyawati, which flew in the middle part of the way of Satlaj and Yamuna River's belt, but due to effect of Geological activities under the land and new developments, the streams of the water, slipped towards West in the period of times this River and become invisible.

It has been revealed by the investigation, done by ISRO, that the streams of water and existence of water in a good quanitity in Brambh Lake of Kurukshetra. The Lakes of the shape of half moon of Pahva and the underground water streams visibly following in the ways of Punjab, Haryana and from North West Rajasthan to Pakistan till Ghaggar-Hkara-Nara are the proofs of the underground presence of Saraswati River. So, till the waterflow is, in existence in underground space, by that time the proper use of such life providing 'water' should be used in a proper ways, so as to develop the surrounding areas and good health & wealth will be add in surrounding areas.

On the basis of early archaeological proofs, the Harrapan culture, was given the name of Indus Valley civilization. It is estimated that there were many ancient settlements on the banks of vedic river saraswati which might be older than the ancient settlements found on banks of indus river.

The Lakes of Rajasthan

The Lakes of Rajasthan can be divided into two categories, from the point of view of water:

A. Saline Water Lakes

B. Fresh Water Lakes

A. Saline Water Lakes :-

In the category of Saline water, the main Lakes are Sambhar, Deedwana, Lun Karansar and Pachpadra Lakes. Sambha Lake is the biggest Saline water Lake of India. This Lake is situated near Phulera of Jaipur District. In this Lake, Rivers- like Mendha and Roopangarh are putting there water.

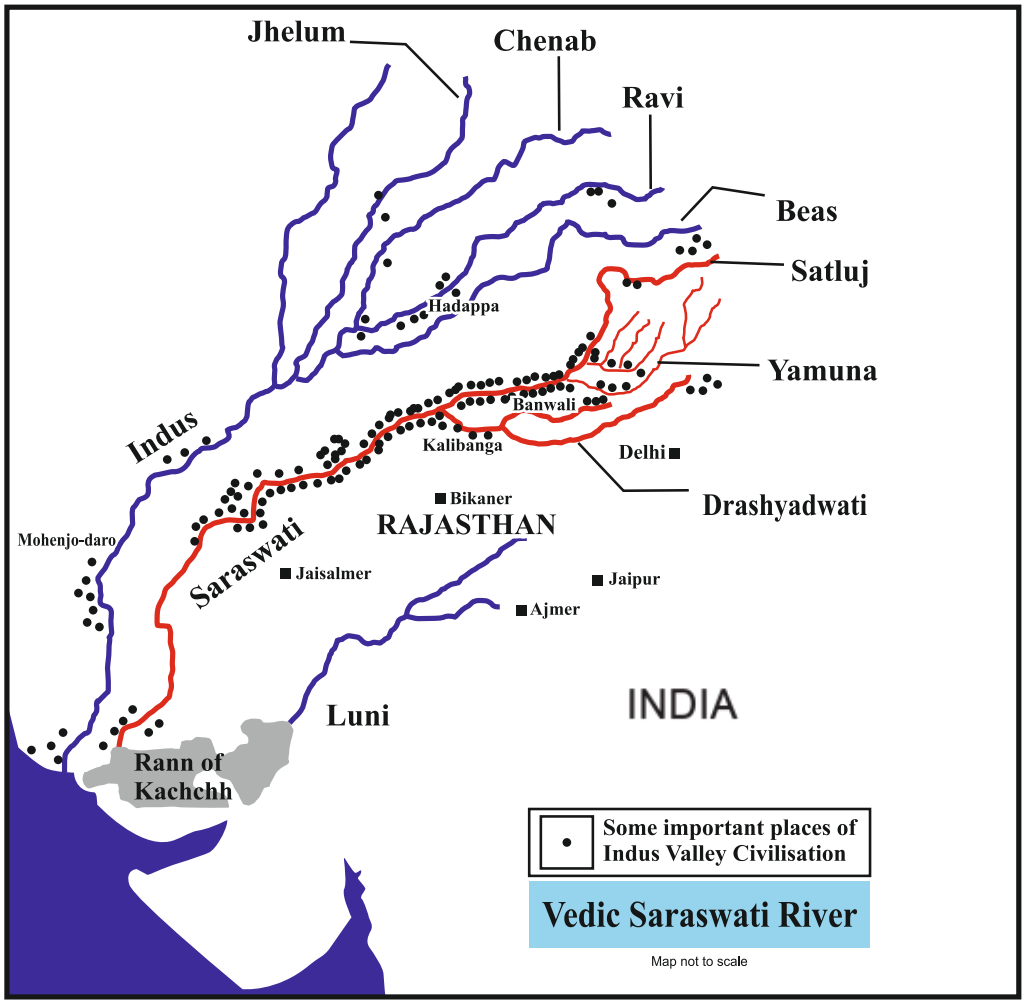
The Deedwana Lake is situated in the South part of Deedwana city. Here big plants are established for the manufacturing of Sodium and Sulphet. In Bikaner District the Lunkaransar Lake and in Barmer District the Pachpadra Lakes are situated. Other Lakes are like Falodi, Kanvoud, Kachor etc.

B. Fresh Water Lake

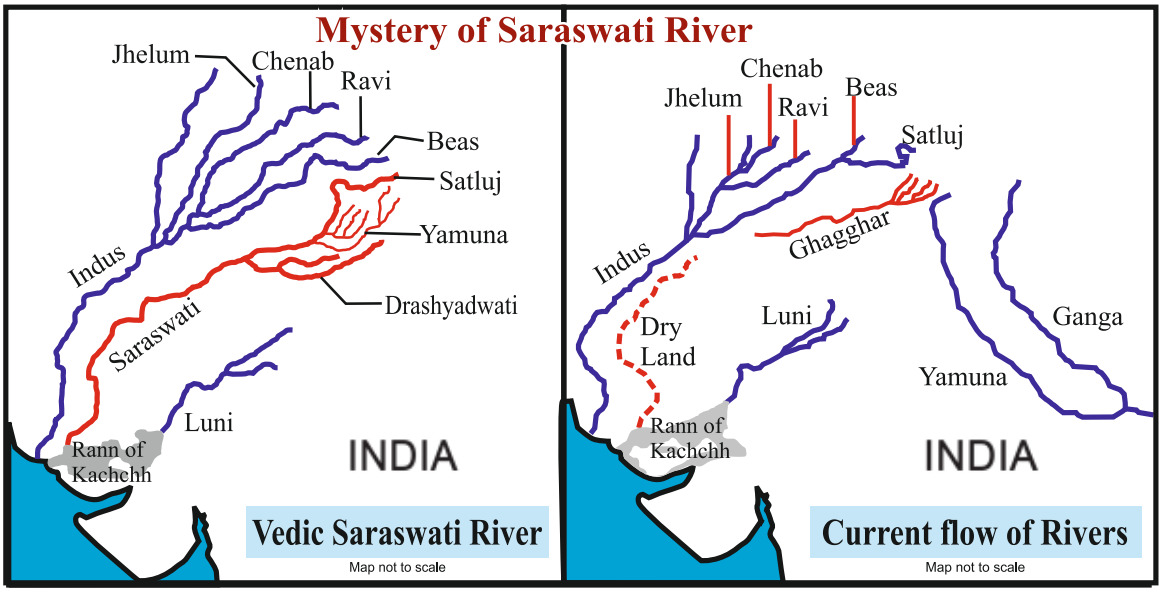
In Rajasthan state a number of fresh water lakes are available, out of them the following are-more important i.e Jaismanad, Rajsamand, Pichola, Annasagar, Pushkar, Sillyseeth, Udai Sagar, Fateh Sagar, Janasagar, Nakki, Kaiylana Lakes. Jaisamand Lake is the biggest artificial Lake of Rajasthan, this is situated near Udaipur District. It has many islands inside the lake. The name of the biggest island is 'Baba Ka Bhagra', and the smallest Island's name is 'Pyari'. It is very important for the tourists.

The Rajsamand lake is situated near Kankroli. This Lake was constructed by Maharana Raj Singh in 1962 A.D. The South part of the Lake is famous by the name of "Navchoki". Here on the stone blocks of Marble, 25 inscription are engraved, on which the history of Mewar and the details about the construction of Lake, are engraved in Sanskirt language. These inscription are published on record for the people.

The Pichola Lake, is situated in Udaipur. This



Map 13.3 : Vedic Saraswati River and some important places of Indus Valley Civilisation



Map 13.4 : Drainage area of Vedic Saraswati River and Current Drainage pattern in this

Lake was constructed, in the Rule of Rana Lakha. The Annasagar Lake is situated in Ajmer city. This Lake was constructed by the Grandfather of Prithvi Raj Chouhan in 1137 A.D. His name was Anna Ji. On the bank of Lake, the "'Barah Dari" and Dolat Bag by Janhagir, was constructed. The Pushkar Lake is a very famous religious place, where the temple of world fame Lord 'Bhrama' is situated. The Silised Lake is in Alwar, where the fisheries business is done. Kolyat Lake is in Bikaner District.

Here, in the Ancient period, there was a Hermitage of Kapil Muni. The Janasagar Lake is situated near 'Badi' in Udaipur District.

Important Points

1. In the River Valleys different civilizations, have flourished.
2. In our country, the Rivers can be divided in three drainage pattern, like- North Indian Rivers, South Indian Rivers and Inland flowing rivers.
3. In India, in reference to monsoon climate, the Rivers have significant place.
4. The rivers flowing from Himalayas are Sindu, Ganga and Brahmputra.
5. Rivers orginating from Aravali are Banas, Luni, Sakhi and Sabamati.
6. Kantali, Sabi, Kakni & Ghaggar, are main rivers.
7. Vanish before reaching sea area's confluence point. The Fair of Beneshwar is held Bhil tribe on the confluence of Mahi, Som and Jakham.
8. The main Saline water lakes in Rajasthan are Sambhar, Didwana, Pachpadra, and Lunkaransar.
9. Luni is the main inland river.

Objective Type Questions

1. The origin of Satluj River is :

   (a) Rakshathal (b) Satluz tal

   (c) Kamal tal (d) Ram tal

2. We see the inclination of the peninsular plateau in:

   (a) In the structure

   (b) In the volume of water

   (c) From the Angle of water flow

   (d) In the volume of Soil

3. Which is not the inland flowing river

   (a) Mantha (b) Meda

   (c) Kakni (d) Parvati

4. The largest Fresh Water Lake is:

   (a) Rajsamand (b) Jaisamand

   (c) Sambhar (d) Pushkar

Very Short Answer Type Questions

1. Write the name of the place of origin of Ganga River.
2. Which place is called as 'The orchand of South'?
3. On which river is the Kapil Dhara water fall situated ?
4. Which mountain divides the drainage system, of Rajasthan into two parts?
5. Write the names of Saline Water Lakes.
6. Which place is called as place of hundred platforms?
7. Which civilization flourished on the Bank of Saraswati River?

Short Answer Type Questions

1. Write the names Tributaries of 'Bhramputra' River system.
2. Compare the Rivers of Southern and with Northern India.
3. Write about of Rajathan that fall into Arabian Sea.

4. Describe the river of Rajasthan that fall into Bay of Bengal.
5. Write about river system which fall into Arabian Sea.
6. Write about Saline Water Lakes of Rajasthan.

Essay Type Questions

1. Describe the drainage system of rivers of northern India.
2. Describe the drainage system of rivers of South India and complete them with the rivers flowing in northern India.
3. Write an essay on "Saraswati River".

Mark in map

1. Show the Rivers of Ganga river course, in the map of India.
2. Show the rivers, which fall in the Arabian Sea in map of India.
3. Identify and shoe Saline water lakes and fresh water lakes in the map of Rajasthan.

The answers of objective type questions:-

1 (A) 2 (C) 3 (D) 4 (B)

Chapter - 14

Climate of India

(Special Reference to Rajasthan)

Diversities in climate are found in various parts of our country due to vastness and varities of land forms. Due to the maximum effect of monsoon wind on Indias climate it is called the Monsoon climate.

Monsoon :

The word Monsoon is derived from an arabic word ''Mosim'' which means seasons or seasonal winds. Monsoon winds changes their direction according to the seasons in our country. This type of monsoon winds are the determiners of India's climate. The climate of our nation is affected by latitudinal position, altitude from sea level, distance from sea, direction of mountain winds and land structure etc.

Origin and development of Monsoon :

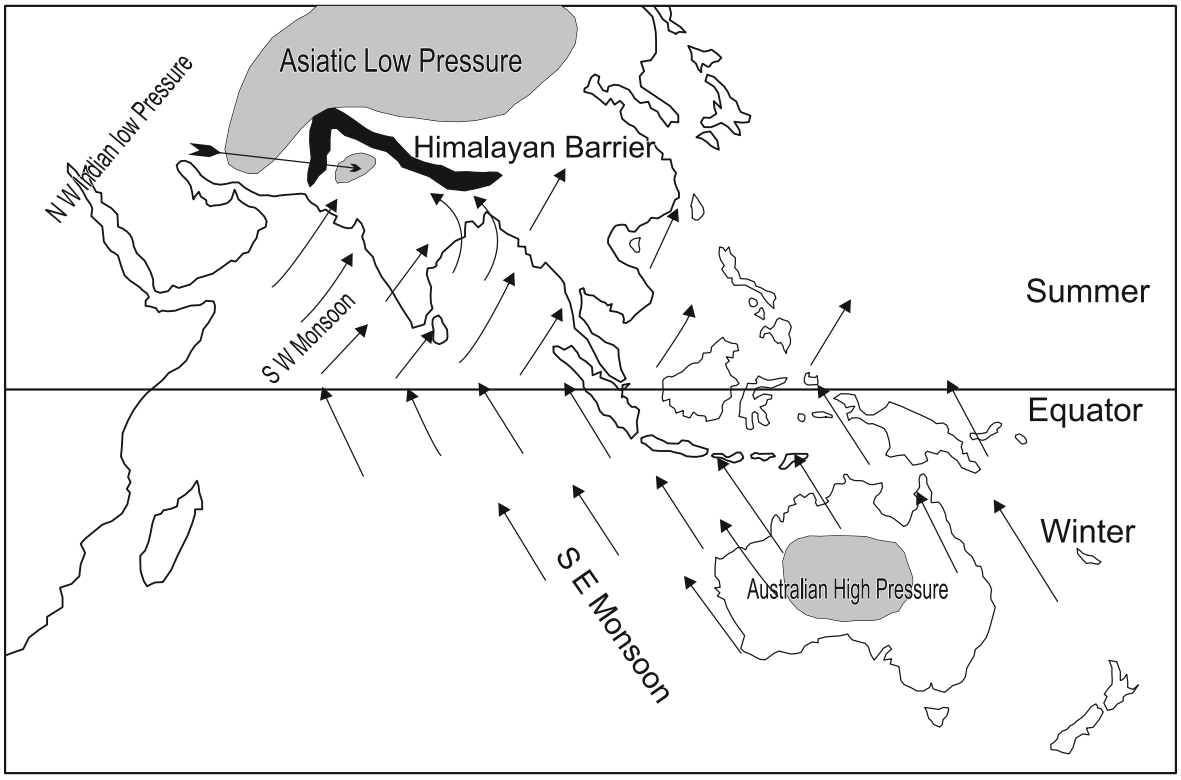
Onset of monsoon and progression of monsooni winds towards land area : The mechanism of south-west monsoon is highly complex. Its origin can be understood with the help of unequal rate of heating and cooling of land and water bodies (Oceans), displacement of air pressure belts along with the shifting of Inter Tropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ) and location, extent and shifting of jet-stream.

At the beging the origin Indian monsoon has been explained with the mechanism of unequal heating and cooling of land and water bodies, which leads to variation in air-pressure conditions. As a result of this, in summer season, winds start blowing from sea areas to the land areas. Later on, this simplistic explanation was considered inadequate.

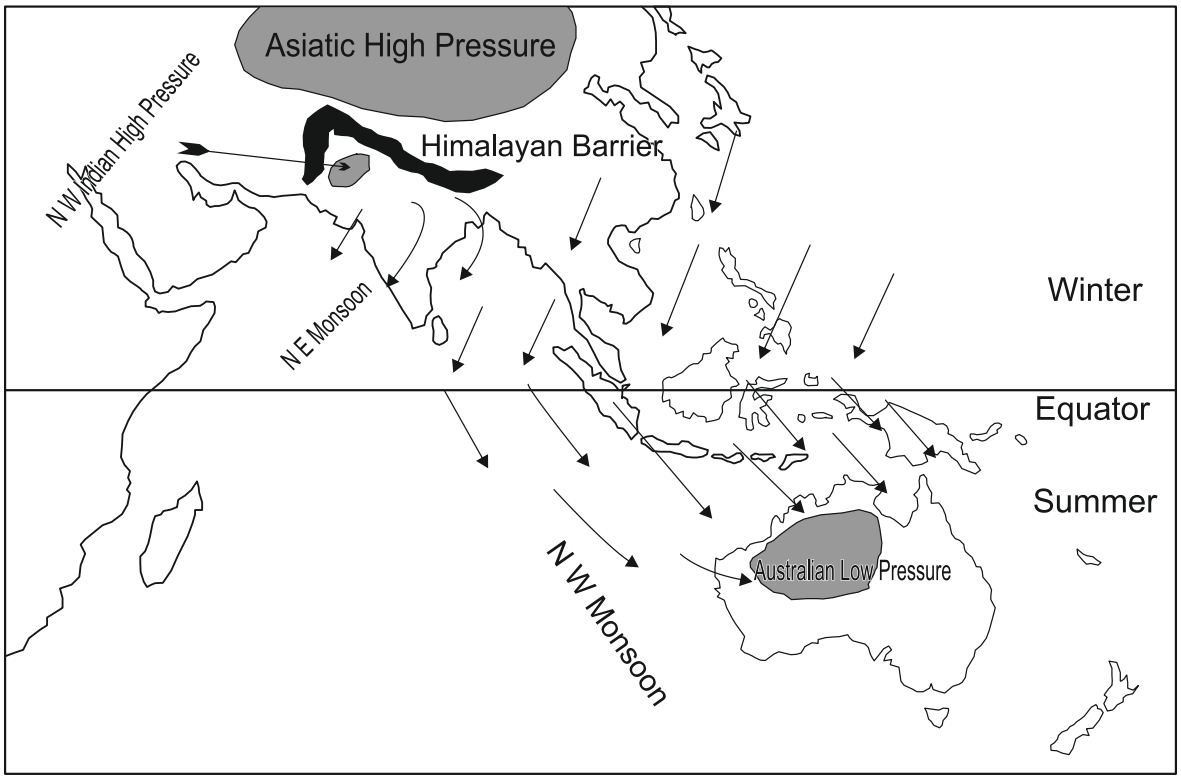
Due to the nothern shift of Inter Tropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ) alongwith nothern shift of the sun, winds are originated which flows from south-west to north-east direction. Due to the nothern shift of the sun low perssure areas are develop in the north-western part of India and on Tibbetian plateau.

In the upper part of troposphere, the air circulation is entirely different from the air circulation near earth surface. In the summer season, easterly jet-stream flows at the height of about 12 km. from the surface, which pushes the tropical depressions towards Indian sub-continent. As a result of this, these depressions influence the monsooni rain over Indian sub-continent. The areas affected by these depressions are the areas of maximum rainfall in Indian sub-continent. The frequency, direction and intensity of these depressions influence the rainfall due to south-western monsoon.

Retreating of Monsoon or Origin of North-East Monsoon : Monsoon starts retreating nearly the month of september. At the end of this month the sun starts its southern shift. In these conditions the low pressure areas over Indian sub-continent are changed into the high pressure areas. As a result of this, now winds strat flowing in north-east to south-western from land areas to the seas. At the middle of October month these winds are retreated from the entire Indian part of expect the part of Indian peninsula. Out of these winds few passes over the Bay of Bengal and get moisture from this region. These winds bring north-eastern monsooni rain in



Map 14.1 : Incoming monsoon conditions in Indian sub-continent



Map 14.2 : Retreating monsoon conditions in Indian sub-continent

eastern Tamilnadu and the adjoining areas.

Climate : Circumistances

The climate of India is of monsoon type. Here the climatic codintions can be normally divided into the chronology of pre- monsoon conditions, monsoon period and the withdrawal of monsoon stage.

In the pre monsoon condition the country faces severe heat. Heat waves and stromy winds blow fast in many areas. Here pressure is developed in northern India. This leads to change in the direction of winds. Winds start blowing from sea to the land in a fast pace.

On the arrival of the monsoon period the winds coming from south west cause rainfall in India in the form of Arabian sea and Bay of Bengal monsoon branches. This period is called rainy season. Withdrawal time of the Monsoon is asociated with winter season. The climate of India is affected by many geological factors.

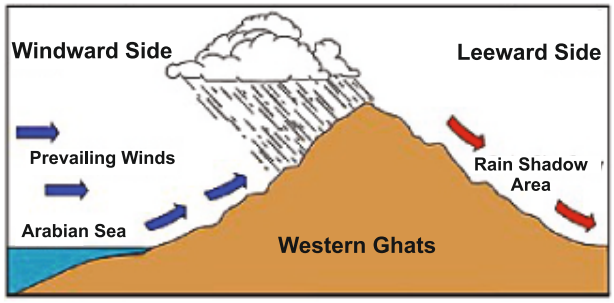
Factors affecting climate :

1. Height from the sea level : The height of any place is inversely related to the temperature of that place. Generally at every 165 meter of hight the temprature falls up to 1° C. As a result higher places like Himalayas are always remained covered with snow. Though situated at the same latitude the average temperatures of summer in Masuri remains 24° C, in Dehradoon 32° C and in Ambala it is near 40° C.

2. Distance from the sea : The difference in temperatures of the cities located at sea coasts remains very low and the climate always remains moist. As the distance increases from the sea in the interior parts of the continents, so did the dissimmilarity, in other words the temperature difference and the aridity also increase. The average annual rainfall in the western coastal areas remains more than 200 cm. and in the eastern coastal areas it is between 100 to 200 cm. Generally, it decreases towards the interior areas.

3. Latitude : This the most important factor affecting the temperature. The temperature decreases with the increasing latitudes because the slanting in the sunrays also increases. It affects the amount of solar heat. The tropic of cancer passes through almost middle of India.

4. Situation of Mountains : One of the factors that affect the climate is the situation of mountains that is very important. The position of western Ghats is close to the western coast of peninsular India. There fore its western slope receives abundant rainfall by south west monsoon. While the slopes opposite to it and the southern plateau comes under the rain shadow area of south west monsoon.



Diag. 14.1 : Impact of Mountain barrier on Rain

5. The direction of Mountains : Because of the position and direction of Himalayas Indias climate remains mild. Besides protecting our country from the cool siberian winds Himalyas stop the summer monsoon to enforce it to precipitate in India on the other hand. The reasons for the arid climate in western Rajasthan is that the direction of Aravali range lies parallel to the south west monsson, therefore it does not put any barrier in the path of the monsoon winds.

6. Direction of the winds : The winds bring the properties of the place and the path of their origion with them. In the summer monsoon winds are hot and humid because these are originating from Indian ocean. That is why they bring rain. In the winter monsoon winds originates from the land surfaces of cold regions so they are usually cold and arid.

7. Upper air circulation : Upper air

circulation is closely linked to monsoon. Climate of India is largely affected by the bustling in the troposphere due to its monsoon type nature. The timely and quantitative uncertainity of monsoon also depends on the conditions of powered air circulation.

Apart from this the amount of cloud covering, vegetation cover, sea currents etc also partly affect the climate of India. According to the metrological department of India the climatic condition are divided into four seasons.

1. Winter season - December to February
2. Summer season - March to mid June
3. Rainy season - Mid June to mid september
4. Autumn Season - Mid September to Mid December

There are six seaosns according to the Indian litrature and culture.

1. Basant Ritu (Spring) - Chaitra-Vaishakha
2. Greeshma Ritu (Summer) - Jyestha-Ashadha
3. Versha Ritu (Rain) - Shravan-Bhaishak
4. Sharad Ritu (Antumn) - Ashwin-Kartik
5. Hemant Ritu (Pre winter) - Magha-Phalguna
6. Sheet Ritu (Winter) - Margsheesh-Pousha

Due to vastness of the country differences at local level are found in above mentioned period of various seasons. In every season a variation in temperature, air pressure, winds and in the amount of rains are found.

(A) North-Eastern or winter Monsoon period :

1. Winter Season -

(a) Temperature : The temperature gets a rise in this season while going north to south. Temperature remains low and the severe winter is observed in north India due to the factors like increased height from the sea and distance from the sea and equator. In South India the temperatures remain comparatively high due to the proximity from equator and the marine influence. In this season the temperature dips lower than the freezing point at many places in north India. At this time average temperature in north India remains lower than 21° C and in south it remains more than this.

(b) Pressure and Winds : In this season, the high air-pressure is found in North-Western part of India and in the areas of Tibbetian plateau and at Indian ocean air-pressure remains low. Therefore, the winds start running towards the oceanic low pressure region from the high pressure zone of Asia. They are called north-eastern monsoon winds.

(c) Rainfall : In this season the norht western part of the nation receives rain fall due to medeteranian cyclones and from the retreating monsoon. The rainfall due to the mediteranian cyclones (western disturbances) is a boon for the Rabi crop. In local language it is called 'Mavath'. This rainfall occures mainly in Jammu and Kashmir, Punjab Haryana, Rajasthan, Uttarakhand and in U.P. In south Tamilnadu gets the rainfall due to north-eastern monsoon.

2. Summer :

There is a lot of heat observed in this season due to high temperature in north India. Three reasons are stated for high temperatures in summers.

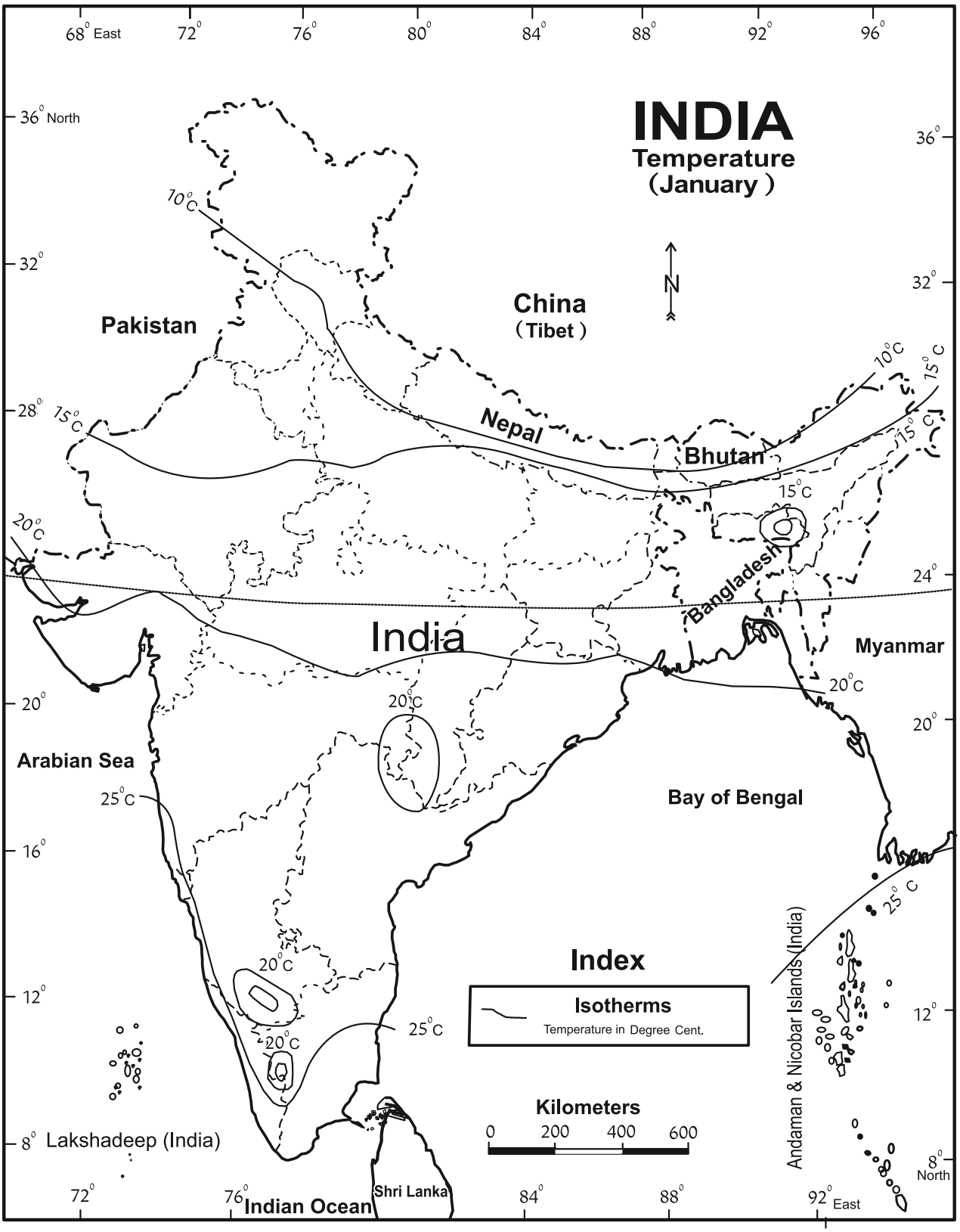
(i) Vertical fall of sun rays in the northern hemisphere.

(ii) Distance from the sea

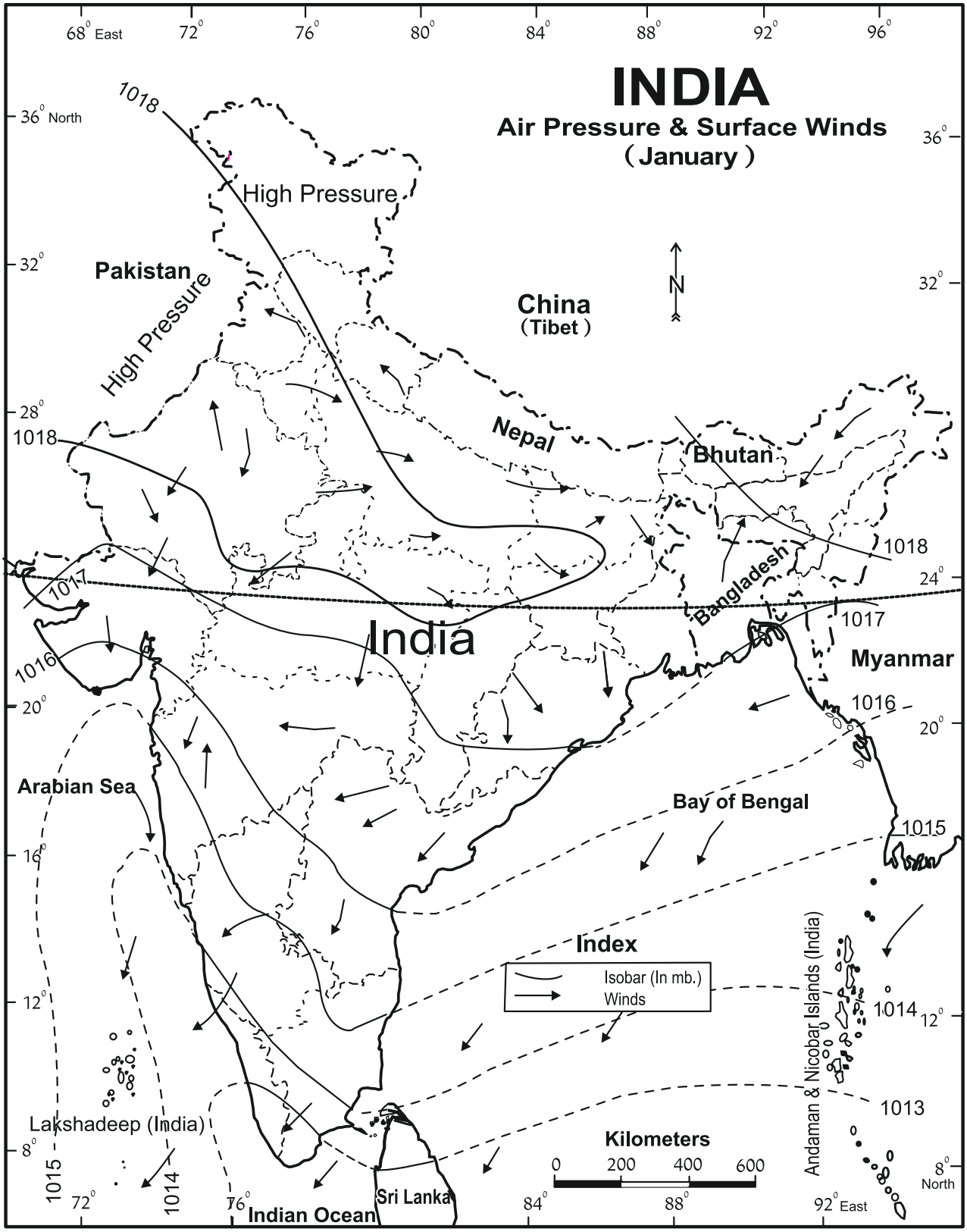
(iii) Rise in the temperature due to anti cyclons.

Temprature can reach up to 50° C in this season in north India. Due to marine influence the temperature remains low. In south India hilly areas and its adjoining parts remain cool in this season.

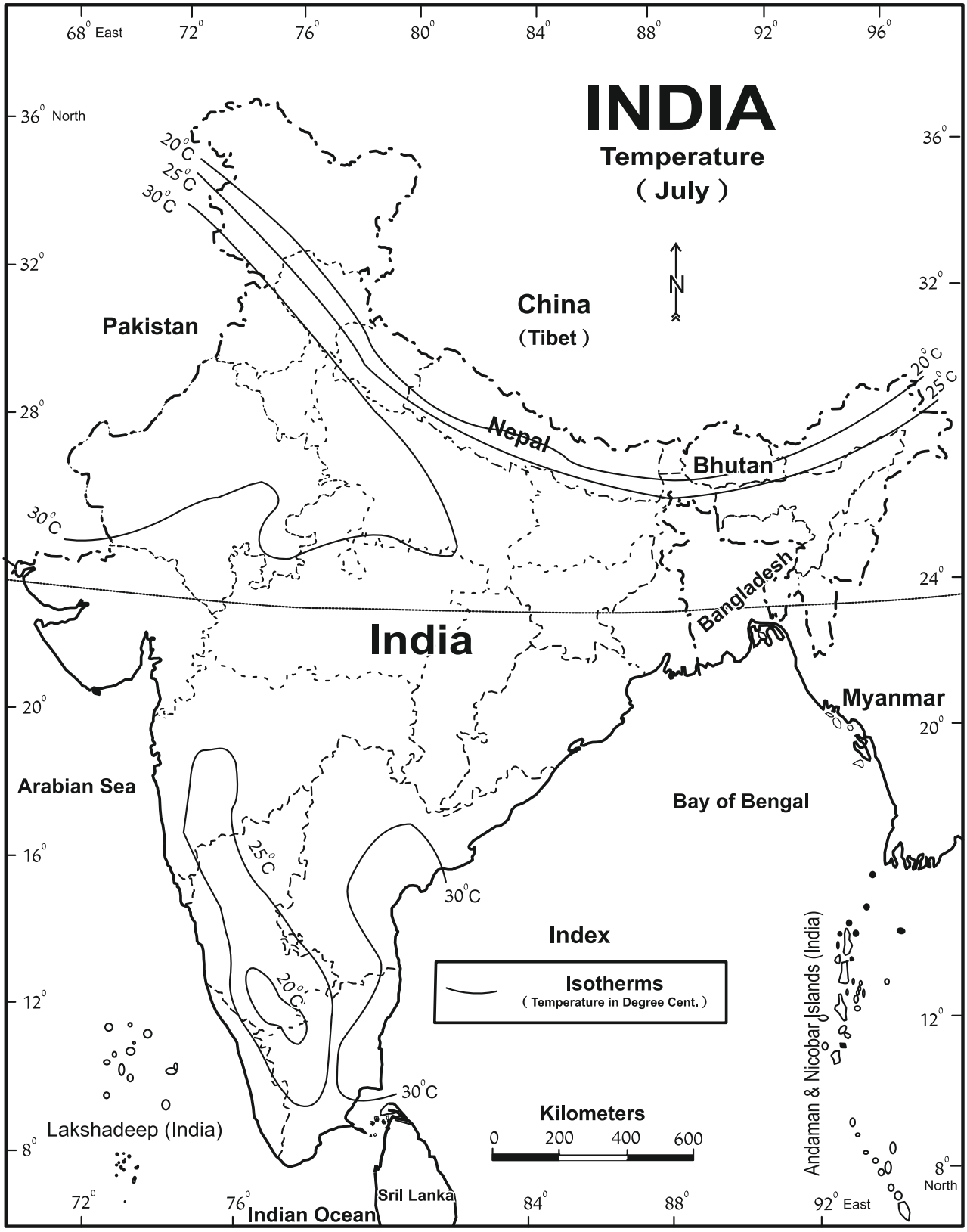
(a) Pressure and winds : A low pressure area is developed in north India due to excessive heat at this time. A low pressure area is developd in the desert region of Rajasthan and Punjab. But on the contrary a very high pressure zone is formed in the



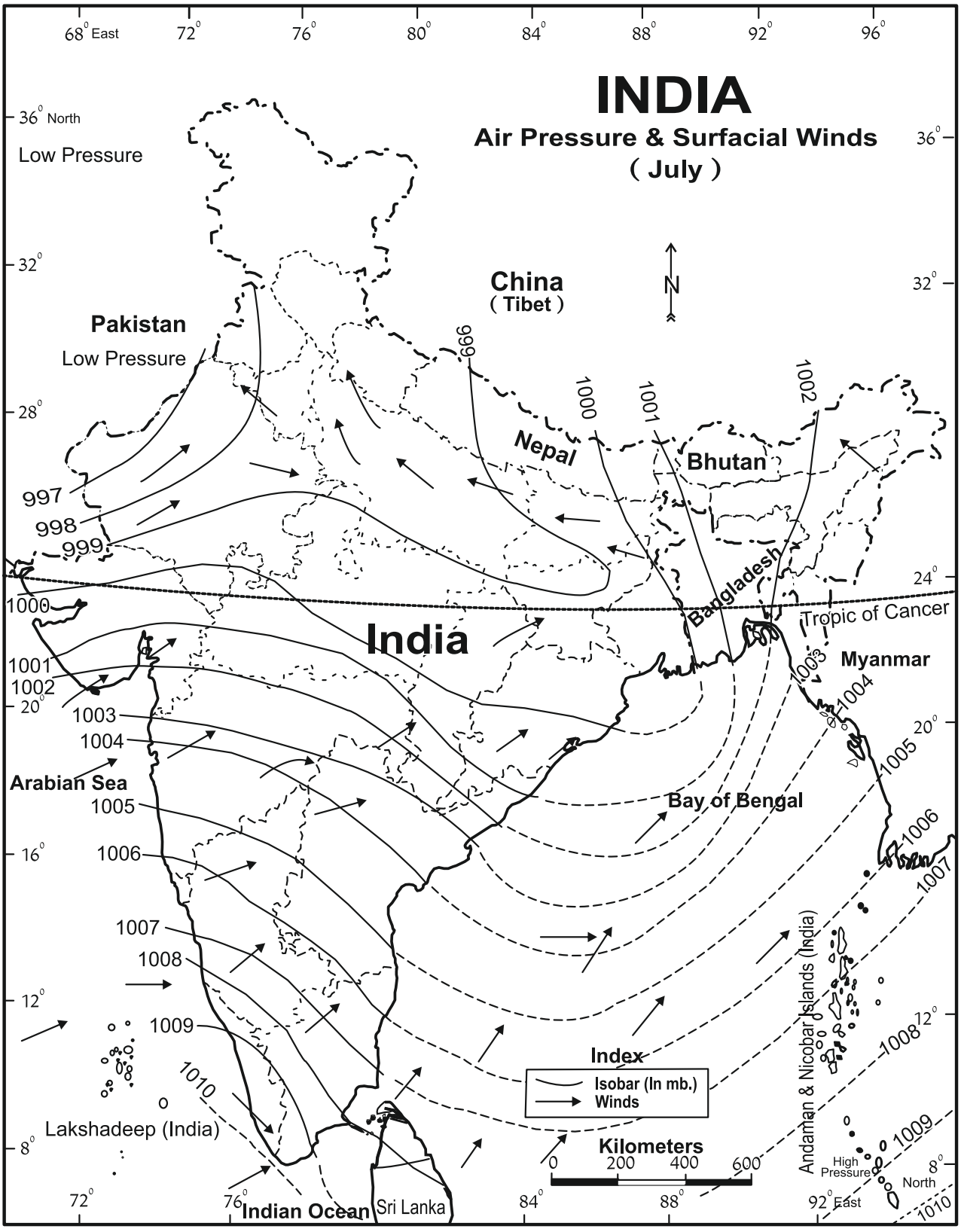
Map 14.3 : Average temperature conditions in India (January)



Map 14.4 : Average pressure conditions and direction of flow of winds in India (January)



Map 14.5 : Average temperature conditions in India (July)



Map 14.6 : Average pressure conditions and direction of flow of winds in India (July)

Indian ocean region. In this region the winds blow in north India are called 'Loo' Sometimes a light rain also occurs there with storms. In western Bengal such storms are called 'Kall Vaishaki'.

(b) Rainfall : There is a little rainfall appears in this season. In west Bengal the rainfall occurs with 'Kall Vaishaki' storms. In south India rainfall near the Malabaar cost is called 'Aamra Varsha' and the rainfall in coffee production area is known as 'Phoolon ki Bouchar' (shower of flowers). Hail storms occur in Punjab, Haryana, Uttarakhand and Asam with rainstorms.

(B) South-West or Summer Monsoon Period :

3. Rainy Season : This season gives life to agriculture of our country. Rain occurs in most parts of the country at this time. The period of Rainy season depends entirely on the monsoon.

(i) Temperature : In this period due to high termerature in the North India, low pressure centers are developed in summer season and in their influence monsoon events advanced towards Indian sub continents. In this season with increasing rainfall tempereture start declining in this region. After July-August temperature declines in some areas. In Rajasthan the temperature of September goes up to 38° Celsius.

(ii) Pressure and winds : At this time the low air pressure is densely concentrated on the desert of Rajasthan and Punjab and in the areas of Tibbetian plateau. In South the high pressure is centered in Indian ocean. So due to the south-west diversion of the winds it is called south-west monsoon. Along with the moving of the center of the monsoon, it is known as 'Monsoon' with this sliding of pressure center the monsoon winds keep going ahead.

(iii) Rainfall : Due to the location of southern peninsulla the south west monsoon causes rainfall in our country by dividing itself into two branches. The two branches are -

(i) Arabian sea branch

(ii) Bay of Bengal branch

(i) Arabian sea branch : This branch is more powerful than the Bay of Bangal branch. It first strikes at western ghats. It causes 250 to 300 cm rainfall here. The velocity of this branch gets weaker here. It causes scanty rainfall in the interior parts of the plateau. Because this region lie in the rain shadow area.

Its Nagpur sub-branch meets with bay of Bengal branch by going ahead between Narmada Tapti Valleys. An another sub branch reaches western Himaalaya by going through Gujrat and Rajasthan. Rajashtn receives less rainfall because of the parallel position of Aravali ranges and the monsoon winds.

(ii) Bay of Bengal branch : This branch gets divided into two sub branches. One sub branch leads towards Arunachal and Assam in North-Eastern part of India. This sub branch causes heavy rainfall by hitting the garohills in this region. Mausinram gets maximum rainfall here.

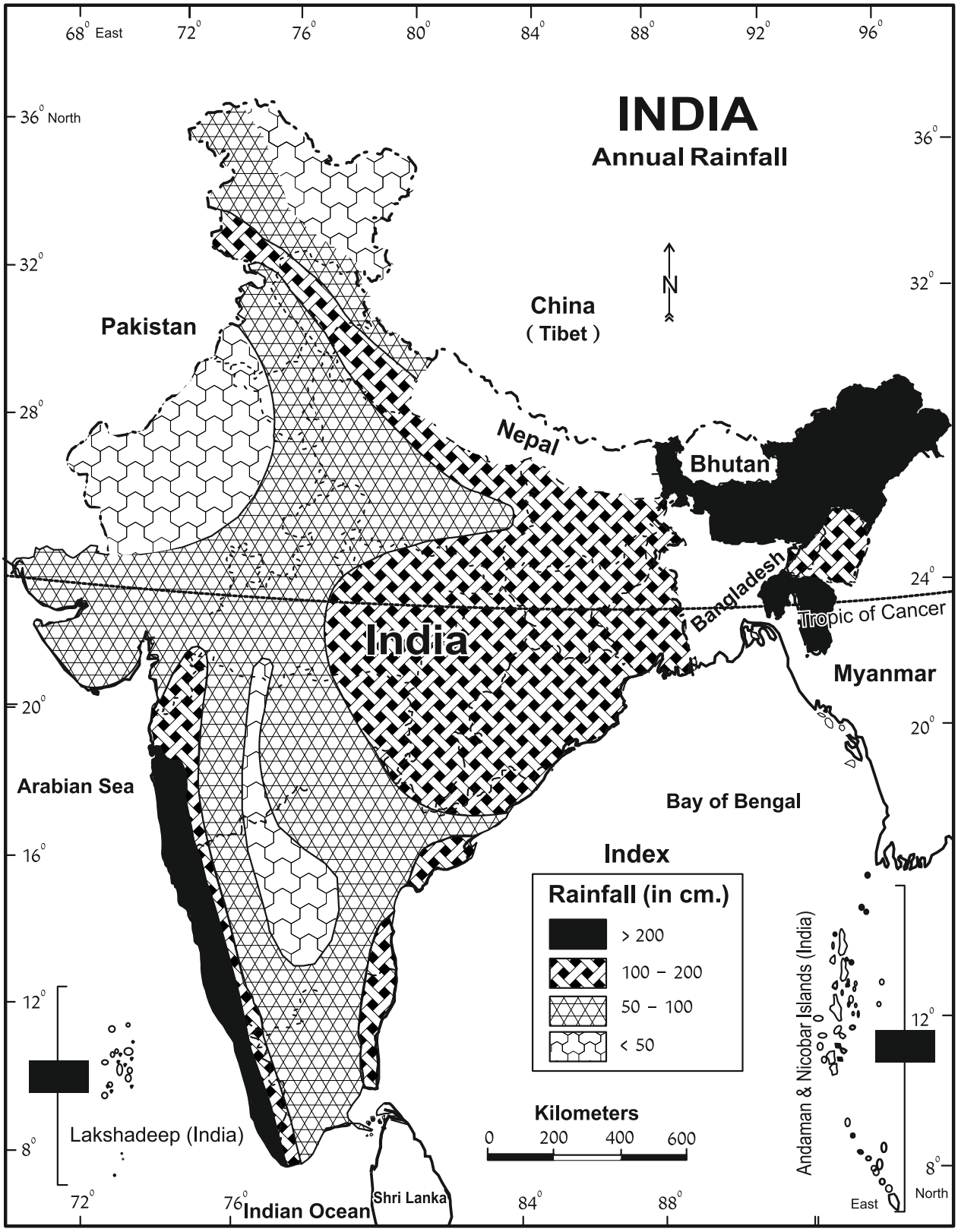
Its second branch proceeds along the low land of Himalayas.' Bihar, Uttar Pradesh, Chattishgarh, Jharkhand. Uttarkhand get maximum rainfall from it. The attainment of rainfall decreases along the west. So western Punjab and Rajasthan get scanty rainfall by it.

(iii) The Sharad Season : It is the return time of monsoon. At this time the sun visits in southern hemisphere and due to the withdrawal of monsoon the temperature goes down. Due to change in the temperature the pressure also keep sliding. The direction of winds changes from south west to north east now. It causes rainfall in Tamilandu.

The Distribution of Rainfall in India :

The distribution of rainfall is not equal in our country. The nation can be divided into four parts on the basis of regional distribution of rainfall.

(a) The high rainfall areas : Assam, Meghalaya, Arunachala pradesh, Tripura, Nagaland, Mizoram and the southern lowland of



Map 14.7 : Average annual distribution of rainfall in India

Himalayas, west Bengal, Bihar, Jharkhand, Uttar Pradesh, Uttarakhand, western coastal plain and the area of western slope all are included in it. This area receives more than 200 cms of rainfall every year. Due to the exerssive rainfall tropical evergreen forests are found there.

(b) Ordinary rainfall areas : The eastern slopes of western Ghats south west Bengal, Chattisgarh, Jharkhand, Orrisa, South western UP. lowland areas of Himalaya and eastern Tamilandu come under this region. This region gets 100 to 200 cm of rainfall annually. Monsson forests are found here.

(c) Scanty rainfall areas : It includes the interim part of southern peninsula, eastern Rajasthan, Punjab, Haryana, Southern UP, northern and southern Andhra Pradesh and middle east part of Maharashtra. This part receives a rainfall between 50 to 100 cm.

(d) Insufficient rainfall areas : This portion covers Royal seema region of Tamilandu, Kaccha, western Rajasthan, western Punjab and Laddakh etc. Here the rainfall average is less than 50 cm.

Climate of Rajasthan :

The climate of Rajasthan is broadly a part of monsoon climate but many spatial diversities are found here. Most part of Rajasthan comes under the temperate tropical climate zone. Factors influencing the climate of the state are :- latitudinal positon, distance from the sea, height direction of mountains, winds direction, types of soil and vegetation are important.

Climate conditions :

Traditionally on the basis of climate Rajasthan is largely divided into 3 main seasons.

1. Summer season
2. Rainy season
3. Winter season

According to the metrological department of India, on the basis of monsoon period the whole year is devided into following seasons.

1. Winter season	-	December to February
2. Summer season	-	March to mid June
3. Rainy season	-	Mid June to mid september
4. Autumn Season	-	Mid September to Mid December

1. Winter Season :

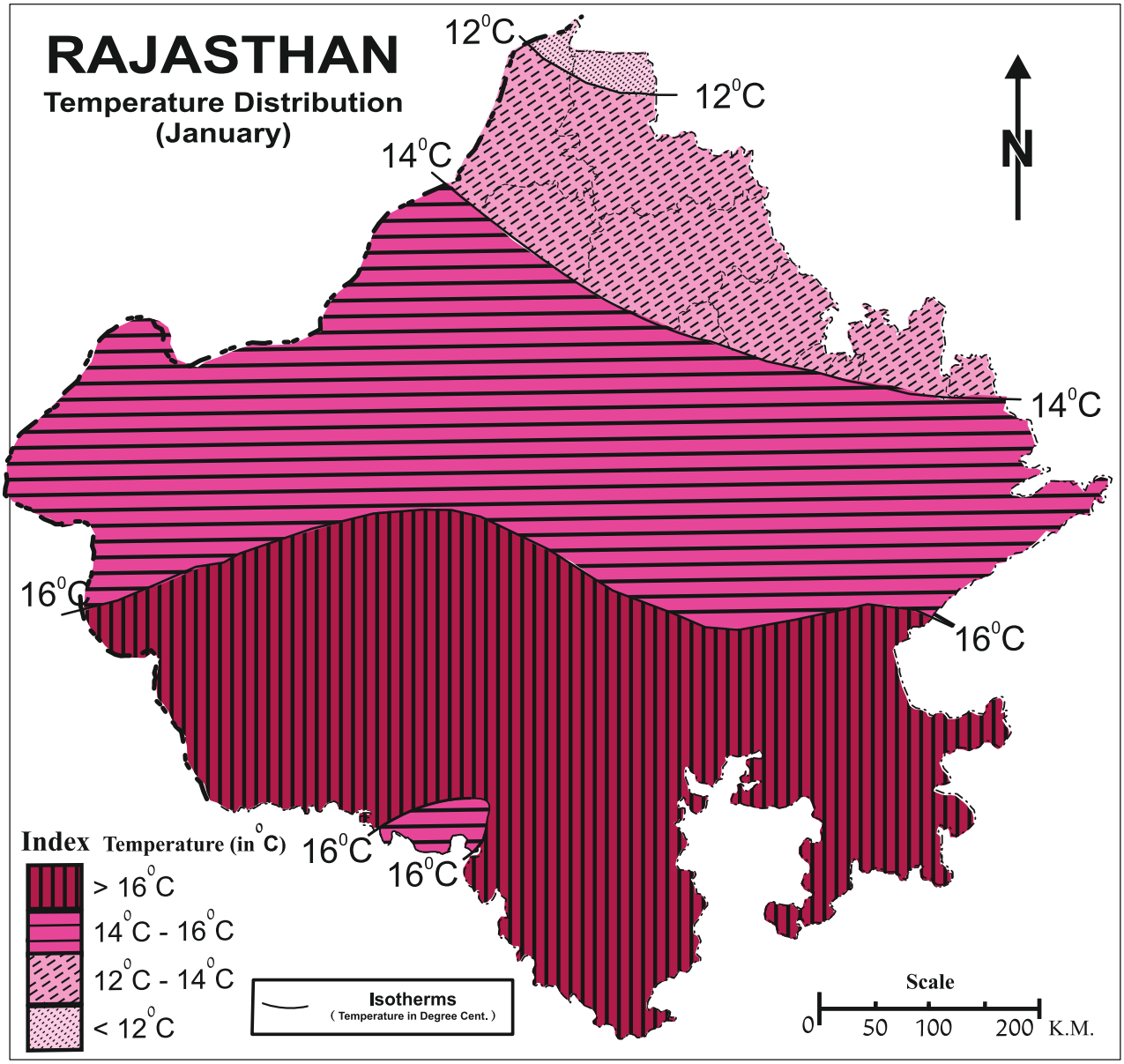
Temperature : From December to Febaury the position of the sun lies is in southern hemispher. So the temperature goes down in the state. Many times mercury dips below zero at several places like Sikar, Churu, Degana, Phalaodi, Mount Abu. The temperature remains very low. According to common territorial distribution, the lowest temperature in north remains less than 12° C and in south it remains more than 16° C.

Pressure, Winds and Rainfall : A highly developed pressure center near Bekal lake and Peshawar affect the monoson of sharad period. Pressure remains over Indian ocean in this season so the winds start blowing from terrestrial high pressure area to oceanic low pressure area. Due to their terrestrial origin these winds remain dry. But some of these winds bring rain after coming into contact with mediteranian cyclones. It is called 'Mavath' in the local language.

2. Summer Season :

Temperature : In March the temperature gradually rises because the sun starts to achieve the solstice position. The temperature reaches maximum in the month of June. The average temperature of the state at this time remains more than 38°C, but the highest temperature is measured between 40°C to 45°C

Pressure winds and Rain : Due to extreme heat low air pressure is developed in the western part of Rajasthan. The cloudless sky and the direct and fierce rays of sun make the surface hot. Due to this impact hot dry and dusty winds start blowing which are called ''Loo". Fast hot winds and storms in this reason are the characteristics of the climate of



Map 14.8 : Average temperature conditions in Rajasthan (January)

Western Rajasthan. Pre monsoon showers occur sometimes in this season at several places.

3. Rainy Season :

Temperature : Due to rain the summer temperature goes down in this season. After the beginning of rainy season the temperature in various parts of Rajasthan remains between 18°C to 30°C

Pressure and winds : Due to excessive heat the pressure in western Rajasthan goes very low. Contrary to this the pressure in Indian ocean remains very high. So the monsoon winds start moving from oceanic high pressure to the terrestrial low pressure. This leads to the origin of two branches:- Bay of Bengal monsoon and Arabian sea Monsoon. Both the branches cause rain in Rajasthan.

Rainfall : Generally monsoon reaches Rajasthan by the last week of June. Rajasthan gets rainfall from the monsoon of Bay of Bengal and Arabian sea. 95% of the total rainfall in Rajasthan is received by these winds only. Arabian sea monsoon

passes through the state without giving much rainfall to it because there is no proper obstruction available in the passage of it. The branch of Bay of Bengal monsoon becomes much dry when it reaches here after causing rains in the whole country. For above stated reasons the western part of the state remains deprived of rainfall. But the annual rainfall in the south western part of Aravalli averages more then 100 cm. The average rainfall in the western Rajasthan remains 25 cm and it is 75 to 100 cm in the south western part and the rest north eastern Rajasthan receives 50 to 70 cm. While going towards south-east to north-west and west particularly, the uncertainity of the rain keeps increasing and the amount of rainfall also becomes less.

4. Autumn (Sharad) Season :

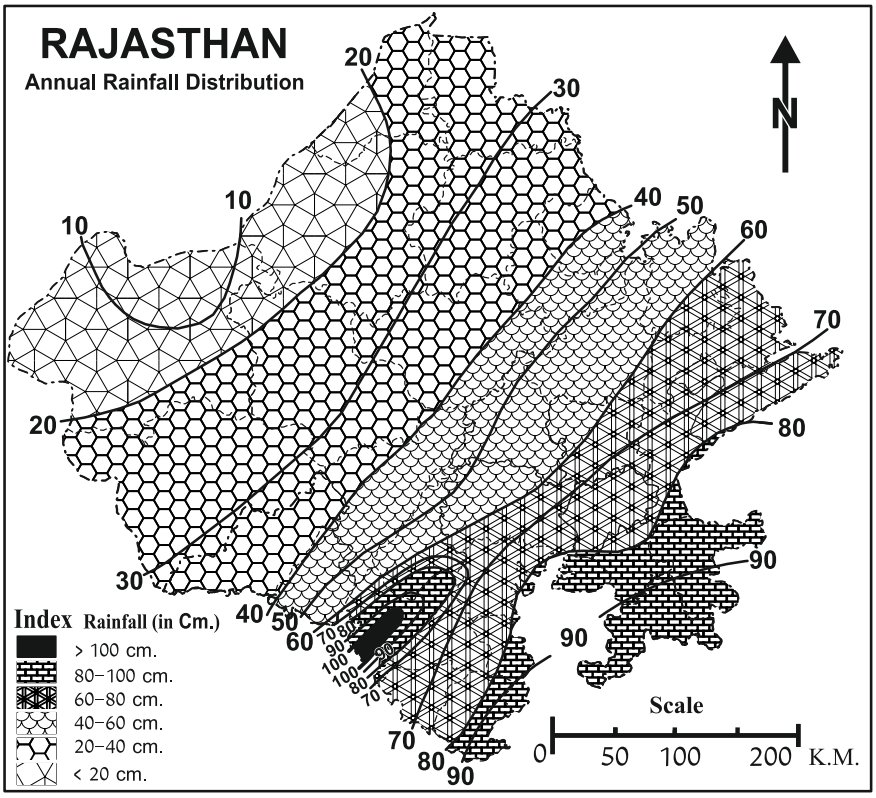
Temperature : In this season the temperature grows up to 38^0C because of the clear sky after the rainfall but the temperature decreases gradually due to the winter solstice. The temperature ranges 20^0 to 30^0C from north to south in Rajasthan.

Pressure, Winds, Rainfall : In this season no explicit order is formed regarding to pressure, so winds also remain calm. Therefore no rainfall is received here in this season.

Rajasthan : Annual Rainfall :

The average rainfall is not high in Rajasthan because it is located in the interior part. Also the distribution of rainfall is uneven. The western desert receive minimum rainfall with the annual average of 25 cm. From desert to the eastern Aravalli ranges the annual rainfall averages 25 to 50 cm. Most of the rainfall is received by southern Rajasthan where it averages more than 75 cm. The 95% of total rainfall of state is brought by the monsoons of Arabian sea and Bay of Bengal. In winters little amount of rainfall is received through 'Mavath'.

The extension of the Aravalli ranges is parallel to the monsoon winds and the arrival of south-western winds, especially the bay of Bengal branch, after causing rainfall some where else in the country are the major reasons for the low rainfall in the state.



Map 14.9 : Average annual distribution of rainfall in Rajasthan

Important Points

1. 90% part of the total rainfall of India is received by the south-west monsoon.
2. Regional distribution of rainfall in India is extremely unequal.
3. The winter is usually dry. The 10% of the country's rainfall is obtained from Autumn monsoon and cyclones.
4. There are six seasons according to Indian culture.
5. After dividing itself in to two branches the south west monsoon causes rainfall in the country by- Arabian sea branch and Bay of Bengal branch.
6. The climate of Rajasthan is odd.
7. In summer the hot winds called 'Loo' blow in Rajasthan and the rainfall received in winter is called 'Mavath'.
8. Rajasthan receives most of its rainfall from south west monsoon.

Objective type Questions :

1. The world monsoon is a transformation of -

   (a) Mosim (b) Monis

   (c) Manas (d) All one correct

2. The rainfall ''Mavath'' is -

   (a) Autumn rainfall (b) Winter rainfall

   (c) Summer rainfall (d) General rainfall

3. According to Indian culture the number of seasons are -

   (a) Two (b) Four

   (c) Three (d) Six

Very Short Answer type Questions :

1. From which language the word 'Mosim'' has been taken?
2. Where does the high pressure zone formed when the sun shines vertically above the tropic of cancer?
3. Where does the low pressure zone formed when the sun shines vertically above the topic of capricorn?
4. Where does the jet stream blow?
5. Where does the summer zone low pressure area develop in Rajasthan?

Short answer type Questions :

1. Give reasons which affect the climate of India.
2. Write the names with duration of the seasons which come under winter and summer monsoon.
3. Explain the monsoon of Arabian sea.
4. Explain the jet stream ideology about the origin of Monsoon.
5. Explain the relationship of rainfall in Rajasthan with Aravalli range of mountain.

Essay Type Questions :

1. Describe the temperature, pressure, wind conditions and the rainfall of south west monsoon.
2. Write about the distribution of rainfall in India.
3. Explain the circumstances related to climate of Rajasthan.

Mark in maps :

1. Show the position of south west monsoon winds in the map of India.
2. Show the distribution of annual rainfall is the map of Rajasthan.

Answers to objective type Questions

1. (a) 2. (b) 3. (d)

Chapter - 15

Natural Vegetation and Soils of India

(Special Reference to Rajasthan)

Natural vegetation and wild life are the basis of the prosperity of any nation. It is an important part of India's natural environment. Natural vegetation and wildlife are available in abundance in India from a long time but now due to the irrational exploilation their destruction is increasing. For the sake of human civilization the preservation of natural vegetation and wild organism is absolutely necessary.

According to the national forest policy 33% of forest cover on the land is necessary. Our nation has a variation in the types and distribution of forests according to the state and regions too and it occurs due to the difference in the natural environment of those places. India is a large country therefore the diversity in the form of tempertature, rain, soil, land quality, winds and the sunlight is found. So presence of different kind of vegetation is natural.

Types and Distribution of Forest :

1. Evergreen Forests :

These forests are found in those parts of the country where the average rainfall received is above 200 cms and the average temperature remains around 24^0 C. It has three major regions.

1. Western slopes of western Ghats.

2. Andaman and Nicobar group of Islands

3. Bengal, Assam, Meghalaya and lowland areas of north east India. In such type of forests a variety of trees like Rubber, Mahogan, Aboni, Innowood, wild mango palm and Bamboo and creepers found. These trees have a height between 30 to 45 meters. Density of trees is so high that the sun light cannot reach the ground.

Exploitation of these trees is found scarce because their wood is hard. Different types of trees are found at a place. Trees, creepers and smaller plants grow densely, therefore cutting of trees is unconvenient and also there is a lack in means of transport so these woods are not much used from economic point of view.

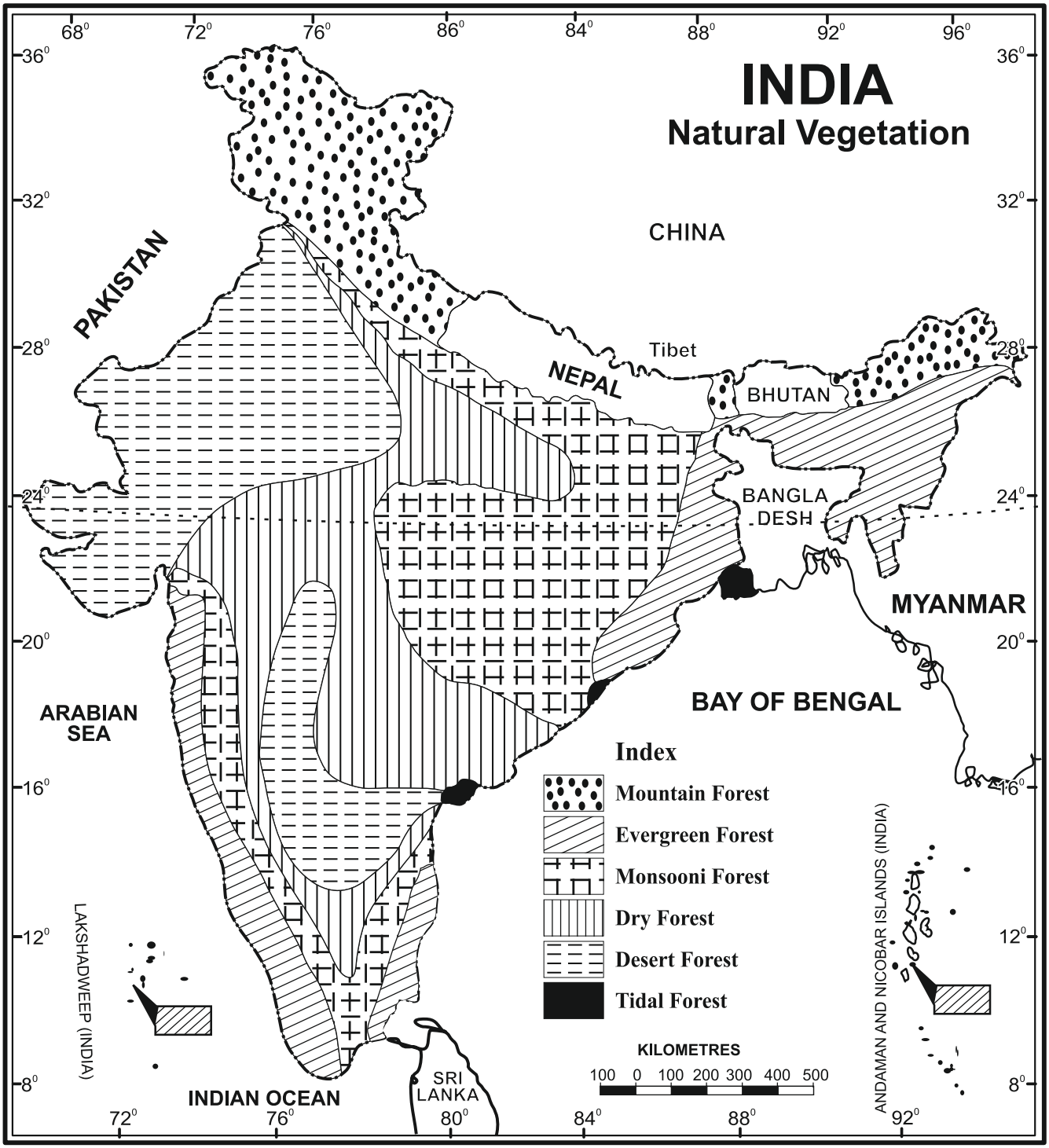
2. Deciduous or Monsoon forests :

These forests are found in areas receiving annual rainfall between 100 to 200 cms. These forests are found in the lower parts of Northern U.P. Vindhyachal and Satpura mountains, the hills of chota nagpur and Assam, Southern parts of eastern Ghat and in the eastern region of the western Ghats.

These forests are not dense and also the trees inside them are not very high. The main trees inside them are saal, teak, Neem, Sandal wood, Rose wood, amla, Mulbercy, Abony mango and Bamboo etc. The wood of these trees are not very hard and can be cut easily. Their wood is used in making vessels and furniture etc. After the development of the means of transport in these areas the forests are shrinking day by day due to growing demand and needless exploitation.

3. Arid Forest :

These forests are found in areas where the aveage rainfall remains 50 to 100 cms. The trees which can survive in lack of water are found in abundance in these areas. These trees have long thick roots. This type of forests are found mostly in



Map 15.1 : Natural Vegetation in India

south west Punjab, Haryana, eastern Rajasthan & in south west UP. The major trees are Acacia, Neem, Mahua, Kareel, Khejari (Prosopis cineraria) etc. Here the trees have lesser hight due to the lack of rain. The height of the trees is measures between 6 to 9 meters. These trees have local significance.

4. Thorn forests : These forests are found in the parts of low rainfall up to 50 cms. The leaves of these trees are small, thorny and less in number,

Acasia trees grow in abundance there. Hawthorn Agave khejri, Kher and Palm etc trees are among the vegetations dominant here. This vegetation is found in the states like south west Punjab, Western Rajasthan, Gujrat and M.P. etc.

(5) Tidal Forests : These are also called swamp forests. These forest are found at the mouth of peninsular rivers like Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna, Kaveri etc. and also exist in the parts of deltas of Ganga and Brahmputra. At the time of tide the sea water irrrigates the roots of trees Mud and swamps are present in such regions. Sundari trees are found particularly into the delta of Ganges and Brahmputra. Palm coconut, Haritoria, Rizophora and Sonerashia are the other trees. The wood of these trees is soft.

(6) Montane forests : This type of forests are found at the high altitudes upto 800 meters in Mahabaleshwar of Maharastra in south India and in Pachmadhi of MP. Here the trees are as high as 15 to 18 meters. Trees. Bear thick trunks having dense bushess under them. The leaves are thick and everygreen and the branches are found bearing vines. Eujenia, Mitchelia and Rodendraus etc are the trees found at high altitudes. Diverse vegetation is found at different altitudes of Himalayan ranges in North India. Oak and Chestnut trees with broad leaves are found at the height of 1000 to 1500 meters, Coniferous trees like cedar, spruce, pine etc grow at 3000 meters, alpine flora like silver fur, Birch Junifur etc are found at the height of more than 3000 meters.

Wild life in India :

Different types of animals are found in India in large numbers. Almost 75000 species of animals are found here. Amongst them 350 species of mamals 1,313 avian 480 reptiles 197 amphibians 2,546 fish, 50,000 insects 4000 molusks are found and the rest of the species of invertibrates. They constitute 13% of the world's total. Among mamals the elephant is the most mejestic. These creatures are found in Assam, Karnataka, and in the hot and humid forests of Kerala. The single horned rhinos live in the swamps of west Bangal and Assam. Wild asses and camels live in the rann of Kacch and Thar desert respectively. Indian buffalo, cow, ox, Neelgay, Horse, Chousinga small deer, gazel, dogs and the deer of various species and the several other animals are found in India. Many species of monkeys are also found here.

India is the only country where both lion and tigers are found. The Gir forest of Gujarat is the natrual habitat of Indian lions.The tigers are found in the forests of MP and Jharkhand, Sundervan of west Bengal and in the Himalayan regions too. The leopard is also a member of cat family. They are important among the animals of prey.

The animals of Himalayan regions are adopted to the harsh climate which can survive in extreme cold. Yaks are found in the snowy heights of Laddakh, its a bull like creature with tufted horns. Its weight is about 1 ton. Tibeton stag, blue sheep, wild sheep and Kiyang (Tibetan wild ass) too are found here. Red pandas are found occasionally in some parts. Turtiles, crocodiles and aligators are found in rivers. lakes and marine areas. The aligator is a representative of crocodile species found only in India.

Many colourful birds are found in India. peacock, duck, myna, cranes, eagles, owls, crows, & doves are some of the species inhabit in the forests and wetlands of the nation.

Natural Vegetation of Rajasthan :

In an area of about 34,610 km there is a variety of vegetation found in Rajasthan. It accounts for 10.22% of the total area of state. In Rajasthan the densly forested cover area is just 3.83 percent. The per capita forest area is just 0.03 hectares in Rajasthan which is far less than the 0.13 hectares per capita forest of whole India. In Rajasthan a vast difference is found in the geographical distribution of forests. The vegetation in the state is influenced by the climate, soil, land position, and the geological history. Three types of natural vegetation forest, grass and desert flora is found here. Following is the classification and distribution of forests in the state-

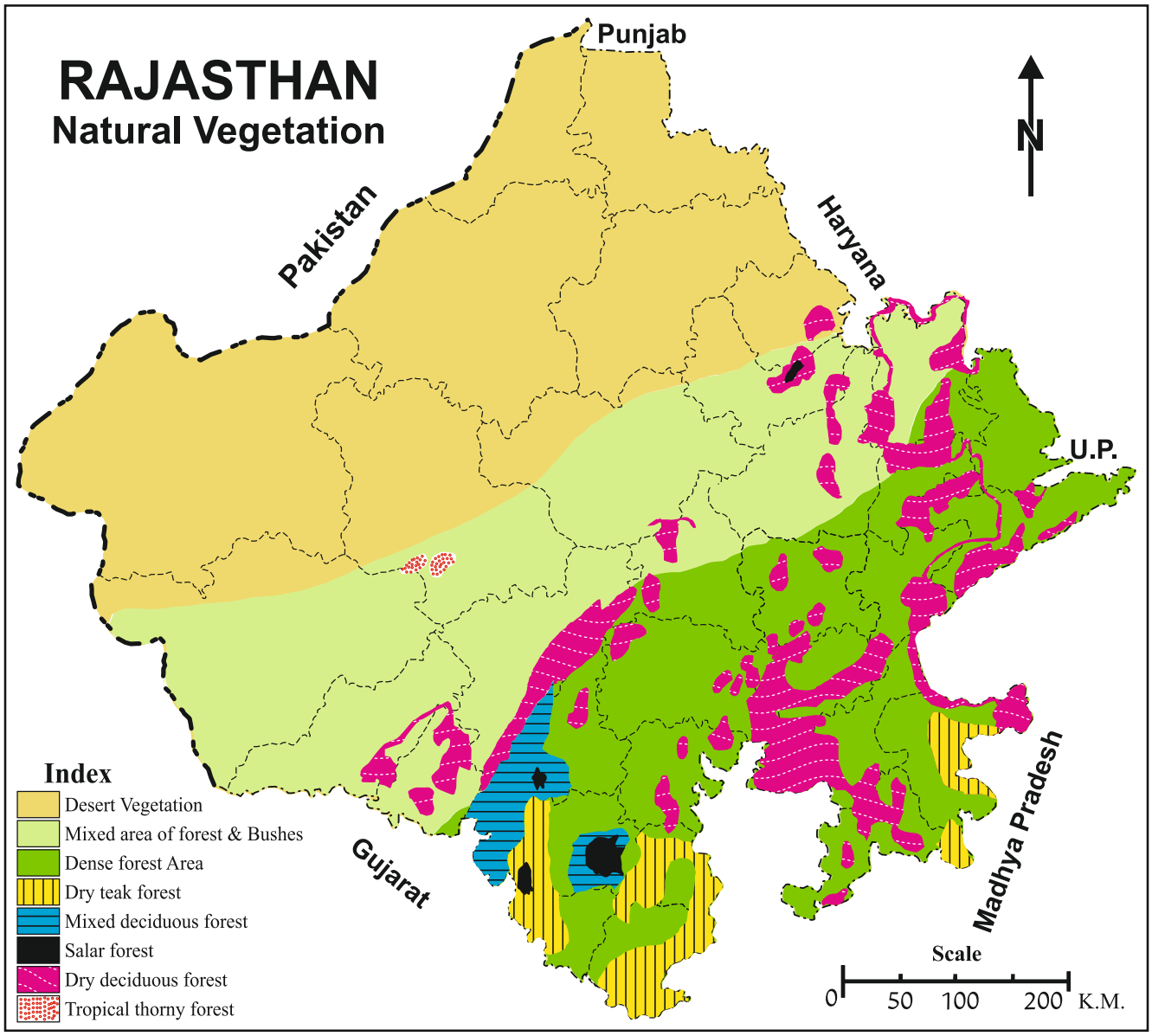
Types of forests :

Due to the land pattern, climate and variation of soil following types of forest are found in Rajasthan.

1. Tropical Thorn Forests.
2. Tropical Dry Deciduous Forest and
3. Sub Tropical Montane forests.

(1) Tropical Thorn Forests : This type of forests are found in dry and semi-arid regions. This type of vegetation is found in Jaisalmer, Barmer, Pali, Bikaner, Churu, Nagaur, Sikar, Jhunjhunu districts etc. Trees of these forests are very small in size. Plethora of bushes are also found there. Forests of dry climate like this, the trees of khejri, Rohira, Bair, Kair, Thor etcc and bushes grow. The roots of these trees and bushes are deep and the leaves are barbed. Due to the high utility of "khejri' tree in the desert it is called as the 'Kalpvraksha' of desert.

Several types of bushes are found in these forests. Fog, Akada, Kair, Lana, Arna and Jharber are the chief bushes of this region. Apart from that



Map 15.2 : Natural Vegetation in Rajasthan

sevaral types of grass is also found in this area. The Sevan and Dhaman grases are very well known among them. Dhaman grass is very useful for dairy animals while the Sevan grass is also very nutritious for anmials.

(2) Tropical/dry Deciduous Forests : These forests have a large extension in Rajasthan. They are found into 50 to 100 cms rainfall areas.

These forests are found abundantly in the central. southern and south eastern parts of Rajasthan. Due to the variety of trees these forests have several sub-types as -

(i) Dry teak forests : These forest are found at the height of 250 to 450 meters. These forest are named after teak trees due to the abundance of them. Udaipur, Dungerpur, Jhalawar, Chitorgarh and Baran districts are enclosed with this kind of forests. About 50 to 75% of teak is obtained from these forests. In addition the trees like tendu, Dhavada Gurjan, Gondal, Siris, Haldi, Khair, semal, Reetha, Baheda and Imali are also found here.

The teak can't bear extreme cold and frost, so these types of trees are mostly found in southern parts of Rajasthan. The Sagwan wood is very useful for timber work and making tools of agriculture.

(ii) Salar forests : These forests are found in hilly areas with the altitude of 450 meters. In Rajasthan these forets are extended in the districts of Udaipur, Rajsamand, Chitorgarh, Sirohi, Pali, Ajmer , Jaipur, Alwar and Siker. Salar, Dhok Kathira and Dhawad are the chief trees of these forests. Its wood is used for making packing boxes. These forest are named Salar forests due to the exuberance of Salar trees.

(iii) Bamboo forests : Due to plethora of Banmboo trees these woods are named as bamboo forests. These woods have their extension in the lavish rainy areas of Rajasthan. In Rajasthan these forests are extended in the district of Banswara, Chitorgarh, Udaipur, Baran, Kota and Sirohi. The district Banswara is named only after the abundance of ''Baans'' (Bamboo) trees. Along with bamboo trees these forest also have Dhakada, Sagwan and Dhokada trees.

(iv) Dhokra forests : Dhokra forests are found in a vast area of Rajasthan. Apart from desert areas the geographical environment of all regions in Rajasthan is favourable to these forests. That's why the expansion of these forests is predominant in Rajasthan. These forest are found mostly at the altitudes ranging 240 to 760 meters in Rajasthan. They are extended in Kota, Bundi, Sawai Madhopur, Jaipur, Alwar, Ajmer, Udaipur, Rajsamand and Chittorgarh districts. In Rajasthan Dhokra is known as "Dhok' also. These forests are included in the forest chief resources of the Rajasthan. Along with 'Dhok' the trees like arunj, Khair, Khirani, Salar, Gondal are also found in these forests. Palash (Butea frondosa) is also found with Dhok abundantly in foot hill areas. Jhadber and Adoosa are also found some where. The timber of Dhok is very durable. Coal is made by burning it.

(v) Palash Forests : These forests are spread in those areas where the surface is stony and hard. They are found abundanty amongst hills where plateau land is available. These forests are also found in the plains which are pebbled having less amount of soil relatively. They are stretched in Alwar, Ajmer, Sirohi, Udaipur, Pali, Rajsamand and Chitorgarh districts.

(vi) Forests of Khair : Expansion of these forests lies is the southern highlands of Rajasthan. It covers the regions of Jhalawar, Kota, Baran, Chittorgarh and Sawaimadhopur districts. Along with Khair the trees like Ber, Dhokada and Aroonj are also found in these forests.

(vii) Babool forests : These forests are found in Ganganagar, Bikaner, Nagaur, Jalaur, Alwar and Bharatpur destrict. Regions having less moisture in the soil contains less numbers of these trees. Their density increases in the regions having higher moisture. The trees like Neem, Hingota, Arunj, Kair and Jhadber are also found with Babool in these woods.

(viii) Mixed Autumn forest : These forests are found in the southern hilly regions of Rajasthan.

Sirohi, Udaipur, Rajsamand, Chittorgarh, Kota and Baran district hold the large expansion of these forests. These forests do not have a primacy of any single kind of tree. All kind of trees are found there. Aamla, Shisham (Rose wood) Salar, Tendu, Amaltash, (Cassia fistual) Rehan, Karunj, Gooler, Jamun, Arjuna etc. are the most common trees found in these forests.

3. Sub-tropical Mountane forests : This type of forests are found only in Mount Abu region. Evergreen and semi everygreen vegetation is found in these forests. Here the trees are found profusely dense, so greenery is available permanently. Mango. Bamboo, Neem Sagwan etc. trees are found in these forests. Less than half percent part of the total forest area of Rajasthan has this type of forests.

Forest Policy and Conservation :

Forest is the base of life Many adverse effects like soil erosion, expansion of deserts, floods, increasing in wasteland abnormal climate, draught, plunging level of ground water scarcity of wild animals, environmental pollution etc. can be seen on the climate and topograply of our country due to indiscriminate cutting of forests. Forests are being cut in the name of development, settlement, the needs of ever increasing population, growing industrilization and agricultrue. To fullfil these increasing needs and to refrain from the environmental disasters the protection of forests is much needed.

The first forest policy in India (Bharat) was persued in 1884. According to the new forest policy declared after independence on 31 May 1954, the 33 percent of total land mass should be covered by forests. New forest policy in our country was declared in 1988. Envriornmental stability , safety of natrual heritages like flora and fauna and fulfillment of the basic needs of common people were the three goals stated in it. Several plans and programmes are being conducted the direction of forest conservation by the government. Social forestry plan, establishment of national parks and sanctuaries etc. are the important efforts being made in this direction.

Efforts are being made by forests research center Dehradoon and Central Arid zone research Insstitue (CAZRI) Jodhpur to expand forest areas and also to control the expansion of desert land. Conservation of forests can not be done only by government efforts. The awareness and active participation of common people too is needed.

Looking at the importance and development of forests, various forestery awards are given by the government of Rajasthan for the developement of forests under social forestry, Arawali plantation and on various forest conservation programmes. They are- Vaniki Pandit Award, Vriskha Mitra Award etc.

Protection of wild life :

Due to the mass cutting of forests wild animals are dwindling and those which have been survived are facing acute problem of food and habitat. Their conservation is necessary. Affection towards wild animals has an integral part of Indian culture. A description is found about the conservation of wild animals and a ban on hunting in an inscription of Indian emperor Ashoka the great.

Following measures should be taken for the protection of wild animals.

1. Complete ban on hunting.
2. Availability of natural habitat.
3. Forming laws on wild life protection and their strict implementation.
4. Establishment of National parks and wild life sancturies with their proper management.
5. Spreading public awarness and ensuring public participation.

Biosphere Reserved Areas :

15 biosphere reserve areas have been established in our country. They are Nanda Devi, Sundervan, Manas, Nokrek Mannar bay, Nilgiri, Simlipal, Namdafa, Thar desrert, Uttarkahand, Small Runn of Kuchh, Kanha, Northern Andaman Greater Nicobar and Kaziranga.

National Parks and Sanctuaries :

For the protection of wild life in India, 565 wild life sanctuaries and 89 National parks have been established so far. Two national parks of the country have been declared world heritages for the first time. They are Kaziranga (Asam) and Keola dev (Rajasthan). Prominent natioanl parks of the country are- Jim Corbet (Uttarakhand) Kanah (MP), Kazirang (Asam), Bandipur (Karnataka) Palamoo (Bihar) Dachigam (J&K) Sunder van (W.B) Shant Ghati (Kerala) Nandan Kanan (Orisa) Keoladev (Rajasthan) Kaibul Lumjao (Manipur) Annamalai (Tamilnadu). Speical projects are being run for various endangered species like Tiger, elephant, Gir lion, Crocodile, Rhinoceros Muskdeer etc.

Wild life and Sanctuaries of Rajashtan :

Animals living in natural habitat are called wild animals. Wild animals like Tiger, Panther, Cheeta Sambar, Chinkara, Black buck are found in our state. Chinkara is the state animal. There are 22 wild life sanctuaries in the state. Ranthambore national park, Sawai Madhopur and Keola dev national park in Bharatpur are the national parks situated in Rajasthan.

National desert park Jaisalmer, Sariska sanctuary Alwar and Mukundra Hills sanctuary Kota are Proposed as national parks. Ranthambore national park and Sariska sanctuary are made for Tiger conservation. Keoladev national park is incldued in the list of world heritage. It has been famous for Siberian Crane. Their appearnace has been dwindling now a days. Along with wild animals national desert park Jaisalmer is famous for conservation of fossils. Huge fossils of Aakal Region are the center of attraction here for the tourists.

Kurjan (Domicile crane) is a popular migratory bird of folk literature. Its main center is at Khichan (Jodhpur) There are 33 non hunting prohibted areas declared in the state. The bilogical park of the state is situated in Nahargarh (Jaipur). Godawan is the state bird of Rajasthan which is rarely found now a days in its original natural habitalt in western Rajasthan. For the conservation of crocodile the Chambal national crocodile sanctuary is made. Major sanctuaries of the state are Talchhapper (churu) Ramgadh vishdhari (Bundi), Kumbhalgadh and Sajjan garh (Udaipur), Mount Abu (Sirohi) Keoladev (Karauli), Sitamata and Bhensroadgadh (Chittor), Bandh Baretha (Bharatpur) Todgarh- Rawali (Ajmer) Jamawa Ramgarh (Jaipur), Ramsagar (Dholpur) etc.

Khejarli Sacrifice :

The Khejali sacrifice of Rajasthan is a symbol of awareness towards environment. 'Khejali tree is the 'Kalpvriksha' of Thar''. On 28th August 1730 Maharaja of Jodhpur ordered to cut down the Khajadi trees in Khejadli village but the residents strongly apposed it. This agitation was led by Smt. Amrita Devi. She challenged the tree cutters with the slogan ''Jo Sir sante Roonkh rahe to bhi sasto Jaan." (It would be inexpensive if a tree is saved at the cost of our head)

Saying this she stuck to the tree and sacrificed her life for the sake of trees. A total of 363 (294 men and 69 women) sacrificed their lives in khejadli. There fore 21st september is obseved as environemnt day in India. A memorial is built at Khejardli in the memory of those immortal people, where a tree Martyr fair is organisd every year. To keep their memory intact, Amrita Devi Krishna Mriga Sanctuary has been delveloped in Jodhpur. In the field of environmental conservation and awarness Amrita Devi memorial award is given by the state government every year.

Conservation of Bio-diversity :

The multiple diversity of domestic and wild flora and fauna found in a certain region is called Bio-diversity. Our country is very rich in biodiversity. About 40% part of the total 15 lakh biodiversities of the world is found in India. In India about 81000 animals and 45000 plant species have been identified so far. Animals and plants are very useful from economic point of view.

Bio-diversity plays an important role in the

formation and Maintenance of the Nature. The destruction of any sort of plant or animal might be dangerous for the nature and the environment. Biodiversity has been much destroyed largely due to the formation of big dams industrilization, intensive farming and due to the need of food and shelter for the increasing population. Animals and Plants make an environmental equilibirium. The environmental problems like destruction of biodiversity cracking of the ozone layer, rise in the temperature of atmosphere due to green house effect etc are getting increased. For this, International union for the conservation of nature (IUCN) was made. Its headquarter is in Switzerland. Work is also being done by the world wide found (WWF) for nature in this direction.

The biodiversity of our country must be saved in veiw of the sustainable development. Conserving them is the need of the hour. For the conservation of biodiversity various National parks, wild life sanctuaries, biosphere reserves are established and many tiger projects are being run. Some research institutes for this purpose are also working. Indian Forest Research Institute Dehradoon, Indian Botanical Garden Kolkata, Ecological Research Institute Bengalore, National environmental Engineering Institute Nagpur etc are among them.

Environmental Awareness :

In India since the Vaidik period an awareness regarding the environment is existed. Showing respect and giving imporance to various environmental factors is also explained in different mythological books with the talks of conserving them Indian sages has considerd the whole natural powers as deities. The sun, water vegetations, air and the space are considerd as the base elements of our body. The 'Bhumisukt' in Atharvaveda is the first written document about environmental awarness. The Purity of water is described in Rigveda and to honour all the natrual elements as deities is described in Yajurveda. Peace and nobility in all space earth, water, vegetation and universe is described in the 'Shanit Path' (Recitation for peace) of Vaidik Prayer. Planting a single tree is considered as equal to rearing of 100 sons in Vedas. The earth is considered adorable like a mother in our national song Vandematarm.

Our cultrue is also called the Aranya Sanskriti The meaning behind this perticular notion is attached to the prosperous environment with green trees and dense forests. Deep gratitude towards the trees has been shown in Mahabharat and Ramayana too. Cutting of trees is termed as crime in Vishnu Dharmasutra, Skund Purana and in yagyvalkya smriti and there is also a provision of punishment for tree cutters.

We follow a Vaidik traditon for environment, that a human being is born into environment, lives and dies in the same environment. Awarness towards environment is extremely essential at present time, because the problem of global warming has been emerged due to the pollution of environment.

At present awareness regarding environment and environment education is necessary.

The Khejadli agitation, chipko movement, Appiko movement, Shant ghati, movement and Save Narmada movement all are the indications of awareness towards environment in our country. 29 points of Bishnoi Society found in Rajasthan are important rules for the conservation of environment.

Soils of India

Soil has a very important role in the economic life of every nation. It has more importance in the agrarian nation like India, because about 60% people are earning their livelihood from agriculture. Soil is a layer of earth which is formed by the disintegration and fragmentation of rocks and also by the decompositon of bio wastes. It keeps the capacity to grow plants and trees. Its formation and quality depend upon the parent rocks, climate, vegitation, relief and time. According to the formation process the soil is found in two kinds spatial and displaced. When the rocks do not move from their root place due to seasonal effects or move

a little then the soil made by this process is called spatial soil. This soil is found in South Indian plateau. This type of soil contains the properties of those rocks, at local level, from which they are made. This is the reason that at some places why the soil made by granular converted rocks of that place is pebbled, large, granular, red coloured and non fertile. The place where the soil is formed by the disintegration of lava or slag is always black and fertile.

When the soil made by disintegration of rocks due to the effects of river, glacier wind etc. leaves its original place and migrates far off places, it is called the displaced soil. The soils found at nothern, central and coastal plains of India are of such type. These soils are very fertile.

India is a vast country having varied physical structure, so it is natural that different kinds of soils are found here. From the economic point of view its chief utility is in growing crops. Unit of tillage, irrigation of land, selection of proper crops and farming system are considered a lot in growing the crops, which depend upon the quality of the soil. According to the composition and merits Indian soils are classified into 8 categories. Out of these description 6 main type is as following-

1. Alluvial Soil :

The huge plains of India with coastal plains are formed by allurial soil. This alluvial soil is brought and deposited by rivers. This soil is spread over about 45.6% of the total area of India. According to the geographical circumstances it can be divided into 3 parts.

(a) Older alluvial soil : It is found in the upper parts of flood affected regions where the flood water can not reach. These regions are known as ''Bangar'' Two crops are grown by intensive farming in this soil every year It needs more irrigation.

(b) Newer Alluvial soil : This new alluvial soil is found at the places where flood water can reach. It is called new alluvial because a new layer of alluvial is deposited every year. This new alluvial area is called ''Khadar'' The soil of khadar is very fertile and need no irrigation.

(c) Newest Alluvial Soil : It is found in the delta region of Ganga and Brahmputra. It contains zinc magnessium, Potash, Phosphorous and fossils. It is very useful for farming. This soil is also found in coastal plains.

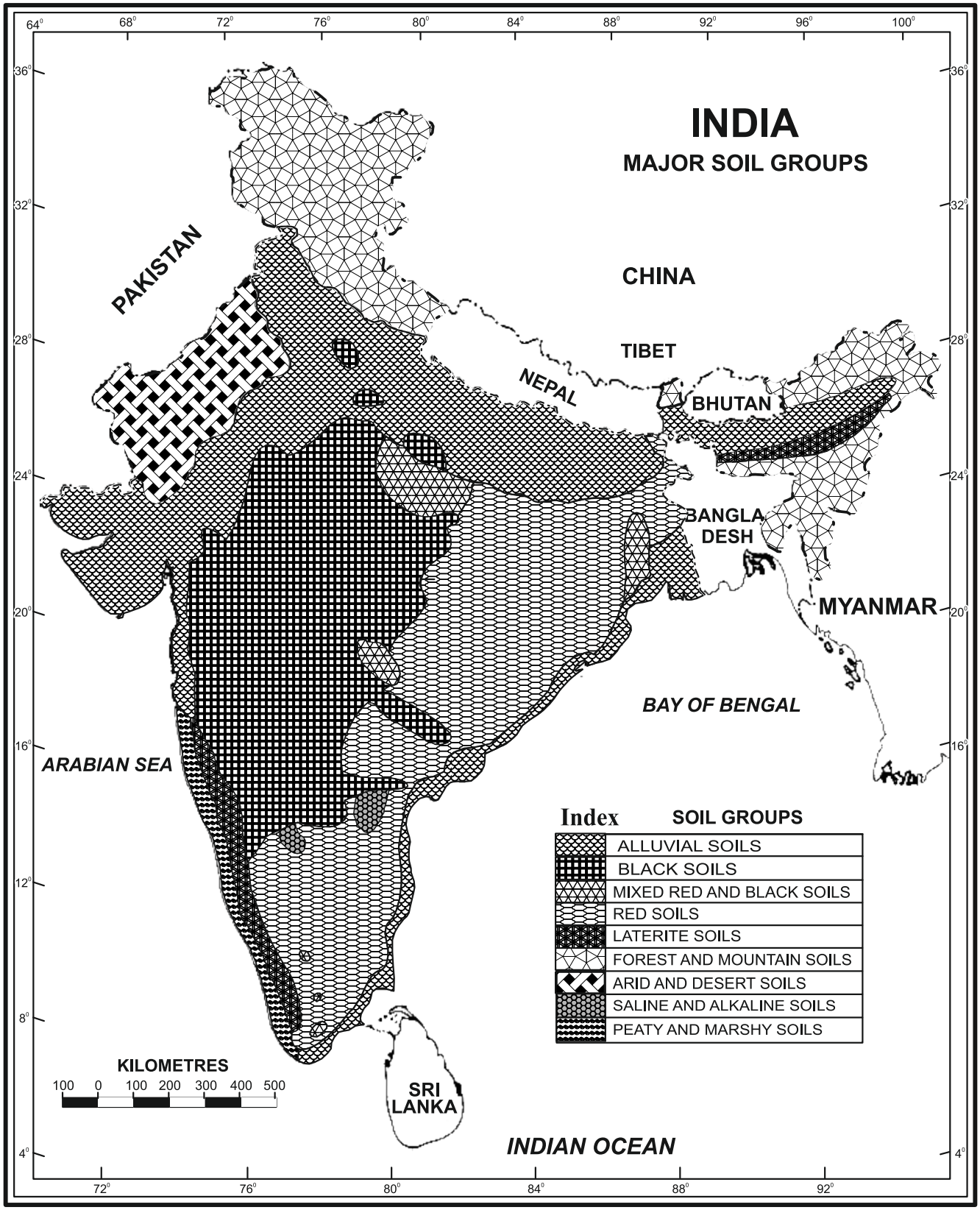
The regions having this kind of soil are generally plains where making of canals, digging wells and farming are very easy. It holds more moisture for a long time. It is a brownish clay made of fine granules where growing of crops and feeding of plants are easy. It contains more humus (vegetative elements) because many articles get mixed in the soil after decomposing in the water. It is renewed every year by the fresh layer of silt brought by the rivers. So there is less need to get it manured. It is good to use small amount of nitrogenos fertilizers to maintain nitrogen level in the soil. These soils are fertile because these are transported soil.

2. Black or Lava Soil :

This soil is found in the Lava region (Maharashtra, Southern of part Madhya Pradesh, western part of Andhra Pradesh and Northern part of Karnataka, Gujrat and South eastern Rajasthan) of south India. This soil is spread over about 16.6% of the total area of India. It has the capacity to hold humidity in it. Due to their Lava origin it they keeps more amount of mineral iron and Aluminium. It holds enough potash and lime but less Phosphorus and Nitrogen. It has much fertility and it is much appropriate for cotton farming. So it is named as black soil of cotton. This soil is also called as Regar. It needs little irrigation and less manure. It becomes hard after drying and cracks develop in it. In Tapti, Godawari and Krishna river valleys, its layers are as deep as seven meters, now groundnut and sugarcane are being cultivated in it and the production has increased due to irrigation fecilities.

3. Red Soil :

This soil is found in high land areas and it has pores in it. It has limited capacity to hold enough



Map 15.3 : Major Soil Groups in India

humidity. So it needs irrigation. It is not fertile soil. But in plain areas these soils are of thick layer, dark colour and moderately fetile and its productivity can be increased by using manure. It is brown and red in colour, because glut of the iron part in it, Pebbles are also found in it. This soil lacks in Nitrogen, Phosphores and also in lime. It is found more deep in river valleys. This soil needs irrigation frequently. It is mostly found in Chota Nagpur, Orrisa, Andhra Pradesh, Tamilandu and Karnataka.

4. Laterite Soil :

This soil is red in colour like baked bricks. It has too much pebbles.

It is made of fission of the old rocks. It contains much iron and aluminium but lacks in phosphorous, nitrogen and potash. It is found in the heavy rainfall receiving areas with high temperatures. Silica, chemical salt and fine fertile particles drain away due to heavy rain. The fields of this soil are barren. It becomes hard like stones after drying up. This soil is found chiefly in the western Ghat area. A Narrow strip of this soil is found from the edge of eastern Ghat to Rajmahal hills and from west Bengal to Assam. Tea farming is done a lot in this soil. Trees also grow some where in this soil from which the timber is obtained.

5. Sandy Soil :

This soil is found in westrn Rajasthan, Sourastra and in the desert land of kachha. It contains elements of salt very much and lacks nitrogen and humus. Due to being dry and porous it is easily displaced by winds at regular intervals. It proves fertile if provided irrigation facility. The prosperity of agricultrue in Hanumangarh, Ganganagar and Bikaner ratifies this fact. Getting inspired by the fact, the work on Indira Gandhi canal project is on top gear now. This canal has reached Mohangarh near Jaisalmer.

6. Montane Soil :

This soil is found in the Himalayan region. Due to undeveloped state, it contains large particles with pebbles and stones. That is why it is called unripe soil. It lacks potash, phosphorus and lime but have enough humus contents. This soil is acidic in nature. It is found in thick layers at some places and tea and potatoes are grown there. In the soil with fine particles paddy farming is done at terrace farms. Grasslands are found somewhere on the slopes with fertile soil.

Soils of Rajasthan :

Soil is the most valuable gift bestowed upon us by the nature. It is a most valuable property of farmer. Total agriculture production depends upon it. Rajasthan is an agriculture state and along with this animal husbandry is a complementary profession. So the importance of soils is much more.

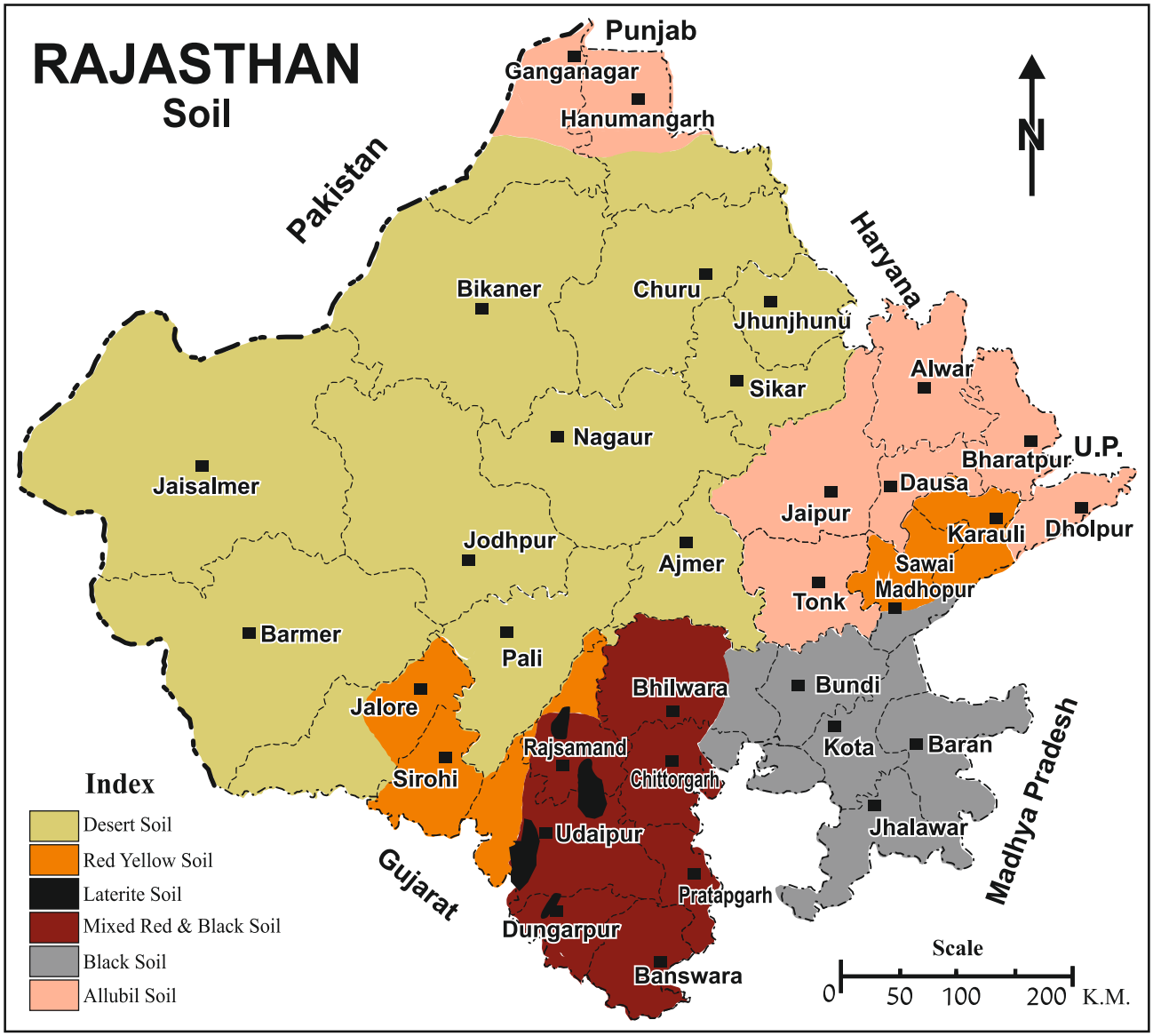
Different types of soils are born out due to the of diversity in natural environment. Factors like parent matter, climate, natural vegetation and time affect the formation of soil. Parental matter, water, air and humus are the four chief ingredients of soil. The soil is a mixture of solid, liquid and gaseus matter which is formed due to decay of rocks, climatic effects, plants and interworking of countless bacterium.

Types of the Soil :

1. Desert Soil : This soil is found in western Rajsthan. It is found in almost all areas of Jalore, Barmer, Jaisalmer, Jodhpur, Bikaner, Churu, Jhunjhunu, Nagaur etc. This soil is less fertile. Volatility in temperatures and natural decay are the chief constructive elements of it.

This soil is displaced by winds. It lacks in fertility and keeps more salinity. It can not absorb and hold the water much.

2. Red Yellow Soil : This type of soil is found in Sawai Madhopur, Sirohi, Rajsamand, Udaipur and Bhilwara district. This soil lacks in fertile elements. This soil is formed by the fission of granite shist and nees rocks. It lacks in lime and Nitrogen. In colour it is red and yellow due to the presence of iron particles. It is suitable for the farming of groundnut and cotton.



Map 15.4 : Major Soil Groups in Rajasthan

3. Laterite Soil : This soil is found in Dungarpur, central and southern parts of Udaipur and in Rajsamand districts.

It is formed by the crystalline and meta morphic rocks. It lacks in nitrogen and phosphorus. It looks red due to the presence of iron. Crops like maize, rice and sugarcane are grown in it.

4. Mixed Red and Black Soil : This soil is found in the district of Banswara, eastern Udaipur, Dungarpur, Chittorgarh and Bhilwara. It lacks in lime, nitrogen, and phosphorus but holds enough quantity of Potash. This soil is full of Cheeka. It is fertile. The farming of cotton, sugarcane, maize is performed in it.

5. Black Soil : This soil is found in the south eastern district of Kota, Bundi, Baran and Jhalawar. It is a Cheeka dominated soil. It contains enough quantity of calcuim and Potash but lacks in Nitrogen. This is a fertile soil on which commercial crops like Sugarcane, Coriander, Rice and Soyabean provide good yields.

6. Alluvial Soil : This Soil is found in the North and eastern districts of our state like Hanumangarh, Ganga nagar Alwar, Bharatpur, Dholpur, Karauli,

Sawaimadhopur, Dausa, Jaipur and in Tonk. It holds light brown red colour and contains a sandy loam texture. It is a fertile soil. This soil contains enough quantity of lime, phosphorous, Potash and Iron but lacks in Nitrogen. This soil is very useful for the production of wheat, Mustard, cotton and Tabacco.

Important Points

1. The Natural vegetation of India can be divided into three parts forest, grass and bushes.
2. Indian forests are divided into evergreen forest, monsoon forest, dry thorn forest, desert, tidal and montane forests.
3. The abundance of the diversity of wild life and vegetation found in a state is called bio-diveristy.
4. Soil is formed due to fission and disintigration of rocks along with the mixing of rotten biological remains of organisms.
5. Black soil (Regar soil) is useful for cultivation of cotton, groundnut and sugar cane.
6. Keoladev National Park is included into the world heritage list.
7. Chinkara and Godavan (The great Indian Bustard) are declared as the state animal and state bird respectively.
8. 'Khejari' (Prosopis cineraria) is called as the 'Kalp vriksha' of Rajashthan.

Objective Type Questions :

1. According to the national forest policy, what percentage of geogrphical area in the country should be covered by the forest ?

   (a) 22% (b) 33%

   (c) 10% (d) 20%

2. In which areas of annual rainfall, the evergreen forests are found ?

   (a) 100 cm. (b) 50 cm

   (c) 200 cm (d) 100 to 150 cm

3. Indian institute of forest Research is situated in-

   (a) Jaipur (b) Masoori

   (c) Nagpur (d) Dehradoon

4. Who led the Khejarli movement ?

   (a) Amrita Devi (b) Ramo Ji

   (c) Khejali Devi (d) All are correct

5. Which soil is most suitable for cotton cultivation in India ?

   (a) Hilly (b) Black

   (c) Red (d) Letarite

6. The black soil in India is -

   (a) Displaced (b) Swampy

   (c) Lava created (d) Created by landslide

Very Short Answer Type Questions :

1. Name two regions of tidal forests.
2. How many series of forests have been described according to the constitution of India?
3. Where are evergreen forests found in Rajasthan?
4. What is Biodiversity?

Short Answer Type Qeustions :

1. What are the reasons for destruction of bio-diversity?
2. Write various measures of wild life conservation.
3. Explain the points mentioned for enivormental awareness.
4. Write briefly about the major national parks and sancturies of Rajasthan .

Eassy Type Questions :

1. Describe the various types of forests and their conservation in India.

2. Describe various types of forests and wild life in Rajasthan.

3. Briefly discuss the soils of Rajasthan.

Mark in the map :

1. Show regions of evergreen and tidal forests in the map of India.

Answers to the objective type Questions:

1. (b) 2. (c) 3. (d)

4. (a) 5. (b) 6. (c)

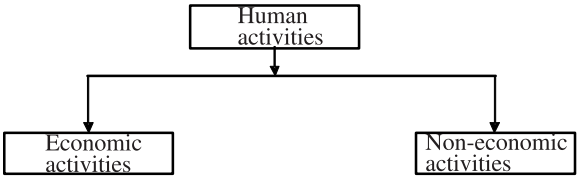
Chapter-16

Economics and Economy

1. Meaning of Economics-

Human needs are unlimited but the resources available to fulfil the needs are limited. To fulfil his needs, a man has to perform various economic and non-economic activities. The science which studies the economic activities of a society is known as Economics. In other words, Economics is the study of the economic activities of a man.

During his lifetime from birth to death a person performs various activities in his daily life from morning to night. All these human activities can be divided into two parts-



A) Economic activities -

All these activities performed by human which can be measured in Money are called economic activities. Farming by a farmer, Service rendered by a labourer in an industry, teacher teaching in a class, person working in an office etc. all are economic activities which are performed to earn livelihood.

According to the subject matter of economics the main economic activities can be classfied as follows.

I. Production -

The tranformation of raw material into manufactured goods which can fullfil human wants is called production. In other words production is the creation of utility. A person producing goods and services with the aim of earning profit is called a producer, for example a farmer doing farming. In this example the farmer is a producer and farming is production.

II. Consumption -

The use of goods and services to directly satisfy human wants is known as consumption, the person consuming goods and services to satisfy his wants is called a consumer. For example, the purchase of a football by sachin to play. In this example sachin is a consumer and act of purchasing a football is consumption.

III. Exchange -

The act of exchanging goods and services produced by a person with the goods and services of another person is known as Exchange in economics. In other words the buying and selling of goods and services in a market by consumers and producers is called exchange. A person rendering his services in a company and receiving remuneration in return, in the same way a person buying wheat from the market and paying the price for it etc. are examples of Exchange.

IV. Distribution -

A producer needs various factors of production to produce goods and services. There are five factors of production - land, capital, labour, management and entrepreneur. Production is possible with the joint and collective efforts. All factors of production the division of production among all factors of production is called Distribution. In other words the division of revenue received by the exchange of production among various factors of production is called Distribution.

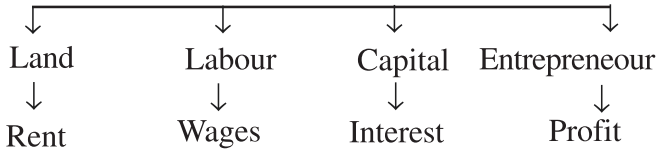
B) Non-economic activities

The activities inspired by love, affection, social and religious duties, physical needs, patriotism etc. are all non-economic activities. These types of activities are not valued in money. For example children playing, working of a housewife for her family, prayers in workship places, Contribution by a person in social work.

2. Factors of Production

Production is an important economic activity. The production of a goods undergo various stages. Various factors of productions are required in the execution of production process. The quantity of production depends upon the quanity of means of production used. We can classify these factors of productions as follows-

Means of production and their rewards



A) Land -

According to tranditional view, land is a free gift of nature. In economics 'Land' does not refer only to soil or surface of earth. In it besides landsurface natural resources, climate, vegetation. mountains, water, mines etc. are all included. From view point of availability, the supply of land is fixed land is an immovable factor of production as it cannot be transferred from one place to another. According to its fertility and use land is of different category. The remuneration given to the owner for the use of land in process of production is known as rent.

B) Labour

Labour is the amount of physical and mental effort done to produce goods and services. The efforts done with the aim of love, compassion or entertainment are not considered as labour in economics. Only the effort done to produce some goods and services with the hope of receiving economic return is considered to be labour. For eg. the service rendered by housewife is not considered as labour while that of a servant is labour. It is the only factor of production which is directly related to human while the other factors are not directly related. Labour is a movable factor. All labour is not productive. It is not necessary that all labour results in production as the desired result is not always achieved in a production process, the remuneration received by a labourer for his labour is called wages.

C) Capital

All goods and human qualifications which are useful in production of goods and services and which have monetary value are called wealth. Some portion of wealth lies unused white some is used to produce more wealth. Capital is that part of human wealth which is used to produce more wealth. Capital is a part of production which is acquired by human by using it along with natural resources. Capital is also known as human equipment of production. Machine, equipments, factories, means of transport are examples of capital.

D) Entrepreneur

The person organising land, labour and capital in production function is called an entrepreneur An entrepreneur determines the appropriate ratio of all the factors in production process. He bears all the risk in a production process. Production is not possible without taking risk thus. The work of entrepreneur is to initiate the production process and to bear the risk. He is also called as manager and organiser. The remuneration of an entrepreneur is that part of production which is left after paying all other factors of production. It is called profits but it is not fixed. An entrepreneur can both earn profit or can bear loss.

3. Economy

In every country a person is engaged in various types of economic activities to earn his livelihood whether it is a farmer or a labourer, industrialist or a shopkeeper, teacher or a doctor all are working to earn one's livelihood. There is a need of a well organised system or an organisation for the proper execution of all the economic activites performed by various economic groups. Such a system or an organisation is known as economy. To conclude it can be said that a system or an organisation by which people earn their livelihood is called an economy.

Economy is structure wherein mutual coperation or understanding is developed amongst the producers of various goods. It is a system in which the economic activities like production, consumption, Exchange, and distribution take place continuously. Generally it can be said that a system under which the economic activities of a particular area are carried

on is called an economy . For eg. sugar is produced by sugar mill, for the production of sugar a producer gets sugarcane from a farmer, machines and equipments from industries and electricity from power plants. Means of transports (trains, trucks, ships etc) are needed to transport the produced sugar to different parts of the country. Thus his structure of mutual co-operation and understanding between different producers for the production of sugar is an economy.

The economy of your village or town

Sutdy of the economic activities of all residents of the whole village or town.

The economy of Rajasthan

The study of the economic activities of the residents of Rajasthan.

The economy of India

The study of the economic activities of the residents of the whole country.

4. Types of Economy

Production, Consumption, Exchange, Distribution and other economic activities of a country depend upon the form of an economy. What will be the amount of interference of the state in conducting the economic activities in a country? what will be the aim of conducting economic activities? etc. are the bases on which we can divide the economies of the world in three following group

A) Capitalistic economy
B) Socialistic economy
C) Mixed economy

A) Capitalistic Economy

Meaning - By a capitalistic economy we mean by such economy where the factors of production are owned and controlled by private individuals. The aim of the economic activities is private welfare and profit. The government does not interfere in the conducting of economic activities.

Capitalistic economy is also known as 'open market economy', Market economy' and open economy'. This type of economy originated between 1760 to 1820 during industrial revolution. Today capitalistic economy cannot be found in its pure form in any of the worlds economies but on basis of conduction and control of economic activities, the economies of united states of America, Germany, Canada, Itlay, Japan, France, Australia etc. are called capitalistic economy.

Features of Capitalistic Economy

The features of this economy are as follows -

(i) Right of Private property -

All the means of production like land, mines, factories etc. under private ownership the owner of these means are free to use them according to his wish. People are free to keep, increase and use the property.

(ii) Independence of consumers choice -

In capitalistic economy a consumer is a sovereign i.e. a producer produces according to the expenditure and wish of a consumer. This is called as consumer sovereignity. In this economy a consumer is free to spend his income. A consumer is called 'King of Market' as he enjoys the superme position in this economic system.

(iii) Freedom of entrepreneurship -

Every Person can perform any economic activity according to his will. He has full freedom to produce, select a technique and establish industry. It is also called as an 'free entrepreneurship economy' due to no interference of government.

(iv) Competition -

In a capitalistic economy producers compete to sell their products and consumers compete to buy goods to fulfil their demands. This increases the efficiency of the market. Advertisement, gifts, decrease in prices etc. methods are adopted for competition.

(v) Private welfare and profit -

In a capitalistic economy every person takes a decision to work or produce a good keeping profit motive in mind i.e. what and how much will be the profit in doing a work? In the same way a consumer too consumes goods for private welfare.

(vi) Class Struggle -

In a capitalistic economy society is divided into two classes. On one side there are resourceful rich people called capitalist and on other side is the deprived class called labourers. The aim of increasing profit and aim of labourers to avoid being exploited give birth to class struggle.

(vii) Inequality of income -

The gulf between rich and poor is increasing due to inequal distribution of property.

We can analyse capitalist economy as follows-

A) Merits

(i) Increase in production capacity and efficiency
(ii) More satisfaction to consumers
(iii) Optimum use of resources
(iv) Development of technology
(v) Increase in the living standards
(vi) Economic liberty
(vii) Development of research

B) Demerits

(i) Disparity of income and property
(ii) Regional inequalities
(iii) Economic instability
(iv) Rise of monopolies
(v) Misuse of production resources
(vi) Unlimited and unethical conusmption
(vii) Downfall of moral values

B. Socialistic Economy

Meaning - Socialistic economy means such economy where the whole society owns the means of production through the goverment and all economic activities are controlled by a central authority with the motive of collective welfare.

Socialistic economy is also called as 'equal economy' or 'Centrally planned Economy'

The socialistic economy originated after the Russian revolution of 1917, which was influenced by socialism developed by Karl Marx.

After Russia, Czechoslovakia, Bulgaria, China, Yugoslavia, Vietnam etc. adopted this economic system. But at present all other countries except China and North Korea have abondoned this system.

Features of socialistic Economy

The important features of socialistic economy are as follows-

(i) Collective ownership of Resources -

In this economy the physical means of production i.e. Land, forest, factories, capital, mines etc. are owned and controlled by government or society. As a result economic activites do not have any private welfare or profit motive.

(ii) End of the choice of consumers -

In this the sovereignity of consumers choice is limited to only those goods which are produced as directed by the government. The quantity to be consumed by the consumers is also determined by the government.

(iii) Centralized or Econoimc Planning -

In a socialistic economy there is a central authority to determine and achieve social-economic objectives. All important decisions such as what to produce? and how to produce? are taken by the central authority.

(iv) Motive of social welfare -

In socialistic economy all important economic decisions are taken by the central authority, keeping maximum social and collective welfare in mind and not private profit motive.

(v) Economic equality -

Socialistc economy works on the principle of equal wages for equal work. Hence there is no place for class struggle in this economic system. Besides due to lack of opportunity to acquire private property, the inequality in income is also less.

Analysis of Socialistic economy

Merits -

(i) Equal distribution of income and wealth
(ii) Equality of opportunities
(iii) Planned Economy
(iv) End of class struggle
(v) End of economic ups and downs (economic stability)
(vi) Right to work
(vii) Assurane of minimum standard of living

Demerits -

(i) Bureaucracy and Red Tapism
(ii) Constraints on individual liberty
(iii) Decrease in production
(iv) Lack of economic inspiralion
(v) Decrease in the freedom of consumer
(vi) Encroachment of rights (Right to Private Property)

C) Mixed Economy

Meaning - This economic system tries to include the ideal features of both capitalism and socialism in

other words this system is the mid way of Capitalism and socialism.

In mixed economy both private and public sectors coexist. It supports private enterprises and private profits, but also considers the existence of governement to protect the interests of society as a whole. In mixed economy it is seen that both private and public enterprises work collectively in such a way that the economic welfare of all classes of the country increases and the possibility of a country's progress and development expands. After independece India has adopted this economic system.

Features of Mixed Economy

Some of the important featrues of Mixed economy are as follows -

(i) Co-existence of private and public sectors -

The most important features of mixed economy is the co-existence of private and public enterprises. The government has monopoly over the important industries like drinking water, electrification, power generation, internal and external safety etc. The heavy and basic industries are run and developed by the government, while agricultture and cottage industries are under private sectors. Beside this joint sector also exists.

(ii) Administrative price -

In mixed industry dual price determination system prevails. The price of goods produced in private sectors is determined independently by the market but the government reserves the right to fix the price of neccessary goods which are consumed by common public For example in India the price petroleum, diesel, LPG etc are determined by the government.

(iii) Economic Planning -

Mixed economy is a planned economy, where the government determines social and economic policies through complete planning in accordance to these policies it does social welfare work like rivers valley projects for provision of drinking water, irrigation, tourism, fisheries, electricity generation to ensure social welfare of the common public.

(iv) Regional Balance-

As the government controls all the important sectors it impliments the planning process in such a way that there is a equal developement of all regions for example expansion and development of facilities like education. health, road, transport, drinking water etc.

(v) Individual liberty -

In mixed economy private sector has the liberty of production, consumption exchange and distribution. But this freedom is partially controlled by the government to avoid any adverse effect on social interest and welfare. For instance prohibition of smoking and drinking at public places, child marriage, feast after death, opulent marriage ceremony etc.

Analysis of Mixed Economy

Merits-

(i) Inclusion of the merits of both capitalism and socialism
(ii) Preservation of individual liberty (business and consumption)
(iii) Lack of class struggle
(iv) Lack of mutual disparties
(v) control over economic cycles
(vi) Balanced development of under- developed countries

Demerits -

(i) Difficult to manage (lack of coordination)
(ii) Temporary profit
(iii) Medium pace of economic development
(iv) Encouragement to formalities and partiality (lack of production efficiency)

Important Points

1. Economics is the study of the economic activities of man and society.
2. Those activities of man which can be measured in money are known as economic activities.
3. The creation of utility is called production.
4. The use of goods and services to satisfy human wants is called consumption.
5. There are four types of factors of production Land, Capital, Labour, Management or entrepreneur.
6. The operation of economic activities of a specific area under a specific system is called an economy.
7. An economic system where the factors of

production are owned and controlled by private indiuduals is known as Capitalstic economy.
8. An econimc system in which all means of productions are owned and controlled by the whole society throgh government is called a Socialistic economy.
9. An economy where there is co-existent of both private and public sector is known as Mixed economy.

Objective Questions

1. Which of the following is an economic activity-
   (a) the friendly match played by two classes of a school
   (b) the care of children by parents
   (c) the teaching of teacher in school
   (d) the prayer assembly in school

2. The form of Indian economy is -
   (a) capitalism (b) socialisim
   (c) mixed (d) none

3. Which of the following economic systems provide the right of private property-
   (a) capitalisim
   (b) socialisim
   (c) both capitalisim and socialism
   (d) none

4. Which of the following is not the feature of a mixed economy -
   (a) gaurdian of persoanl liberty
   (b) Lack of class struggle
   (c) More satisfaction to consumer
   (d) Control over economic cycles

Very Short Answer Questions

1. What is economy?
2. State the meaning of economics.
3. Write the names of types of economy.
4. Write the names of factors of production.
5. What is Production?
6. Define Consumption.
7. Give one example each of production and producer.
8. Write the meaning of distribution.
9. What is labour ?
10. Write meaning of socialistic economy.

Short Answers Questions

1. What is economic activities ? Explain with examples ?
2. Differentiate between wealth and capital ?
3. Explain the concept of economy with examples.
4. What is the difference between a socialist and capitalist economy ?

5. Explain the relationship between production and consumption.
6. Mentain the properties of mixed economy.

Essay type Questions

1. Explain the difference in economic activities and non economic activities.
2. Explain the major means of creation.
3. Mention the main features of the capitalist economy.
4. Mention the major symptoms of mix economy.

Answer of objective questions

1. (c) 2. (c) 3. (a)
4. (c)

Chapter-17

Agriculture In The Indian Economy

Agriculture has been the foundation of Indian economy from ancient times. Agriculture and its related fields are the main sources of earning for the majority of Indian population specially for the village people. Approximetely half of the population of the country is still dependent on agriculture though due to Plan Development Process the national income from agriculture has partially reduced but still agriculture is very important from various aspacts in Indian economy.

Importance of Agriculture :- Importance and contribution of agriculture can be illustrated by the following points.

1. Contribution in the national income -

Indian agriculture has contributed a lot in the National income According to the data of year 1950-51 of Central Statistical Organization agricultrue and its co-activities such as forestry, wood cutting, animal husbandry, fishery, mining poultry etc. have contributed 59.2 percent in the national income which was reduced in 2012-13 (2004-05 statistic value) to 13.7 percent. Even today as compared to other developed countries agriculture is contributing a lot in GDP.

2. Providing Employment Opportunities -

Even today most of the working Indian population is dependent on agricultural and its co-activities in the year 1950-51, 70% of the working poplulation was dependent on agriculture and its co-activities. Even today according to the census of 2011 approximately 48.9 % of people are dependent on agriculture. Agriculture is providing employment directly and indirectly to the people. Farming, harvesting, irrigation etc. are the example providing direct employment and as indirect employment animal husbandry, fisheries, poultry, forestry, food preservation, preparing fruits and vegetables for marketing oil refinery, wood cutting, preparing pulse preparing animal folder and preparing organic manure.

In indian planning period contribution of agriculture in providing employment is still very high but its contribution in national income is declining. It can be increased by adopting new methods techniques of agriculture.

3. Contribution in International Trade -

Contribution of agriculture is also very important in international trade. we export and import various agricultural products. India exports tea, spices, coffee, rice, cotton, tobacco, cashew nuts, fruits, vegetables, fruit juices, sea products, sugar and meat and meat products are main agricultural things. Presently total export of agricultural and its co fields contribute 12.5%

4. Contribution in industrial Development -

Contribution of agriculture is of two types in industrial Development. Firstly agricultrue provides raw material for the major industries for eg. Cotton for cotton Textile mills, sugarcane and beetroot for sugar industries, fruits and vegetables for industries,

flower and seeds for oil industries, for few medicines agricultural products are used most of Ayurvedic medicines dependent on agricultural products.

Secondly agriculture provides market for other industries such as tractor trolley industrry, agricultural tools industries, Chemical feritlizer industry, pesticides industry, seed industry, plant Nursery etc. to sell their products depend on agriculture.

5. Contribution in food and fodder -

Agriculture provides food product for the people and fodder for the animal.

6. Contribution towards removal of poverty

By improving the facilities in agriculture and its co-activities can provide employment and income for the increasing population of the country. It can stop the spread of poverty in the country.

7. Contribution in Revenue -

Agriculture and its co-activities provide the government less taxes in the form of revenue.

8. Contribution to the developement of other sector of the economy-

Agriculture is the foundation of indian economy hence all other fields are influenced by it Rural development transportation, communication, packing and industrial development and its co-activites. Looking to all these contributions we can say that agriculture is the axis of indian economy.

9. Bases of the progress in Animal Husbandary -

Most animal of the world are found in india. Even today all the major activities in agriculture are performed by animals and mostly animal breeding is done by the farmers. Dairy,wool, meat, milk and milk products are produced and improved breeds etc. are done in agricultural areas. So livestock development is also done in this area.

New trends in agriculture sector-

Policies of colonial period had its bad results in the agricultural field which came in the form of speedless progress. At the time of independence agriuclture was in pitiable condition but due to the progressive works in plan period reforms in agriculture area is praise wortly which can be understood in the following manner.

1. Food Production -

India is a land of diversity due to its climate, land, soil, watertable, geographical structure etc there are various diversities found here and many types of crops can be grown. We can classify the crops on two main basis.

(a) Crops on the basis of seasons

According to seasons, crops are of three types -

1. Rabi crops -

The rabi cropping season is from mid October and harvested between march and April. Crops include wheat, barley, oats chickpea/ gram, mustard etc.

2. The kharif crops -

The Kharif corp is grown in June-July and harvesting time is from septmeber to mid October. It includ, rice, jawar, arhar, moong, maize, cotton, linseeds, sugar cane, soyabean, ground nut etc. Rice is the only crop which is sown both in rabi and kharif season.

3. Zaid crops -

Cropping season is from march to mid June. Such as muskmelon, pumpkin, cucumber, watermelon and vegetables, sunflower etc.

(b) Crops on the basis of their use-

Crops on the basis of their uses are divided into two groups/parts

(i) Food crops -

Food crops are those crops which are eaten in the form of food they are as follows- rice, wheat, maize, grams and pulses.

(ii) Trade crops or cash crops

Cash crops are those crops which are grown only for profit sale. Farmers either sell the entire lot or partly use and sell the rest such as sugarcane, jute, cotton, tea, coffee, tobacco.

Presently the area and productivity of all crops have changed.

In the previous years food production from 1950-51 to 2012-13 nearly 62 years linseeds approximately 4.2 times, 5.3 times in oil seeds sugarcane approx 5.13 times, cotton approx 3.95 times increased and jute increased approx 2.5.

Source- Statistics and Economics directorat 2015

2. Trends in the production of main crops.

productivity in india is still low as compared to the other countries of the world. Following are the main reasons- (a) Natural Reasons - they following reasons are included in this-

(i) Excessive dependence on the Monsoons
(ii) Lack of irrigation facilities
(iii) Constantly fall of productive power in the agriculture
(iv) Vast desert in the western area
(v) Weeds problem
(vi) Natural calamities (Drought, flood, famine, Cyclone)
(vii) A big/vast part of fallow and waste land

(b) Technological Reasons/factors

(i) Underdeveloped and backward irrigation facilities
(ii) Lack of electricity
(iii) Lack of agriculture productivity (high yielding soil/seeds, tools etc)
(iv) Lack of transport, communication and banking facilities.
(v) High cost in stocking of agricultural products
(vi) Lack of provision of agriculture marketing

(c) Institutional factors -

(i) Ploughing getting small
(ii) Faulty land acquisition process
(iii) Excess dependecne of population on agriculture
(iv) Ploughing land of farmers spread to far off places natural calamity and financial crisis are additional factors with the above mentioned factors.

3. Land Reform Programme-

After independence more importance was given to land reform programs so that agricultural productivity and produce increase and to improve the economic condition of the farmers. Under this program the main step was to remove zamidary system. List of extra land reform work was also implemented.

(i) End of mediators. middle-men/ mediocre
(ii) Taxation rules
(iii) Protection of land acquisition
(iv) Efforts to give rights of land ownership to land tenants.
(v) Fixation of borders of ploughing land assessment.
(vi) Marking the boundaries.
(vii) Government farming.
(viii) Distribution of land to landless labourers/ farmers.
(ix) ban on the transfer of land of land tenants SC/ ST to other caste people
(x) Facility of computersing the land records

After getting independence many reform programme have been implemented still due to illiteracy and lack of knowledge among the farmers they are unable to get full benefit from these programme.

4. Irrigation -

Indian agriculture is called gamlling of mansoon. Indian Monsoon Due to the dependence on rain, there is always uncertainty and unstabilty in agriculture keeping this in view more emphasis was given on irrigation facilities for its progress. Main sources of irrigation in india are wells, ponds, lakes etc.

Government of india during plan period implemented various programmes for irrigation facility. Irrigation programmes were classified into three categories-

(i) small/short irrigation programme-

These programmers are meant for only 2000 hectare of agricultural common and area.

(ii) Mid irrigation programme -

These programmes are meant for more than 2000 hectare but till 10,000 hectare of agricultural command areas.

(iii) Large irrigation programmes-

These are meant for more than 10,000 hectare of agricultural command area.

5. Reorganization of Agricultural Ploughing -

In India the area of ploughing is small. The area of ploughing is spread far flung places. The main reason is the rule of heredity. According to which the father's property is distributed which is called 'Sub division'. Due to this division, the agricultural land get reduced. Secondly, one farmer gets ploughing land at different places which is called 'Sub division', due to the fact that the inherited land is distributed among the sons piece by piece.

In India, small and marginal is on a large scale. The following measures are taken to stop the spreading of small and marginal farming.

1. Consolidate farming / Consolidation of sub division farming.

2. Co-operative farming

According to first Agricultural census in India, year 1970-71 the area of farming land was 2.28 hectare which reduced to 1.33 hectare in 2000-01. In agriculture, 62.88% is the Limited Plough able land. On the basis of area, plough able farm hand is divided into 5 parts.

(i). Marginal farming	less then-1 hectare
(ii). Small-scale farming	1 to 2 hectare
(iii). Semi-scale farming	2 to 4 hectare
(iv). Medium-Scale farming	4 to 10 hectare
(v). Large-scale farming	10 or more then 10

6. Manure, fertilizers and pesticide medicines -

To increase the power of agricultural fertility manure and fertilizers have their own importance from the very begining indian farmers had been using manure made of cow dung, leaves of crops and animals to improve the fertility of the soil but due to green revolution use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides increased rapidly. The main chemical fertilizers like nitrogen phosphate and potash are used in great quantity. Presently in India the level of consumption of fertilizers is 239.59 lac mt. ton.

Till today the level of consumption of fertilizers is less compared to other developed countries not only this, there is vast difference in the consumption of fertilizers in different states of india. In Punjab the consumption of fertilizers per hectare is greatest while it is lowest in Orrisa.

Chemical fertilizers are mostly used in grain, wheat, sugarcane, cotton and cash crops. Similarly pesticides are used to protect the crops from seasonal deseases and pests. Mostly the crops of ground nuts. cotton grain and sugarcane are affected by the pests and diseases. There is always a danger of pest in fruits and vegetables. The use of pesticides is always useful to protect the crops. The use of fertilizers is constantly increasing but today the use of organic farming is gaining more importance in this field.

7. Use of high variety seeds-

To increase the production and productivity of the agriculture it is important to use high variety seeds. By using high variety seeds we increase the production 10 to 20%. Govt. of india encourage the production and distribution of the seeds of proofed crops. In 1963, formed National seed corporation and in 1969 National state farm corporations. 13 state seed corporation were established to distribute the high variety of seeds to the farmers. Indian seeds programme include the three seed produce such as. The use of high variety seeds is constantly increasing.

8. Agricultural Mechanisation -

Indian farmers are using old/ traditional tools and instruments and effective technology in the agriculture. Agricultrue in the plan period had progressed and due to it in agriculture new tools/ apparatus are being used like tractor, harvestors, power tiller, thrasher, pump set etc.

Use of new tool in agriculture has made the agricultural work easier and there is increase in the the productivity of agricultral produce at the time of independence there was no production of tractors but now we are self dependents in the production of the tractors, Production of electric pump sets and diesel pump sets are also produced Agricultral mechanisation, Punjab and Haryana states here greatly progressed. Mechanisation in agriculture on one hand increases the production, on other hand make the work easier in agricultural transport cutting of crops, separating, ploughing of land etc. It is also the reason of unemployment for the landless farmers/labourers. Mechanisation increases the gap between small and big farmers and increases enviornmental pollution. Despite being very important for the growing population of developing

country like india but mechanisation must be controlled and developed.

9. Minimum support value of Agricultral produce -

To give fair price for the produce of the farmer and to encourage the agricultralwork govt of india declares Minimum support value for he crops twice is Rabi and kharif seasons. For this the govt established Agriculture value commission as 1965 which was later known as Agricultural cost and value commision is that value of the entire crop to be sold by the farmer and the govt. is ready to purchase it in other words support value is that minimum value that the farmers get for their crops. This is declared by the govt before the crops are planted the crops for which minimum support price is declared are as follows-

(i) 7 types of grains - paddy price wheat, oat, jawar, maize, ragi, bajara

(ii) Pulses/Dals - Chana, Arhar, Moong, Urad, Masur

(iii) Oilseeds - Soyabean, Sunflower, groundnut, mustared, coconut, linseed,

(iv) Other crops - Sugarcane, cotton, jute, coconut

Objective of support value is to protect the rights of the farmers. If the market value falls the farmers by selling their entire crop to the govt. is saved from the losses. Due to the declaration of this the doubt regarding the value is cleared of the farmers and they can get the right decision regarding the production. On the other hand govt. can run smoothly the Public Distribution sytem and get the grams and other agricultural products at minimum price value and builds the Buffer stock. When the prices are high protect the rights of the consumers the govt sell the grains from this stock through which the prices are controlled.

10. Agricultural loans -

The reason behind the backwardness of Agricultural economic system is lack of facilities of Agricultural loan. Farmers are always in the need of loans for manure, seeds fertilizers, pesticides agricultural tools, labour etc. Farmers according to their need on the basis of period get three types of loans.

(i) Short term loan -

This type of loan is given for less than 15 months. The farmers get this short term loan to fulfil their temporary requirements such as seeds, manure fodder and household work.

(ii) Mid- term loan -

These loans are given for more than 15 months but less than 5 years. These are mainly given to reform the field, to purchase animal, to dig wells, to purchase agricultural tools.

(iii) Long term Loans -

These loans are given to the farmers for more than 5 years. These loans are mostly given for the purchase of new land to pay the old debts, small irrigation to change infertile land into cultivated land to purchase heavy machinary, electrification, to purchase tubewells etc.

Farmers can get these loans through two types of sources, they are as follows-

(i) Non-institutional source -

These include local villagers, money lenders, zamidars, commissions agents, businessman, rich landowners or family members relatives.

(ii) Institutional sources -

To expand the facilities for agriculture and rural development on 12 July 1982 Bank 'NABARD' was established on National level for rural goodwill. This is the supreme institution for rural loan system. the chief sources of institutional loan are commercial land local rural bank, co-operative, Land developments bank etc.

Short term loans and mid-term loans are granted by co-operative samities while long term loans are granted by land development Bank which are known as Land guarantee but in the field of loan with the arrival of institutional sources, farmer got independence from traditional sources and also the rate of interest was low.

11. Kisaan credit card Programme -

To make available short term loans for farmers in 1998-99 kisaan cerdit card programme was started. This included such farmers who produce the value of Rs. 5000 or more value were entitled for Kisaan cerdit card. The farmers were given cerdit card and passbook who were included in this scheme this card was valid for 3 years and the amount

withdrawn from this account had to be returned within 12 months. The term of loan can be increased if the loan is paid regidarly farmer cerdit card dependents upon the boundaries of ploughing field, cropping pattern and shape of finance.

From 2001-02 Kishaan cerdit card holders get Rs 50,000 for the death due to accidents and for it permanent handicapped Rs. 25,000 as insurrance money presently no tax is cut on the loan for 3,00,000 Kisaan cerdit cards are issued from Trade commercial Bank, co-operative banks and local Rural Banks Mostly Kishan cerdit cards are issued by Trade/ Commercial Banks Till 2012 11.39 crores of Farmers cerdit cards were issued.

Kisaan credit card programme has played an important role in fulfulling the loan related needs.

12. Agricultural Insurance -

Indian agriculture is always influenced by natural calamities such as heavy rains, drought, hail storms, frost, locuts attack and diseases. Farmers were alway in a position of doubt due to these calamities. Govt implement various insurance programmes to protect the farmers to certain extent from the harm/ damage of calamities. Under this in the year 1999-2000 started National Agricultural Insurrance plan.

In this farmers were given financial help when the crops failed due to natural calamities, pests and diseases without keeping the size of ploghing land indebted and non-indebted farmers were given help this runs in 25 states and 2 union territories of the country. Agricultural insurance plan is an important advantage for the farmers and save them from the risks still more expanscan is needed because the gain of the programme has not reached all the farmers.

Problems of Agriculture farming -

India is an agricultural country. Agriculture is the main source of occupation and income of majority of people. It is the main pillar of economic system of the country. Inspite of this the condition of agriculture is not satisfactory. Many problems are faced in agricultural field following are the reasons.

(i) Natural Problems/ calamities -

Indian agriculture is a gambling of monsoon. Trregularity and uncertainty of rain is alway there. Hereis always a fear of droughts, floods, frost, cyclone, strong wind in agriculture with this the agricultural fields are damaged by erosion, desert decline of fertility, attack/fury of insects, diseases etc.

Natural Desaster Drought

(ii) Small size of ploughing plots land -

The main reason of backwardness in the indian agriculture is the small size of ploughing area. Due to this it is not possible to use high/modern Agriculture technics. Secondly the fields are far apart and a big part is wasted due to fencing and the farmers are unable to keep an eye on right farming and the use of technics which result in the lack of productivity.

(iii) Lack of finance in agricultrue -

From the time of sowing to harvesting and selling the crops in the market the farmers need money for the agriculture work and for his every day life. The farmers have to take loan from money lenders, zamidars and business man to buy seeds, manure pesticides to pay electricity bill, labours etc. The money lender give money at high interest rate and force the farmers to sell the produce to them they do not pay the right value to the farmers so the farmers have to lead their life in deficiency this effects the agricultural productivity.

(iv) Lack of Agriculture tools and technics -

There is alway lack of seeds, manure, pestisides, good tools etc for the farmers. Due to lack of good tools and technics, productivity is less. Because of lack of manure and insecticides the crops are damaged.

(v) Lack of Irrigation facilities -

Indian agriculture irrigation is dependent on rains because there is lack of facility of artifial

irrigation and where it is available there is high regional imbalance. Lack of maintainance of the lake, ponds, canals, rivers etc they are becoming un-usable instead of these tube wells and hand pumps are used widely, due to this the level of land water table is falling if rain does not come in time and there is lack of irrigation facility then the crops have to face heavy damages.

(vi) Decline in the land fertility -

Due the increase in use of chemical fertilizers the fertility of the land is falling because of this the productivity is affected.

(vii) Problem of Agriculture marketing -

One important problem of the farmers is they have to go to far of markets to sell their crops there is no properfacility of transport so it is difficult for them to reach there. In these markets there is no proper facility of stocking the grains. Due to rains, insects, rats etc the crops of the farmers are damaged. Sometimes they have to sell their crops to money lenders or midman in the village itself at low rates.

(viii) Orthodoxy of the farmers -

Till today many farmers are following traditional ways of agriculture. They spend more money on social traditions like marriage, deaths and other social rituals rather on agricultral works. For these works they take loans also, they think the poverty is their destiny and do not want to come out of it.

(ix) Problem of right price -

Farmers do not get the correct price for their produce. Businessman buy at a very low price the produce of the farmers. Sometimes the prices are so low that the farmers do not get even the money they have invested on crops, though the govt had issued the support price for same crops but they are unsufficient.

(x) Neglect of Institutional changes :- This Resolution paid more attention to technical changes, and land reforms were neglected. In this manner Green Resolution made on unprecedented contribution to the development of the agricultural sector and not only made India self reliant in food production but also gave a spurt to the export of agro-products by bringing to an end the cereal crisis.

(xi) Illiteracy in Farmers - Even today most of the farmers are uneducated. therefore neither can they understand advanced and appropriate technology nor can they make good use of it. Consequently, they cannot sell their produce at appropriate prices due to this.

Suggestions for the removal of Agricultural problem -

In every five years plan efforts were made for the development in the field of agriculture in first five year plan the main importance was given to agriculture. After this also in every five year plans special importance was given to the development of agriculture still indian farmers are facing many difficulties. Following is the list of suggestions for reforms.

(i) To implement the land reform properly -

After independence efforts made towards the improvement of marking of boundaries, co-operative farming reforms in cultivation, land ownership etc. steps suggested to implement these in a proper manner. Big laws and Policies must be implimented for these works.

(ii) Availability of agricultral things for poor farmers and farm labours -

Rich farmers can get easily things related to agriculture like manure, seeds insecticides, fertilizers, tools etc. but small and poor farmers have great difficulty to get them. The govt should make these things available for them and give grants. They should also educate them so that they can use these agricultural tools properly.

(iii) Spread of Dry farming methods -

The areas where rainfall is less and irrigation facilities are lacking there, dry farming method should be developed the farmers must be encouraged to use these method they should also be educated to use technic for increasing productivity in less waterfor eg. sprinklers for irrigation.

(iv) Spread of Education -

Education must be spread among the farmers so that they can understand and fit to use new technology.

(v) Encouragment to cottage industries -

Encouragement to cottage industries must be given so that the dependence of people become less on agriculture the income of rural peoplewill increase and dependence on agriculture decrease.

(vi) Encourgement to optional employment with agricultrue -

Farmers must not depend only on agriculture but use also optional ways for employments such as poultry, Honeybee breeding, milking animals, planting of fruits on sides of the fields etc. On one hand farmers income will increase and on other hand there will be no need to take loan, if their crops are damaged. This will improve the condition of the farmers and increase the productivity in agriculture.

(vii) Establishment of Agricultural grainary -

Graineries must be established in proper places for agricultural production.

(viii) Encouragement to organic farming -

Excessive use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides make the land loose its fertility. Organic farming plays an important role to protect this on one hand it protects the fertility and on other hand is important for health and environment.

Green Revolution And White Revolution

Green Revolution -

From the begining of third five year plan to the mid fourth five year plan (1961-69) these 8 years are important in the history of indian agriculture. It was during this period that the new strategy of agriculture was implemented. In the farm of a pilot project, Intensive agriculture farming was introduced in 7 districts. Following this highly productive variety of seeds were added and this progressive strategy was encouraged throughout the country. This was the start of the green revolution.

In place of traditional farming new techniques like chemical fertilizers, pesticides, advanced seeds, modern farming technology and vast irrigational project etc. so as to give importance in the year 1966-67 with kharif crops a new era began which is called the "Green Revolution." The Prof. E Norman Barlok is the father of Green Revolution. But in India Prof M.S. Swaminathan is

A Scene Green Revolution

known as the father of Green Revolution. The main objective of the Green Revolution was to overcome the problem of food- shortage and to get more production in a short period and to commercialize agriculture.

Important Factors of Green Revolution.

Programme for more productive crops- In 1970-71 In this programme as implemented on 6 crops which are grains, wheat, maize, jawar, millet and raggi. The maxxine types of wheat, Chinese rice and a few highly developed Indian varities with maize, jawar, millet & raggi were used.

In this project along with highly developed kinds of seeds there was the use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides by which production wears by vastly increased.

In this project wheat was among one of the most successful all attempts. The programme was a great success in the following States Punjab, Hariyana, Utter Pradesh, Bihar, Tamilnadu and West Bangal.

(ii). **Multi Crops Programme**:- Under multi crops programme those seeds are sown which have a very short harvesting duration in which within a year more than one crop can be cultivated.

(iii). **Emphasis on small scale Irrigation :-** For the success of Green Revolution only advanced seeds

& manure are not sufficient. For this purpose sufficient facilities for irrigation was necessary which could be fulfilled only through big dams. Therefore, under this programme emphasis was on hand pumps, canals, ponds, water-harvesting and tube-well for irrigation.

(iv). **Chemical Fertilizer-** To increase agriculture produce chemical fertilizers like ureas and potash made widely used.

(v). **Highly developed seeds**:- To encourage. more production and qualitative farming, seeds of developed variety was encouraged to be used.

(vi). **Encouragement to agricultural mechanization**;- In Green Revolution for the progress of agriculture, the use of new types of instruments was encouraged from sowing to harvesting.

(vii). **Crop Protection Programme;-** Under this programme, pesticides were used on the soil and the crops. During the years when large campaigns were conducted to destroy them on the land or in the air so that the crops could flourish.

(viii). **Agriculture Knowledge and Research**:- Expansion of agricultural education and research programme were started for increasing agricultural production.

(ix) **Land Protection Programme:-** Land Protection Programme was encouraged and fertile land was protected from erosion while research was done to make barren land fertile.

(x). **Establishment of various institution for agricultural progress**- For the successful working of agriculture progress, various institutions were established eg. National seeds Corporation, NABARD.

(xi). **Agriculture Price Commission**;- To guarantee for fair price to famers, Agriculture Price Commission was established.

(xii). **Crop Insurance**; - Insurance was provided for protection of crops from natural disaster.

Important of green Revolution. The importance of green Revolution could be understood by the following factors :-

1. **Growth in the production & productivity of crops**:- As a result of Green Revolution, there is unprecedented growth in production & productivity due to which the situation of food grains get created in country.

2. **Employment for farm laborers**:- As a result of Green Revolution, there is improvement in the situation of farm labourers. Due to increase in agriculture area and growth in production, there is growth in employment. Due to production of multi-farious and commercial crops, the demand for more labor got fulfilled by landless laborers due to which economic condition improved.

3. Decree in Rural Poverty:- Due to Green Revolution Rural Landless laborers got employment and because of multi harvesting programme, income of farmers increased and poverty lessened.

4. **Mechanization**; - The Green Revolution emphasized mechanization and traditional techniques were replaced by modern machinery.

5. **Production of advanced crops**;- The Green Revolution resulted in advanced seeds, pesticides and chemical fertilizers which increased the production of crops.

6. **Commercial Outlook**: - A commercial outlook replaced the traditional manner of thinking of the farmers.

7. **Modernization;**- Modernization was given great emphasis and so the circumstances of farmers improved.

8. **Facilities :-** Reasonable prices, ware housing, credit and other facilities brought more profit to the farmers.

Limitations of Green Revolution -

Green Revolution is an important revolution in the field of agriculture still it has few lackings and limitations they are as follows -

(i) Limited to specific crops -

Green Revolution had its effects specially on wheat, rice, jawar, bajra and maize productivity. Its mam success was in field of wheat production so it is also known as wheat revolution compared to these crops its effect was very less on other crops.

(ii) Effective on limited areas -

The effect of green revolution was observed mainly on irigated ares it was not successful in the areas backward in agricultre and non-irrigated areas. This is reason why the irrigated states of Punjab and Haryana were more influenced by green Revolution

(iii) Bad effects of machanisation -

In the begining farmers income increased due to green revolution but slowly and slowly the use of machines replaced the labourers with machines this incresed the employment.

(iv) Increase in the gap difference in income -

Rich and resourceful farmers got more advantage of green Revolution because poor farmers had no finance to adopt new methods of agriculture technics. Due to this rich farmer took advantage and made themselves resourceful secondly, disparity of income increased between the various states because in other states the condition of the farmers did not improve.

(v) Bad effects of the use of chemical fertilizers -

In green Revolution more emphasis was given to the use of chemical fertilizers and pesticides. It made the land unfertile. It also had effects on underground water, enviornment and animal.

(vi) Decline in water level -

Due to green revolution excessive use of water through tube well and handpump were done. So there was great fall in the ground water table.

(vii) Encourgement to capitalist farming -

High variety of seeds, chemical, manure and agricultural tools all were very expensive. Due to this encouragement was given to captalism.

(viii) Neglect of institutional changes- This Resolution paid more attention to technical changes, and land reforms were neglected. In this manner Green Resolution made on unprecedented contribution to the development of the agricultural sector and not only made India self reliant in food production but also gave a spurt to the export of agro-products by bringing to an end the cereal crisis.

White Revolution

Production of livestock and agriculture are related and are dependent on each other and both are important for food security. Most of the world's animals are found in india. Most of the world's milk production is produced in India but the animal breed in india is in pitialble condition. Due to this reason production of milk is very little and expenditure is very high. To improve this government implented white revolution as a co-operative programme.

In the year 1964-65 for the indian farmers livestock Development programme was started. According to this programme to increase milk production, animal breeders were provided advance and developed methods of training. In this animal breeders were given high breed cow and buffalows and methods of artificial pregnancy was developed. Increase milk production with such great speed is called white Revolution. In 1970 National Dairy Development Board started white revolution in Anand village of Gujrat. It was named as Operation flood. The chairman and founder of this revolution was Verghese Kurian. He was the main architect.

Importance of white Revolution

(i) Increase in Milk Production -

Due to white revolution there was an incredible increase in the producton of milk. Today india is the leading producer of milk and the total production of milk in the year 2013-14 was 137.69 metric ton.

There is an increase in the production of milk every year in 2013-14 per person 307 gm per day milk was available.

(ii) Income for farmers -

Dairy employment make the secondary source of income for lacs of people in the villages and lacs of people specially women and poor farmers. It has been an apportunity to earn a living through dairy production.

Permanent and self employment was made available to the village and landless people and land labourers in the form of Animal husbandary they got ample of employment in this field from Dairy development. Most of this milk production is done by the neighbouring and landless labourers of the country. 90 lacs of peasant families are employed in this work.

(iv) Encouragment to the conprehensive rural development -

Due to dairy develoment various basis rural imperature improved. Road, transport, communication, Banking as they were required the successful implemention of white Reveolution.

(v) Availability of milk in the Urban Areas -

Operation flood made it possible for urban areas to get extra milk produce in rural areas the urban people not only got milk but also the milk products such as curd, butter, milk, ghee, cheese and butter very easily.

(vi) Improved in animal breed -

Due to operation flood there is imporvement in the breed of animals and control on the diseases by all measures in India.

In This way white revolution has changed completely the shape of Rural economy. Green revolution by bringing reforms in agriculture protected the main occupation of the farmers while white revolution by reform on animal husbandary and milk production and provided extra employment and income to the villagers.

Important Points :

1. Agriculture is important organ, foundation and backbone of Indian economy.
2. Following ways in agriculture contribute to following areas in Indian economy.
(i) National income
(ii) Making employment available
(iii) Contribute towards international business
(iv) Development of industries
(v) Fulfilments of food grain
(vi) Eradication of poverty
(vii) Contribution towards revenue
(viii) Contribution to other ares of economy
(i) Development of livestock
3. New trends in agriculture area
(i) Increase in food grain production
(ii) Method in the field of production in India major crops.
(iii) Implemetation of land reform programme.
(iv) Promotion of irrigation
(v) use of fertilizers
(vi) use of advanced seeds
(vii) Promotion of agricultural mechanization
(viii) Minimum support priceing of agricultural products
(ix) Promoting agricultural credit
(x) Implementation of Kisan credit card scheme
(xi) Implementation of Kisan insurance.
4. Agricultural Productivity refers to the quantity of production per unit, which is expressed as per hectare production.
5. Despite many development programmes in India, todays production of agricultural area is very low.
6. Reason for low productivity in agricultural area are :
(i) Natural
(ii) Establishment
(iii) Technology & others
7. India has three main sources of irrigation, rivers, ponds & wells.
8. Problem in agriculture area in India are :
(i) natural Calamities
(ii) Small size of stocks
(iii) lack of agricultural finance
(iv) lack of irrigation facilities
(v) Problem of lands
(vi) Problem of agricultural marketing
(vii) Farmers conservativeness
(viii) Illiteracy of farmers
(ix) lack of price quotation

9. Decision - making measures should be adopted to improve the problem of agriculture sector-
(i) Effectively implement improvement programs.
(ii) Provided aide to agriculture.
(iii) Dry farming methods should be disseminated.
(iv) organic farming should be established.
(v) Agriculture store house should be extablisted.
(vi) Promotion of rural cottage and agricultural based industries.
(vii) Promotion of alternative sources of employment with agriculture.
(viii) Promotion of education.
10. The green revolution implies that it should be an important method of agricultural production in short period of time & this method should be maintained for tory time,
11. Green revolution started between 1966-67.
12. Improtant factors of green revolution are -
(i) High yielding crop programme
(ii) Multi crop programme
(iii) Emphasis on small irrigation.
(iv) Emphasis on the use of chemical fertilizer.
(v) Use of advanced seeds.
(vi) Promotion of mechanization in agriculture
(vii) Plant protection work
(viii) Promotion of agriculture education and experiment
(ix) conservation programme
(x) Establishment of institution for agricultural development.
(xi) Establisment of value commission
(xii) Crop insurance programme
13. Improtance of green revolution -
(i) Crop production of productivity increased.
(ii) Enhancement of employment of agriculture labourers
(iii) Decreased in rural poverty
(iv) Increasing mechanization in agriculture.
(v) Increased production of advanced varities.
(vi) Business approaches developed in agriculture.
(v) Development of modernisation in agriculture.
14. Limitation of green revolution
(i) Limited to only few crops.
(ii) Limited area is only effected
(iii) Side effect of mechanisation.
(iv) Increasing inequality of income.
(v) Drawbacks of fertilizers.
(vi) Reduction of water level.
(vii) Promotion of capitalist farming
(viii) Ignorance of institutioinal changes.
15. The rapid rise of milk production is known as while revelotion.
16. Father of white revolution is Dr virgin kuieen.
17. Importance of white revolution
(i) Milk production enhanced
(ii) Enhancement of income of farmer.
(iii) Employment for rural unemployment
(iv) Promoting balanced rural development
(v) Availability of milk in urban area.
(vi) Animal breed improvement.

Objective Type Questions :

1. India has a major base of employment in -
   (a) Agriculture
   (b) Business
   (c) Service
   (d) Animal husbandry
2. What is a duration of emergency loan -
   (a) Less than 15 months
   (b) Less than 2 years
   (c) Less than 5 years
   (d) Less than 10 years
3. Which state got the highest benefit of green revolution?
   (a) Gujrat
   (b) Punjab
   (c) Kerala
   (d) Jammu & Kashmir
4. Which area is related to white revolution ?
   (a) Fishries
   (b) Animal husbandry
   (c) Gardening
   (d) None

Very short answer questions :

1. What are the auxallianes activities of agriculture?
2. Which crops are zaid crops ?
3. What is the small irrigation project ?
4. What is the agricultural land ?
5. What fertilizer are used in agriculture ?
6. What are the non institutional sources of

agriculture credit ?
7. What is the share of agriculture products in exports.
8. What is green revolution ?
9. Which crop programme is applied to the crop ?
10. Who is the creator of white revolution in India?
11. Which programme was started as a pilot programme ?
12. Which country is the most livestock found ?
13. In which the world largest dairy development programme ?
14. What are the main objectives of green revolution ?
15. In which district the intensive agricultural district programme was started ?

Short answer type question :

1. What is agricultural mechanization ?
2. What is agricultural credit card programme ?
3. Which are the business crops ?
4. What are the natural causes of lack of agricultural productivity ?
5. What is the support price ?
6. Why is the Indian agriculture called monsoon gambling ?
7. Explain the importance of agriculture in livestocle development.
8. What is H.Y.V.P. programme ?
9. What is small irrigation programme ?
10. What is plant protection programme ?
11. Explain three advantages of white revolution .
12. Explain the adverse effect of the use of chemical fertilizers.
13. What are the reasons for the decrease in ground water level ?
14. Explain difference between green and white revolution.
15. How white revolution help the need of milk in urban area ?

Eassy Type Questions :

1. Explain the importance of agriculture in Indian economy.
2. Explain the solution to solve the problem of Indian agriculture.
3. Explain the meaning of green revolution and important achievents of green revolution.
4. what do you mean by white revolution ? How does it benefit to different sections ?

Answer of objective questions

1. (a) 2. (a) 3. (b)
4. (b)

Chapter-18

Business and commercial activities

Concept of business is not very new in India. Countries like Britain and America business is used from 700-800 yearThe history of America and Britain which are considered advanced countries is not more than 700-800 years before. While indian Traders used sea routes for their business and brought gold in exchange of their goods. India is producer and business country (Centre) so traders brought gold in exchange their goods and they made. Make and enriched temples that is way various pirates attracted towards India and came to India and tried to take all the gold. The temple of Somnath in Gujrat is the best example of it 'Malmal' of Dhakha, iron casting in India, golden ornaments and wonderful Indian architecture work was found in the India. India due to slevery of over business position became down day by day after independence our country improves its progress and image.

Men is busy to serve over family members. All these type economic activities is called business. We can divide these economical activities into two groups.

(a) Non Economic Activities - Activities which are not done for earning money like fulfilling social responsibilities, religious activities and activities for brotherhood is called non economic activities for example. A house wife makes food for family parent gives education to their children. If home wife is a teacher in any school for earning and gets salary is called economic activities. Working for society, public welfare free of cost are includind in non economic activities.

(b) Economic Activities - All the activities which are done to earn money are called economic activities. Economic activities are related to good services. Goods are produce in factory and these goods are sold to wholesalers and from wholesaler to the small business man and then to the customers. he earns selary or profit or commision etc. is called economic activities. For example- lawyer, charted accountant and architecutre they provide services against fees.

We can divide economic activities into three groups.

1. Profession- Providing personal services on the basis of merit from your specific area of study and taking a charge of it against the services provided by you is called one's profession. For example doctor, advocate, C.A., architect etc. give their personal services and take fees in return.

2. Job and Employment - Providing services to an indiviual for their livelihood is called a job or employment. It is called job or employment to get work done by the person under the terms of the agreement or services rules employed with the employer or the remuneration received from the employer as salary or vages in returned for the services rendered. For example: Teaching in school, doctor or nurses in hospital, government or non government offices and as lebour hands in factories or construction sites.

3. Business - Business is defined as an economic activity that involves the production and sale of goods and providing services. The main objective of appropriate business activities is to earn money by fulfilling the needs of society.

Therefore the word can be defined as follows: Under the business all the modes of human financial

rights are included which are used for the regular production and distribution of goods and social satisfaction which results in improved nature of life of society.

4. Characteristics of business -

(i) Human Economic Activities - To earn money is valid. All the economic activities are done by a man. Such economic activities are not done by birds or animals. When the object is not to earn money is called non economic activities. For example religious saint or person who provides his free services and not getting any profit or money is non economic activities.

(ii) Production of goods and Services - A business in which it produces varities of goods which are based on the satisfaction of the customers. It produces clothes, fridege, cars, cycles and provide services like banking, Insuarance, communication etc.

(iii) Regular Exchange of Goods and Services - When business man provides goods and services regularly to the coustmers is called regular exchange of goods and service. If any person sells old TV or any device is not cold business.

(iv) Continuity in Business - When the production goods and services are produced regularly is called bussiness if any person provides goods of services not regular. it is not called business.

(v) The Main Object of Business is to earn Profit - The main object of all types of business is to earn profit. No businessman works without getting profit. All the goods produced and all the services are done with an objective of earning profit.

(vi) Uncertainty of Return - All business does not always result in profit. There is uncertainty of getting profit. Profit can be more or less or no profit. Results are uncertain, even business gets loss also.

(vii) Legality - All the business which are not legal as theft, black marketing. smuggling etc. These activities are illegal.

(viii) Existense of Risk - Risk means uncertainty of return in the business risk can be huge or less or there is a chance of getting a loss in the business and it is called risk. And existense of risk is always there. More risk : More gain is the basic concept of business. We can't getting profit without risk.

The main object of business is to earn profit. But choice or likeness of the customers change in the fashion strike in the factory; change in the method of production lock out; competion in the market, fire, accidents; natural calamities theft etc. are the factors which increase the rate of risk and reduce the profit.

(ix) Means of Social Change - Business can improve and change the living level of the people in the society. After second world war we saw many social and economical changes in the society due to industrial revolution.

(x) Creation of Utility - It is said "Mother of necessity is Invention", similarly business activities creat utility of the goods. Among the people for example- Before the invention of mobile people used old method of communication but the invention of mobile increase the more utility of mobile in the society. It increases the demands of the mobiles and give more profit in the business.

5. Objective of Business -

Human activities have certain objectivies as economic, social, political or religious activities. The objective of business is to earn profit. Every businessman wants to earn profit more than the amount invested in the business. So in the other words we can say that business only work to earn profit. But those firms which only work with the objective of earning profit can't survive in the long terms. In any business there is always an effort to earn more than what has been invested in the cost of that business. In other words, the aim of any business is to earn money than what has been initially invested. If profit is important for the success of a business, even then in today's competitive world of business if profit is only motive then business can not be run for a long term. But in today's world this is unanimously accepted. We know business is the

most important part of the society and has certain social responsibility also, towards the society. So we can say earning profit is not the main purpose of the business. But they must get the trust of the people so that they can run for long time and get progress.

A. Profit Objective - The object of every business is to earn profit. The difference between output and investment is called profit. Profit, in business is assumed as important among all other factors of business.

1. It is only the source of the income for business.
2. It is essential to increase the financial sources in the business.
3. It is required for functioning of the business.
4. It is also the acceptance of the utility of the society.
5. It increases the prestige of business unit.

B. Service Objective- In the present scenerio providing service and satifying the wants of consumers are only sources of sucess for the business. In that why business taking service as their motive as compare to profit objective. As per peter drafer satisfying customer is the only objectiveby this way satisfying customer earning profit by providing services the objecitve of service. Following activities are done for services.

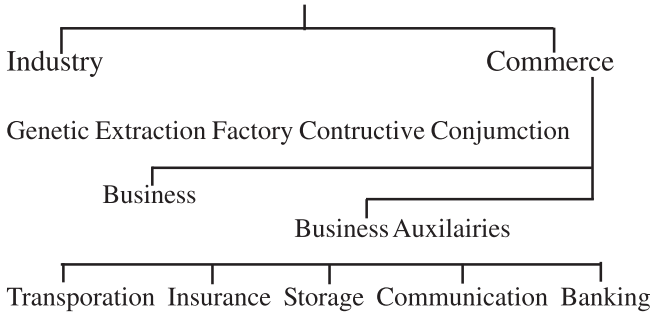
(i) Providing goods as per need of the customer.
(ii) Providing goods at right price puire.
(iii) Providing services after sale of goods.
(iv) Not providing manipulated advertisement.
(v) Not doing profiteering and in appropriate behavior.
(vi) Doing new propagation and publicity

(3) Human objectives : Business has to do various activities to fulfil human objectives so that there right can be saved. These activities are -

(i) In consideration of national integration.
(ii) Providing fair remuneration & working envirnoment.
(iii) Making arrangements of labour welfare and social security.
(iv) To solve the problem of labourers as soon as possible.
(v)Providing opportunities of growth & development.
(vi) Providing appropriate profit to the investors.
(vii) Assurance of security towards envested.
(viii) Providing favourable price to the producer of the good.
(ix) Provide many opportunity of employment.
(x) Humanitarin works towards workers & labourers.

Area of Business - Business is a very broad term. All the activities which are related to production distributing services included the area of business.

Classification of Business Activities



Classification of Business activities can be divided in to two groups (a) First group related to production of the industry. (b) And in the second group called commerce the sales and distribution related industry.

I. Industry - The intent of the business is to deal with the business activities by which the use of material resources required to produce goods fulfilled the requirement of the consumers. Industry uses natural resources and wake them available for uses. In this way the purpose of industrial activity is to able the object available in such a way in which it can be prove to the suitable the needs and purpose of the industry so that customer uses the goods to create the industrial utility so we can classified industry on the basis of the nature of the work.

(a) Genetic Industry- It includes those industries whiich are related to origin eg. agriculture, horticulture animal husbandry, poultry forestary/ fishry etc.

(b) Extractive Industry - In this category industries are incorporated which are related to the acqusition of various types of natural resources such as land; forest, water etc. By land we get iron, copper, minarals, coal, oil; gases etc. fishes from the ocean, by forest medicine, wood, gun, rubber etc.

(c) Creation Industry - In this catrgory things are incorporated which make things useful and more comfortable for man/society eg. making roads, pools, dams, buildings. In this industry the product is parmanent and they are constructed at a perticular location.

(d) Construction Industry - In this catagory we include raw materials or semi finished goods. They are converted raw material into well furnished and useful. Things. eg. make sugar from the sugarcan, cloth from the fibre, furniture from the wood etc. Cement industry, paper industry, soap industry, jule industry are the example of it.

(e) Combination Industry - In this class/ industry useful things are created by adding small parts like computers, cars, watches. They are very useful and comfortable for the society.

Industries and their Products

Genetic industry	Extra Active industry	Construction industry	Creative industry	Cobination industry
Areiculture Horticulture Animal husbandry Fishry Poultry	Mineral Fishing Coal Metal	Road Bridge Dam Houses Making Furniture	Sugar Making paper making Cement Soap Jute	Computer Car Watch Scooter

II. Commerce - In this industrial activities are concerned the production of goods and to fulfil the needs. The work of commerce is to provide goods at right place, at appropriate time; quantity of the goods in right time. In this way commerce is concerned with distribution of goods and better services. There are many obstacles to reach the production from the productor to the consumers eg. obstacles are time, risk, financial information etc. The regular and continuous flow of goods/products to the consumers are included in commercial activities. Following are the features of commerce:

(i) Works to bring the production to producers.

(ii) Commerce facilitates exchange of goods by removing the barriers in distribution.

Difference between business, Commerce and Industry

Base of Different	Trade	Commerce	Industry
Meaning	Purchase, sales, trade in exchange.	Trade and trades sub activities in commerce Sale and services.	Things and service production calls industry.
Object	Selling goods and services.	Things and services removes of the problem	Production things and services.
Scope	The area of business is limited, in which only the sale of goods is included in the sale.	In the commerce trade and trades sub activities include.	In the industry all type production activities include.
Utilitity	Rights utility is created	Time, place and right create	For utility made.
Mutual independence	Business base industry	Commerce base trade	Industry base commerce

(iii) Through commerce, time & place utilities are created.

(iv) Trade & auxiliary activities are included.

Therefore, commerce is one of the part of business. All activities related to commerce are divided in two parts- (a) Business - (b) Auxiliary activities of Business.

(a) Business - For the purpose of earning profit, sale and purchase of goods and services are called trade but in the competitive market the purpose of such purchase and the sale should be of mutual interest. So the meaning of business is sale and purchase of the goods for the mutual benefit of buyers and sellers. A person who is doing business is called business and business creats ownership.

Charactersitics of Business -

1. In Business sale and purchase of goods are include
2. The objective of business is to keep the mutual interest of selles and buyers.
3. In business goods and Services are sold direct and indirect manner.
4. Through business business utility are created.
5. Business as part of commerce.

(b) Auxiliary activities of Business - All those activities which help in sending all goods and services to from production to producers are included in supporting activities of business. These activities are transportation, storage, insurance, banking, cummunication advertisement etc. are completed through the medium of services. Wish these activities, there is creation of place and time utilies in business.

II. Business Auxilaries - All the work that helps the producers of goods and services to reach the consumer place are included in auxilaries of business. This work includes transportation, storage, insurance, banking, advertisement etc. All these actions create space and time utility in business.

Bank is that institution which does business of money and credit banks accept deposits of people of facilitate reduction in lending. Presently keeping customer convenince he also works as agent. Today net banking can operate from any location and customer can withdraw money and deposit money from 24 hours banking ATM machine.

As Banking Regulation act 1949, Banks are those which do Banking works. Banking refer to depositing money from puscican loan to investment public which can be demand and can be withdrawn by cheque or draft.

Bank Work -

A. Primary Task- Banks are classified in to two tasks and every bank performs these tasks.

(a) Accepting Deposit (b) Giving Loans

(a) Accepting Deposit - The major task of bank is to accept deposit from people. They accept money from the people; save money and give interest in exchange of deposit to their depositers. Bank invest their money the for welfare of society and construction of society. Thus by this way banks develop the habit of saving in people and help the country to become economicaly strong. Through following account banks provides the facility of accepting the savings of public.

(i) Fixed Deposit Account - The money is deposited for a fixed period of time and the period of time for deposite money is determined by the client according his or her needs and banks gives interest to the client. Banks also provide security of the amount. Banks also provide loans against fixed deposit amount before due dates after deduction of certain amounts.

(ii) Saving Bank Account- This account is more useful for low and middle class people. A person can deposit small amount of the money in the bank can with draw it when he or she needs. He or she gets little amount of interest for it and it encourages saving habit in the public.

(iii) Current Bank Account- This account is mainly useful for the businessmen. The amount can be deposited or withdrawn many time on work day, it depends on the needs of the business men. So no interest is given on this ammount. Banks provide overdraft facilities to the businessman.

(iv) Recurring Deposit Account- This account is opened by those person who want to achieve certain

objectives in a certain period by deposit small saving regularly at fixed intervals. The duration of this account can be one to ten years.

(v) Others Saving Account- Commercial banks operated for various objects as home saving account; daily saving deposit scheme, monthly interest income deposit scheme, argiculture deposite scheme, saving scheme for teenagers.

(b) Giving Loans - The another main function of the bank is to give loans. Money which is deposited by the people for saving purpose; Bank gives loans from that deposit to the businessmen, industrialist and other persons who needs loans. Bank charges interest at higher rate then the interest paid to its depositers. Thus banks earns profits following lending facilities prouded by business.

(i) Cash Credit - Under this the bank sets limit on borrowing for the applicant. Bank gives loans normal acceptance of merchants a bail. According to the merchent requirements the amount can be withdrawn till the time-limit determined and the interest is charged only on the withdrawn ammount.

(ii) Overdraft - Traders who have saving account in the banks; banks provide loans more than the saving deposit is collect overdraft. This facility is given by the bank to the traders on the credit of the traders and for short periods and the needs of the treaders.

(iii) Loan and Advance - This is normal way of giving loans by banks. Banks provide loans by suitable security and decide the rates and terms of the payment. If the amount is not paid within stipulated period then due amount is taken by selling of security by the banks. Rates of interest is decided by the objective of the loan, time period; security and the business of the recievers.

(iv) Letter of Bills Exchange - Under this method the bank pass fixed payment before the date of acceptance. For this work bank charges some amount which is equal to the interest for that period.

(A) Agent Work - Bank also do various works as agent for his customers.

(i) Collection of Cheque/ Bills of Exchange - The banks perform important function of depositing the cheques, bill of exchange draft, pledge letter, hundi to the customers accounts. Bank charges some amount for this work.

(ii) Payment of Cheque/ Bills of Exchange - Banks makes payment of cheque for its customer also accept bills for its customers and make payment.

(iii) Payment as per Customer Order - Banks make payment of insurance premium, house rent, interest, telephole bill etc. as per customer's order.

(iv) Money Dispatch Facility- Bank provide facility to send money from one place to another place on client request. This facility is provided by draft, by post and online banking by which money is transfered from one one place to another.

(v) Sale & Purchase of Securities - Bank sells or purchase securities govt or semi govt securities for her clients.

(vi) Working as Trustee and Manager - On the demand / order of client bank manage and secure his property and act as the trusty and manager.

(vii) Working as Agent - On the demand and order of client banks provide passport, exchange of money and other facilities ot her clients.

(viii) Withdraw or Deposit facitility by ATM for 24 Hours - Today it is not compulsory to go to bank for deposit or to withdraw money, it can be done by ATM machine 24 hours. Bank provides credit card which can be used everywhere in our country by using ATM machine twenty four hours. He or she can deposit or withdraw money without giving any charge to the bank. No charge will be given to bank using debit card but some amount will be paid when we use credit card.

General Useful Work - Bank does extra general work for customers

(i) To Provides Finacial Position - Bank gives provides finacial position and credit of the clients to other businessmen which help the business.

(ii) Bank Provides Lockers - They provide lockers facilities to the clients which secure ornaments, important documents and securities etc.

(iii) Bank Arrange Passenger's Cheque- Bank issue passenger's cheque charging minimum charges. It decreases risk to take case/money during travelling. So it is very useful and secure during tracelling.

(iv) Bank Assumptions Work- The Bank act as an under writer of the last loan letter of business establishments companies. That is if the shares are not purshased in the market. Then the it is purchase by the banks, bank take commission for this work.

(v) Bank Act as Financial adviser - Banks give financial advice to her clients and take small amount/ charges for this work.

(vi) Bank Arrange Clearing Houses- Banks manage clearing houses to solve mutual payments.

(vii) Bank Provides Public Loan Facilities- Commercial bank as the representative of Central banks sells treasury bills, bonds which are issued by the government.

(viii) Bank Helps in Foriegn Business- Commercial banks provides credit for foriegn business which is very important in business.

(ix) To Collect and Publish Financial Information- Banks also work to publish information related to economic and business activities which is useful for businessmen, economists, politicians and scholars.

(x) Other Auxiliaries Work- Apart from above work, banks providies other auxiliary services like guarantte, letter of credit, gift, cheque etc.

(xi) Creation of Credit - Bank not only support businessmen but also health in creation of money. Through deposits, bills of exchange bank creates credit.

Types of Banks-

As the economic developmnet there is rise in money and credit demand. In this way various types of banks developed. The process of specialization stated in the banks for establishment of special finacial bank. As a result of it providing special work to the bank. According to the nature of work, banks are classified as follows-

(a) Central Bank - This bank shares the highest position in the country. It controls credit and also regulate it. It also control the country banking print money and act as the representation of the government. Reserve bank of India performs such duties in India.

(b) Commercial Bank - The bank which does the banking activities are called commercial banks. This bank performs the task of deposite the money, gives loans, sending the money, issuing cheque bill; collect or give payment according to cheque, issuing credit certificate etc. In India commercial banks work both in private and public section. Twenty seven business banks including the state bank of India group work in the public section in India.

(c) Co-operative Bank - In India co-operative banks specilly work to meet the requirement of agriculture credit. This bank work on the principle of co-operative. In India the struction of co-operative bank all three dimentional - State co-operative bank; on the state level, Central co-operative bank; on the dist. level, primary co-operative agriculture; credit commities on the village level. Long term credit in agriculture is provided by the central and developemnt banks on state level and primary land developemnt banks are established on dist level.

(d) Industrial Development Bank - These banks provide as long term and term for the development of intrastructure of industries. These banks provide guidence for the technical management and marketing; After independence in India many development banks are set up. At national level national industrial policy 1948. Indian co-operative development bank 1964. Indian industrial credit and recostruction banks 1955 and at state level state finacial co-operative banks are established.

(e) Regional Rural Bank - These banks were established in India for arrangement of supply of credit with rural banks, rural gramin bank was

extablished on Oct 2,1975. At present more than 14,000 branches of 196 Regional Rrural banks in 516 districts are active in our country.

(f) Export Import Bank - These banks are established to promote foreign business. It provides export-import credit facilities in India. It was extablished in January 1982 in India.

(g) Invesment Bank - The task of these banks are to collect and invest small saving and get the benefit. In India LIC, Union Trust of India, Mutual Funds are working as Investment bank.

(h) Saving Bank - Separate saving banks have been set up in western country to encourage small saving of the general category. Commercial banks do this work in India.

(i) International Bank - After world war II in order to improve the economic condition and for the fast growth . These banks are established as international development bank in 1944. They are called world bank. It has two auxiliaries-

(1) International development association

(2) International financial co-operation

(j) Indigeneous Bankers - Indigeneoous Bankers are found in all parts of India. They make financial arrengements for agriculture and business. They are also called Mahajan, Sahukar, Sarrf.

Major Document of Banks- Normaly major documents are used in the banks- Cheque, bank draft and pay order (Banks cheque)

1. Cheque- It is a written document order in which a certain amount is given to a certain person or to a particular account number by the bank. According to section -6. Indian exchange act declaration act 1881, "Cheque is the exchange letter written on particular bank and it can't be paid any other way other than explicit demand".

Essential Elements of Cheque-

(i) It is always in written order; not oral.

(ii) It is written by customer to its banker.

(iii) There is no condition in cheque.

(iv) Payment is paid by fixed amount as written in the cheque.

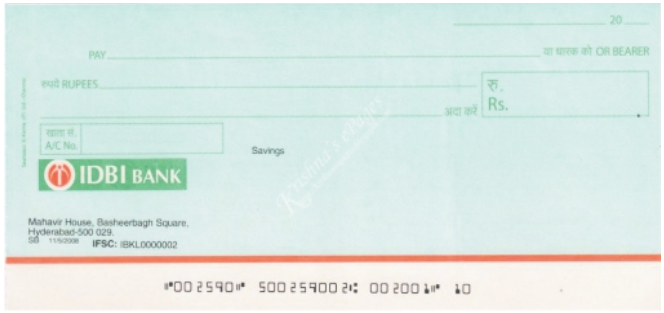
(v) The payment of the cheque will be only for the particular person or institution whose name is written on the cheque. The date of the payment will be decided by the client.

(vi) The cheque should be signed and should be verified by the bank from his copy available.

(vii) Account number and the date should be mentioned on the cheque.

(viii) Cheque must be used in printed format prescribed by the bank.

(ix) Date and account number must be mentioned on the cheque.



Parties to the Cheque-

(a) Drawer- he is the person who has account in the bank and he has rights to issue the cheque to another person.

(b) Payee- Bank is always payee on which customer writes the cheque.

(c) Recipient- he is one whose name is written on the cheque. Drawer himself can write his name on the cheque. If the cheque is sold then the carrier is the recipient. In this way a person who is autherised to get the payment of the cheque from the bank is called recipent.

2. Bank Draft - According to section 85 (a) of the party transaction deed act. It is the written order by the branding of the bank to the another branch of the same bank in which written amount will be paid on demand made by the person.

Bank draft is a simple, safe economical remedy for transmitting money from one place to another place, in exchange bank gets commission for this work.

Parties to the Bank Draft-

(a) Issuer bank- Issuer of profit is known as issuer bank. It charges a certain commission for making draft. Through draft issuer bank orders the other bank to make payment of it.

(b) Buyer - A person who wants to make draft is called buyer, for this he has to fill draft amount in the prescribed form and pay commission for it.

(c) Recipient- A draft which is written in favour of the person or an organisation is called recipient of draft and bank is responsible to pay the draft.

(d) Research Bank- The bank to whom Issuer bank orders to make payment is called Research bank.

3. Pay Order (Bank Cheque) - Banker cheque is issued to the local customer to pay the bank. It is applied by buyer in the prescribed form and deposited to the bank and paid the respective commission and amount. All the rules and regulations of bank draft are applied on pay order also. The commission on pay order is less as compared to bank draft.

4. Insurance-

In Indiavarious types of risk work covered in ancient time. Kings and business men covered the risk of the persons who were working under them. During working hours if any person became handicapped or died or he became very old, employer gave them financial support and looked after properly. So the employee felt safe in that period and did his work seriously. It was the ancient form of insurance.

Every person wants safety prosperity and happy life. We wants protection from disaster, adversity or unhappy life. So he tries to reduce or control rainy days but many times is not able to reduce or control them. Due to these disasters he gets loss and upset in life. If the head of the family or an earning member died or due to fire in the house or shop or accidental death or any other ups and downs in the business, he got financial loss. In this way we can say life is full of risk and ups and downs. The need to reduce or control risks causes the necessity of insurance.

The principle of insurance is based on 'mutual trust' and understanding. If there is no mutual trust between insured person and insurance agent, importance of insurance becomes null and void or useless.

Definition of Insurance- Many learned persons define insurance as

According to Sir Vilium Bevreej 'Collective bearing of risk of a person is called insurance'.

According to honarable justice Sir Tindal ' insurance is a contact in which after mishappening of a person or any disaster, insurance company has to pay is certain amount to the insured person'.

To study the definition of insurance many learned persons give a conclusion that insurance is contant in which insurance company gives a certain amount as a result of loss of any mishappening with an insured person.

Characteristics of Insurance-

1. Insurance is a Contract - Insurance is a contanct between insurance company and insured person in which insurance company has to pay a certain amount after loss or mishappening with an insured person.

2. Source of compensation- It is the effective and the best source to compensate the insured person when he suffering from financial loss. The principle

of insurance is not applicable or human life because human life cannot be compensaped by money.

3. Based on certain principles- Certain principles are followed by insurance company to insured a person. insurance is mainly based on principle of mutual trust, principle of benifit of insurance, principle of co-operation, principle of insurance and the amount of premium.

4. Insurance for pure risk- The main principle of insurance is to cover pure risks. The meaning of pure risk means a covers only the possibility of loss for example- fincial loss from death, accident, fire accident etc. It never covers possibility of profit.

5. Feeling of cooperation- insurance develops the feeling of one for all and all for one. It develops the feeling of mutual support and trust.

6. Science and Art- In insurance the principle of possibility is a main factor. The amount of premium is decided due to loss by useing various mathematical methods and statistical calculation. So it is science.

To develop awareness among the people for possibility of loss and business or any disaster or any mishappening, insurance can reduce the possibility of loss and support insured person so it is an Art.

7. Difference between insurance and gambling- insurance is a arrangement ot conpensate the insured person. There is no chance of profit in it. While in gambling there is a chance of getting profit also.

Insurance covers risks and protects insured person. But in the gambling there is a chance to get profit or loss. insurance company givers a certain amount to cover risk to insured person and that amount is not a donation. But theat amount is paid in exchange of preium paid by the insured person. Thus it is not a donation.

8. Insured amount is paid after the events- In insurance, insured amount is paid after completing insured period or any mishappening or getting loss to insured person or to nominee or successor. In this way insurance amount is paid after the maturity or insured period or death or a person or accident.

9. Insurance is a process- Insurance is a process to develop stability by the insurance company so instead of in stability insurance establishes stability, in insured person.

10. Develop saving Habit- Insurance develops the habit of saving because a insured person has to pay the premium in time.

11. Insurance Covers various elements- Insurance covers various elements as insurance agents, insurance policies and their condition, premium etc.

12. Insurance Covers Broader Field- Area of insurance is very broad. In which it includes death, theft, accident, fire accident, group insurance, agriculture insurance, medical insurance etc.

Usefulness of Insurance - Life is full of uncertainty and risks. So the improtance of insurance be comes more important. Insurance is very eseential for all the categories of the society. So govt of India provides better facilities and less premium for a common man. Following are the usefulnesses of insurance.

(a) Useful in person and family sense-

(i) Economic security from risk.
(ii) Developemnt of saving and investment.
(iii) Method of work efficiencies.
(iv) Planning of requirement in the future.
(v) Rebate in taxes.
(vi) Social security.

(b) Usefulness from Business and Financial Point of View-

(i) Saving from risk.
(ii) Capital and investment benefits.
(iii) Promotion of foreign traders.
(iv) Economic stability
(v) To promote innovation and research

(c) Usefulness from Social Point of View

(i) Stability and prosperity in family life.
(ii) Division of risk.

(iii) Employment opportunity

(iv) Promotion of education

(v) Tax rebate

(vi) Contribution in the expansion of the infrastructure.

(d) National Point of View

(i) Income in national saving.

(ii) Helpful in foreign trades.

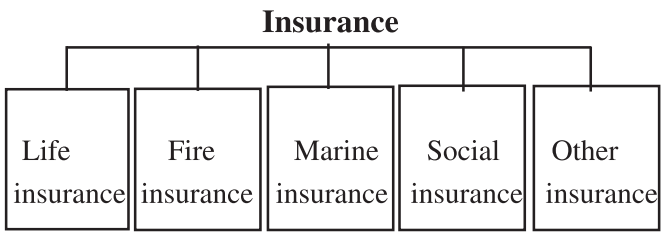
(iii) Increase the social welfare of the client/ employees

(iv) Help to control or reduce inflation.

(v) To increase national income.

(vi) Better utilization of the money.

Types of Insurance- Today the area of the insurance is very broad. All the risk areas are secured today. India is a developing country and is trying to become advanced country. Countries which are more developed are having various types of insurances to cover risks. Insurance is devided on the basis of the nature of the insurance.



Glossary-

(i) Insurance Agent- A person or an institution who takes premium from the insured person and promises to compensate the risk.

(ii) Insured Person- A person who pays the premium to the insurance agent and has right to cover risks and will get compensation in exchange of risks.

(iii) Subject Matter of Insurance- The property or the life which is insured is called subject matter of insurance.

(iv) Insured Money- The maxium amount which is insured in exchange of risks will be paid to the employee after the completion of the insurance period or after the death happened it will be paid to successor.

(v) Premium- Premium is the amount which is paid by the emplyee to the insurance agent in exchange of covering the risks.

4. Storage- Storage is very important in business activities. By collecting and storing the goods will not only increase the possibilitity of profit in the business but the safety of goods is also kept in the mind. Besides this, availbility of the goods in time is also assured.

5. Transportation - All production can't be used at the production centers. So goods/production are transferred to the required place. The work related to transfer of goods from one place to another place is called transportation. Transportation is based on services related to goods also related to transportation of man and material through rail , air, sea and roads. These services are very important in competetive market. Transportation removes the barriers related to the places. We have to develop better transportation facility according to economic condition. For this we need better roads and increase the routes of the rails. In our country we have few harbours so we have to increase the number of harbours and provide better facilities there. So government and industralists must be active to support and develop effective and better transportation facilities. Transportation is called life line of the business. In agriculture, manufacturing and construction area we get less profit due to poor transportation so it must be improved.

Transporation can be divided into

(i) Land Transport -

(ii) Air Transport -

(iii) Water Transport -

6. Communication- Communication is two way process in which feeling or opinion or messages are transmitted to a person or a group with intention of

giving information. Today computer or internet becomes the constant, best and cheapest source of communication. Computer and internet are very important because they communicate various types of activities and information but it is necessary that message which is sent will not change its meaning. At the same time according to the importance of the message, the remittance at the appropiate time also falls under the main purpose of communication.

Means of Communication- It is the divided into (A) Postal Services (B) Quick Communication Devices

(A) Postal Services - Post office along with provinding services of sending information to distand areas, it also provides service of commodity dispatch as well as money remittance. Postal services are divided into three parts:

(a) News Dispatch- Post office for news dispatch provide various services:

(i) Post Cards- Due to absence of confidential nature and little news, post card the cheapest and the easiest way of news dispatch. Its cost is only 50 P. and is available at any post office.

(ii) Printed Post Cards- This type of post card is used by business organization for the purpose of advertisement. Contest post card also comes in the same category which can be brought from post office. As per norns attached ticket on it.

(iii) Inland letter- Inland letter provides more space for news which is confidential also.

(iv) Envelope- Post office provides envelope in which confidential and detailed news or information are communicated. Today its cost is Rs 5/- if it has more than 20 gm weight extra charges will have to be paid. Business organisations and many persons use printed address on envelopes. Very confidential letters; legal documents are safe when they are sent by registered letter. Speed post is used for quick delivery and its cost is minimum Rs 25/-.

(b) Commodity Dispatch- Light weight and valuable things weighed 20 kg can be dispatched through post office. This can be sent by both registered or unregistired way. The charges depend on the weight of the commodity. This commodity can be insured by paying extra amount.

(c) Money Remittance- Post office provides the facilities to send money by money order; postal order and insurance paper.

(B) Quick Communication Devices-

(1) Telegram- Until sometime ago messages were sent through telegram from one place to another. Place and it is the single and quick communication. The charges of the urgent telegram is double as simple telegram. But due to advance technology this facility has been stopped.

(2) Telephone- By using this facility we can easily call a person nationaly or internationally. The tele communication companies take charges and provide this facilities. Today any person at any place can talk. Today internet website, e-mail etc. are the new revolutions in communication field.

(3) Fax- It is the small device which is connected with the telephone line by which written, printed and diagram; messages are sent with the help of the telephone line. These are recieved by the fax machine where they are sent.

(4) Internet- In the modern age internet is very important device. Today it is the best option to fulfil the all kind of needs. Internet always helps to write a letter, to talk with a person or relative or to buy books. It is the network that consists of private, public academic business and government network. It has the global scope and linked by electronic wireless and optical network. The internet carries a vast range of information resource series. It connects computers from different places or countries with the help of modem. Today many companies develop their own website and are avaiable in internet.

4.1 What is Website - A website is the collection of related web pages and information. We can receive

any information from the storage information directly at any time where website is a medium. If we want any information we write the name of the chapter or site and receive that information as we want to know the information related to environment then we have to see link or type http://www.envi.com and the information is avaiable on the monitor.

5. E-mail- E-mail is more popular in these days and everyone is familiar with the E-mail. This facility is also available in website. Through this any message can be sent anywhere in the world or can be received from any place. For this it is not necessary to have the same address of the website. We can send or receive information by using different websites . Some websites as yahoo, Google provides free facilities in the world or take no charges for their services. So many countries in the world are using its services. Books which are not easily avaiable in the library, to buy to sell magazine is done by this facility.

6. Video Conferencing- It is the technology that is used in different location to hold face to face meeting without having to move to single location. Website which provides on line conversation in facility. We can open the site with the help of mouse. We can send messages, opinion etc. Two or more persons can use this facility. It also provides the face to face conversation facility on monitor or TV screen.

(7) Computer - Information Technology

1. Introduction- Before 55 years ago we never thought about computer information technology and its development today man is dependent on it. In the absence of computer we feel disatisfied. Computers provide all types of information which we need. In this way from computer we get all types of information related to past or present or future, at home within seconds.

Today scientists, develop information technology by which we can know the information about aeroplane satelite, weather information, causes of disease and how to control, advance technology doing operations by the doctors etc. To sell or buy the goods is done easily by E-commerce in future. There is no need to move from one place to another to do the work because the work is done by computer. Today computer, CD Rom, multimedia, electronic publication, internet, online magazines, E-mail, homepage, buletine board system digital vedio disc are more popular among the people. Today library services are computerised (In the library) and provided quickly.

2. CD Rom- In this technology we can read the information and we can't change this information. Thousand pages of information can be collected in this disc. Today many books, dictionaries, magazines are available in it which can be read and taken points from it. Besides this we can read more than one CD at a time on computer with the help of CD tower

3. Multimedia- Multimedia, we can see, send or receive various information with the help of multimedia. Printing, radiom telegraph, television are the devices used in the past. But today television satelite, taperecorder, VCD, CD, and are used to send or receive imformation quickly.

Multimedia is used for study material - Diagram, scene, animation,simulation or mutual connectivity or intera activity with the help of computers. By using at users connect and they can create a new thing.

(A) Service Area- We divide service area in major three parts :

(a) Business Service- This service includes banking insurance, transporatation and communication services which have been discussed earlier.

(b) Social Service- These services are provided voluntarily for social purpose for example- To uplift the living standard of the weaker section of the society and to provide better education and food facitility for the weaker section of the children. It will improve health conditions and promote cleanliness in the society. Generally these services are provided by the voluntarily organizations and they take some charges

or amount for it. Some NGO's and governmnet agencies also provide health; education and cleaniness services.

(c) Personal Service- The personal time is the age of tough competition or we may say a person who ptovides better services will survive the market. Needs and demands are diffenent for the customers. So there is a no formalities of the services are required. So services are dependent on the demands and needs of the customers as travelling; tourism, entertainment etc.

Important Points-

1. Human activities are divided into two groups. (1) Economic activities (2) Non- economic activities

2. Economic activities can be divided in three groups. (1) Profit (2) Service and (3) Business

3. Economic activities which are related to production of goods and distribution and their object is satisfication of customer is knows as business.

4. To satisfy various categories of society - Profit objective, service objectives and human objective are the main objective of business.

5. Business activities can be divided into two groups. First group related to production activities and second group related to their distribution activities.

6. Production of goods with the help of physical resources for satisfying essential human needs is called industry.

7. With the regular flow of goods and services without any barrier between producer and cunsumer are included in commerce. They can be divided in two groups as- (1) Business and (2) Subsidiary activities.

Objective Type Questions

1. The purpose of business should be-
   (a) Earning maximum profit
   (b) Providing service
   (c) welfare of the employees of the organization
   (d) To earn profit by social service and satisfaction of customers
2. meaning of business is-
   (a) Production of goods
   (b) Sale-purchases of goods
   (c) Advertisement of goods
   (d) Any economic activity
3. Business includes-
   (a) Production of goods
   (b) Distribution of services
   (c) Distribution of goods
   (d) Production of goods & services
4. Which is not true from following-
   (a) Business means sales and purchases of goods
   (b) Commerce is part of business
   (c) Business is part of industry
   (d) Activities facilittaties business are called auxillaries
5. In ancient times, the temples were decoreted with gold in India because-
   (a) This tradition was used at the time
   (b) The trader of India sold foreign goods earned golden coin.
   (c) To devotees have a golden temple
   (d) The golden temple looked beautiful in seeing
6. Main work of banks are
   (a) To give loan
   (b) To accept deposit
   (c) To accept deposit and provide loan
   (d) To support business
7. The principle of idenity is not applied to-
   (a) Sea insurance
   (b) Car insurance
   (c) Life insurance
   (d) Fire insurance
8. Invest ment element is found-
   (a) Sea insurance

(b) Life insurance
(c) Fire insurance
(d) Crop insurance

9. What is the meaning of ultimate word trust is in the insurance contract
(a) Trust in the terms of the insurance letter
(b) Insured having trust in insurance company
(c) Trust between insurance agent and insured person
(d) Disclosure of all material fact by insured

10. Which of the following tools is the resources to send printed picture and send message in-
(a) Telephone (b) Telegram
(c) Telex (d) Fax

Very Short Question

1. Define- Business
2. Define- Profession
3. Following activities are related to which group of industry

Activity	Industry
* Catch the fish from sea -	.....
* Clothing wearing -	.....
* Animal husbandry -	.....
* Construction of dam -	.....

4. By which sub-sidary activity can be controlled related to distance.
5. By which sub-sidary activity can be removed risk.

Short Type Question

1. Give any four characterstics of business.
2. What activities are included in commerce?
3. How business differ from commerce?
4. Explain types of industries.
5. Give any four activities of business objective.
6. Give any four activities of human objective.
7. How many types of transportation are there?

Essay Type Question

1. Define the meaning of business and explain its characteristics.
2. Explain the objectives of business. Explain in detail.
3. Write an essay on the area of business.
4. Explain difference between business, commerce and industry.
5. What do you mean by industry?
6. Give brief description of different types of banks.
7. What is cheque and give necessary elements of cheque?
8. Describe all sources of communication.

Answer of Objective Questions

1. (d)	2. (b)	3. (d)	4. (c)	5. (b)
6. (c)	7. (c)	8. (b)	9. (c)	10. (d)

Chapter-19

Book Keeping

As we know commerce, business and trade are found from ancient times. Gradually with the development of human civilization people started keeping records of their business transaction but along with the development of human civilization, business- commercial activities started increasing, therefore to keep the accounts in more arranged form entries were done in books and gradually it is called Book keeping and Accounting.

In India Accountancy is as old as money. It has been shown in our hostry also. In vedic period (5000 -1000 B.C.) tradition of statement of accounts has been seen. Concept of profit and accounting historians from vedas. Ramayana and Mahabharata also described in 'Manu Sahita' (200 B.C. to 200 A.D.) Economics of science and diplomacy are also described in the account method of that time, but in the present's scenerio, Accounting is limited to the recording only because of shortage of time. Today the same Accounting has become the distinct branch of knowledge. In ancient times accounting that only Accountable to his master but it is considered important for the entire society in the present age.

Development of the ancient from Accounting, mainly keeping the relationship with important parties of the business units, keeping in mind their needs also correct determination of arrear of various taxes related to the operation of the business. Over the last few years expansions and technical changes in the production competative market, have made remarkable charges in the field of Accounting.

Accounting is both Science and Arts. Just like science it is a systamatic, well organised study. Accounting is also based an certain rules, principles and art of doing any work in high quality. And this is what we also do in both Accounting and science. Principles of Accounting are used in the accountability of competent skill so that the purpose of Accounting can be achieved. In the end it is said that Accounting is both science and Art.

Meaning and definition of Accounting.

As per R.N. Authony every business enterprise has Accounting system. It is the means of collecting, summarizing, analyzing and reporting in monetary term, information about business.

The American institute of certified public A countants (AICPA) definies accounting as: the art of recording, classifying and summarizing in a significant manner and in terms of money, transaction and events which all in part at least of financialcharacter and interpreting the results therory.

Characteristics of Accounting

1. It is a continuous activity.
2. It is Art and science of classifying and writing business events.
3. Only those events are recorded in the Accounting which are expressed in money.
4. It helps in promotion, analysing and summarization of transaction.
5. Related parties received quantitative financial information through Accounting.
6. With the help of Accounting, it is possible for people and institution to choose the best option and give the best opinion.
7. Summary of the measurement, classification and summary of all the informations of the writing should

be given to the respective parties.
8. As an Accounting information system it now provides a significant exchange of decision making process.
9. Accounting is a specific education of knowledge of transplantation of economic activities.

Book-keeping and Accounting

Book keeping is the word formed with two words Book + keeping. It means systematically recording of the events in the books. keeping the books of Accounts means the books are written acording to the rules of books. Following are the definitions of Book keeping-

As per Battiboy ''Book Keeping is the art of recording transaction in a systematic manner.''

According to Proff. Kotler "Pre-conceptual planning, analysis of behaviour, classification and Accounting process is called book keeping.

Now we can say that Book keeping is prepared by individual or any business unit as per principles and rules and regulation in order to calculate profit or loss and also to know the financial position of company.

In this way we can say that Book keeping is the first step of Accounting and we can differentiate it in following manner.

Object of Accounting :

1. Account of all economic practices.
2. Determination of profit & loss.
3. Financial positioning.
4. Effective control on business.
5. To provide the informations of the parties in the

Difference between Book-Keeping and Accounting

S. N.	Areas	Book-Keeping	Accounting
1.	Area	It has narrow area. It is first step of Accounting.	Its area is broad and includes book-keeping.
2.	Objective	Its main objective is to prepare books like ledger book, journal book etc. only.	The objective of Accounting is to classify, analyse and summarize the business activities.
3.	Work level	It is primary level and done by the Accounting clerk.	It is related to lower, middle and upper level. At lower level books are Prepared by Accounting clerk, in middle level Accountants Prepare report and at upper level analysis and Summarization is done.
4.	Interdependence	Book keeping is the art of writing at the primary level.	Accounting makes it meaningful and objective hence these is highly interdependence between Accounting and Book- Keeping.
5.	Financial statement Result	Not possible to calculate result of financial statement	Financial statement results can be calculated also the profit and loss with the help of Accounting.
6.	Accounting Principles	It is adopted by Book-Keeping	The method of analysis and accounting facts vary from time to time in different occupation.

welfare of business.
6. To prepare the various tax information.
7. To provide necessary information to financial institutions.

Methods of Accounting

Various activities related to business have been developed by considering the value of business, size of cost, cost benefits, legal requirements, need of information etc. Following three methods are adopted in india for Accounting.

(1) Single entry Accounting

In single entry Accounting, the gilatiral theory of accounting is not kept in mind. It is prepared as per need and requirement of any institution. Some parties focus only on transaction and ignore other transaction but some parties equaly give importance to other transaction. Resulting some transaction recorded or double entry system and some are recored single entry system. So it has been seen that single entry system will not have any systemmatic rules, principles. so it won't have static rule.

Normally the system is used by small business units. Books (Bahi) are kept in which businessmen maintain accounts of income and expenditure. Normally, sale is done on cash basis. For credit sale memory book or raw book is maintained. Thus it is incomplete & non-practical method of book keeping and not used by business firms.

(2) Double entry system

Double entry book keeping in accounting is system of book keeping so named because every entry to an account requires a corresponding and opposite entry to a different Account. The double entry has two equal and corresponding sides known as debit and credit. It is a complete and qualified method. It has its own principles & rules. According to this only two transactions are recorded which has dual aspect. It is used the entric world. By this method, we can prepare indual, real and unreal accounts and know the financial position and financial results of the business. In the whole universe this system is followed and final accounts are prepared and financial position are ascertain at the end of the financial year.

Leadger of .....
..... account

Credit Debit

Date	Particulars	Jf	Rs.	Date	Particulars	Jf	Rs.

The Origin and Development of double entry system

This method was developed 500 yrs BC in Italy. So it is also called Italian Method of Accountancy. In 1494 Lucas Paciyolie described the principle of this method in the book "De Composet Scriptures" and it was translated English Loss Old Cancel in London in 1543. In 1795 Adward Johns wrote a book "The English System of Book Keeping" on this method. Gradually this method was improved. Now it is perfect and sciencetific method. It was used during British period in India.

Meaning of double entry system :

Every business activity has two parts. If one is receiver then second is giver. If one is seller then other is buyer. If an object or property is received by one then it comes from second. In this way profit is called for one bussiness man then it is expenditure for another business. To write these bussiness activities following the principle of accountancy in a book is called double entry system.

Charactastics of double entry system :

1. Every transaction has dual aspect. One transaction has debit entry and other has credit.
2. Similarly every Account has two aspects which are called debit and credit. Transactions are recorded according on debit side or either credit side.
3. The entry which is recorded on debit side in one Account is recorded on credit side in other Account.
4. Ledger is imporant book which has all ledger related to the business.
5. After All ledger are prepared, trial balance all prepared through which truthfulness of transactions is ascetained.

Principle of double entry sytstem :

1. Every entry has dual aspect : It means one

transaction is recorded in debit side and in other Account is recorded as credit side .

2. It has effect on both parties : It effects on both the parties.

3. Giver and receiver : Every transaction must have one giver and one receiver and it has effect on both the parties.

4. Exchange of equal Amount : The Amount of money of a transaction the parts gives is equal to the Amount the parts received.

Stages of double entry system :

It is divided in to three categories, all are those three stages. It works in systematic manner. The stage follows the next one. They are following :

(i) Primary books :

In the primary books, transaction are recorded as they happen. Transactions are recorded in Journal books. A small business man records all transaction in books which are called Journal. But big Business with keep differeant which all called Journal big Business units keep differant Journal books for differnat events or transaction and these all books are the part of journal.

(2) Classifcation and Khatoni :

Recording of transaction in primary books does not fulfil our objectives. Primary books is the only mean to remember all the commercial transactions in writing form. It does not tell how much money is to be recovered from which merchant. How much is to be paid and to whom? How much has been purchased or sold during specific time period? How much was expended and how much earned? It is because that expense made on items are not entered at one place but they are scattered datewise. The above information can not be traced until all the entries made at one place.

The second stage of accounting is the main book keeping in double entry system. Each party opens an account regarding income and expenditure. In this, first entries are selected and then written in their related accounts. The work of selecting entries is called as classification and the work of writting these entries in accounts is called 'Khatoni'. In business, book keeping is the main book through which various information can be easily available.

(3) Summary & formation of final Account :

Final Accounts have many Accounts through which profit & loss and financial position of any company can be easily calculated. Where all ledgers are prepared. Their Trial balances are prepared through which final Account is fomulated. These financial Accounts help the company to calculate profit and loss, to make comparision and also calculation of financial position is done. This is the third stage of Book keeping and Accountancy.

Benefits of double entry sysem :

Double entry system is a logical and systermetic and scientific method. It is used in the entire world. It has following benefits :

1. Complete and scientifically based Account:

Double entry system is a complete method of accountancy in which various indivdual transactions and accounts related to expenditure are kept. The rules and principles on which it is based are purely scientific. Due to dual aspect choices of errors are low and even some errors occurred are easily detected.

2. Account based on Reliabity :

It is highly reliable method as entries are recorded on both debit side and credit side. The amount which is written one side the same.Entry is written on the other side. If any error is accured at any side it can be easily detected at the time of preparing trial balance. Thus truthfulness and correctness are easily measurable.

3. Profit & Loss information :

By this method profit & loss of any business unit can be easily measured. A bussiness man can know about the profit or loss of his business preparing income and expenditure statements

4. Knowledge of financial position :

In this method all types of properties (Loss and profit) and responsibilities are kept and business behaviour are also mentioned. Thus by using it we can know the economic position of any business on a perticular date.

5. To help in business information :

By using this method information about income and expenditure, sell and buy , money (Profit and loss in the business) various properties and

responsibilities in business can got easily. The amount which will be paid or received by the party can be easily calculated.

6. Less chances of cheating and dishonesty :

Using this system each entry is written both the sides. So it is less chance of cheating and manipulation. If any emplyee does so he can be caught easily.

7. Comparitative study :

It is a complete system. At the end of financial year, ledger, profit-loss and final Accounts are prepared. We are able to know the profit or loss of current year by comparising the current year account with the last year account.

These profit & loss of current year are compared with the profit and loss last year. Through which company comes to know how much profit or loss has been changed. Hence it is used for comparitative study. If there is loss in business, it can be controlled easily.

8. Recognized legally :

As this method is scientifily based, it is legally recognised by the compaines act and various other Acts. It is mandatory for banking, insurance and big companies to keep as per double entry system.

Limitation and demerits in dual entry system :

Although double entry system is totally scientific yet it has some limitation and demerits.

1. Error of mission doesn't affect Accounts :

If any transaction is ommitted then it doesn't affect the books. If goods are sold on credit to Sunil for Rs.1000 and it is not recorded by the clerk. The entry is not seen both the credit and the debit side. Hence it doesn't show any effect in trial balance.

2. Wrong entry also does not effect books :

If there is a wrong entry at the initial level. Then the wrong amount is written in the books and it has no effect on trial balance. For example if goods was sold for Rs. 5000 to Sohan but it was written for Rs. 500 then it would be written the same amount Rs. 500 in the buyer's book and it has no effect on trial balance.

3. Difficult to find errors :

Sometime difference of the certain amount from the debit account is written then the same amount is occured in the another credit account and it has no effect on trial balance. It is very difficult to find out.

4. No effect of wrong entry in favour of right account :

Sometimes it so happens that wrong entry is made in favour of right account holder and nobody is abled to find this error. For example amount of Rs. 5000 is debited from Mohan's account instead of Sohan's account.

5. Costly method :

The double entery system is highly costly than other methods because it has more expenditure to maintain huge registers and records. But big firms don't find it costly as it povides huge benefit and more utility in the business than others.

This system require highly qualified and skilled persons. Less qualified people are enefficient ot do this work. If books are kept in English, special trained persons are needed

Mahajani Book keeping system :

Mahajani book keeping system is also complete and scientific in itself but it could not develop much due to lack of literature and discovery. Then it was not encouraged during British rule because they preferred English book keeping system. So it cound not get that equal status to that of English book keeping system. There is also no excellent book written having detailed information in this system. So that traders may get an opportunity to read it. But, then to it is much previlent in India. So Indian student must have good knowledge of keeping accounts of this system.

Characteristics of Mahajani Book Keeping system :

1. It is purly complete and scientific method.
2. It observes the principles of double accounting.
3. Accounts books are used in this system to keep accounts. The paper of which is thick and smooth. It is long in size. It is covered with thin rough paper and red cloth. it is sewed with durable thread from one side. Due to its long sides it is easy to fold in the

middle.
4. No lines are drawn in these account books like registers instead of pages are folded in lines.
5. Entries in those account books are made in black ink instead of blue and red.
6. Accounting in this system can be made in Hindi, Gujrati, Marathi, Gurumukhi, Sindhi, urdu and in any languages whichever is convenint. To keep the account confidencial many traders use "sarafe and Mundiya" script.
7. The amount in rupees and paisa is written in seperate columns. In this system for example after writing rupee, half bracket is made. If paizes are mentioned; rupees are writter in half braket and paises are written outside braket. For example 25 Rs. 50 paisa will be written like 25) 50. In this system English date and 'Hindi Tithi' are mentioned.
8. In this system, both hindi and english dates are written.

Method of keeping Account According to Mahajani Book Keeping :

Double account of transaction is kept in this method like that of English book keeping method. Business transctions are kept in three stagess :

1. Elementary Enteries :

Every entry of transaction is made date wise in detail in account book at first stage for the sake of memory. The entry of such details in account books is called debit and credit.

In books, each activity is entered with date in detail accordingly serial wise. Making entries in books of elementary accounts is known as deposit-expenditure.

2. Classification and Collection :

At second stage such initial entries are classified according to their nature and entered in concored accounts serial wise. The collection of this procedure is known as 'Khatoni' (entry). The book in which all the entries are made is called 'Book Keeping'.

Three types of accounts are kept in mahajani book keeping like that of english 'double entry system'.

(a) Personal or Dhanivar Account
(b) Material Accounting
(c) Loss and Profit Account

There is only one 'Goods Account' like english method 'sale perchase and 'Sale-purchase' cannot be divided in accounts. There are no seperate accounts for custom and freight. They are included in goods account.

3. Summary or Preparation of last Accounts : The result of all these things in a certain period in lost and third stage can be known in two views- :

(a) Preperation of loss - profit Account keeping in view of is prepared 'Loss - Profit Account'

(b) Preperation of data to know economic condition.

Rules of entries in Account Books : There are same rules of entries in mahajani account books as in double account system.

Comparision of Mahajani Book Keeping and English Method :

It has already been described that Mahajani book keeping is same as english book keeping. Because the base of entries in both the methods is double entry system. Account is kept in three stages in both the methods (Initial entry classification and collection and summary writting). Both the methods are equal in principle but different in practical use. So it would be better for students know the similarities and dissimilarities of both main systems.

Similarties of Mahajani book keeping and English account method :

1. Both the methods are based on double account system.
2. Account in both systems is kept in three stages (i) Initial entry (ii) Classification and collection (iii) Summary
3. Correction of calculation can be tested in account books by preparing tables in both the tables.
4. Status of profit and loss in business can be found out by preparing data of profit and loss after a certain period in both methods.
5. The rules of credit and debit in both accounts are same.
6. Both methods are totally scientific.

Qualities of Mahajani Book Keeping -

1. The account books used in this method are cheap, solid and durable. There is no problem of drawing line in it because folds are made before sewing the papers.
2. The method of entry in this method is easy because intial entries in account books are made in favour not against it.
3. While making entries only page number of account book and Miti is mentioned. There is no mention of other account. So the entry is much easier.
4. There are no need of book keeping more account books for intial entries because a small trader keeps record of cash and credit in the same account book.
5. The amount of transaction is written once at the top and again at the bottom in this method. So there is no change of mistake.
6. This method is favourable to Indian circumtances. It can be written in any regional language convenient to him. There can be more or less of account books according to need. It is different in different parts of the country but proved to be more useful.
7. According to this method, there is no special qualification or training required to mentain accountability any one can easily learn from a person.
8. The accountants of this methods are easily available at small salary because they need no expense on training.
9. Black ink is used in this method.

Glossary used in this Mahajani Book Keeping System

1. Books (Bahiyan):

The books which are written in the Indian Book keeping system are called Bahiyan. These bahiyan (books) is different from the register kept in the English system.

2. Credit and debit :

In the Indian Book keeping system cash book and Account book are divided into two equal parts. On the left side four columns are prepared for recording deposites and on right side and it is also divided into four columns which is called Name column. It is totaly different from English book keeping system.

3. Sira and peta : Each book (Bahi) has credit and debit. First column called sira and remaing three column called peta. In the column of Sira write amount and remaining in column Peta write particular. Peta's first column in side we write.

Format of Mahajani Book Keeping System

1	2	3	4	1	2	3	4
Sira	Peta	Peta	Peta	Sira	Peta	Peta	Peta

4. Sal (fold) : In Indian Book keeping system , pages are smooth, white or yellow in column. The pages are folded as their requirent as 6, 8, 12 or 16 folds are found on one page. These folds are used to write amounts in detailed. These are called sal also.

5. Sire Chadana : Amounts of all deals are written in column of Sire. Therefore, the method of writting amount in column of Sire is called " Sire Chadana".

6. Accumulation of deposits : In the business transactions are recorded in column section. It is called Accumulation of deposits.

7. Steedi : It is a sign to write amount in Rupees and Paisa as 158 Rs. 80 Paisa can be written as 158)80 Steedi and if only Rs. 185 is to be written then 185) will be written in this manner. After putting the symbol of Steedi, there is no need of writing Rupees.

8. Widh Millana : Business man writes all the transation in the cash book and in the evening tally credit and debit accounts with the money from 'Galla'. This method is called 'Widh Milana'.

9. Dodhya karna : The Acounts are closed by placing the sum of the two sides and it is given the place in the final account. This process is called Dodhya karna.

10. Cash Balance : Every day when business man close shop. Write Rs in business called 'Rokar Pote Bahi' or cash in hand.

11. Valta : In the cash book two side transaction are written and called Valta. In english system it is called entry.

12. Padat : Padat means rate of goods or goods rate. as rice rate is Rs. 20 per kg. So Indian book keeping system write padat Rs. 20 per kg called.

13. Capacity (Bharat) : The weight of goods filled

in container is called capacity. Businessman uses goods in sackes; tins etc. The capacity of one sack of wheat is one quintle. Then 35 bags of wheat weight is 35 quintle. Similarly capacit of one tin is 15 litres oil then 10 tins litres weight is 150 litres.

14. Band Bahi : This Bahi is also called memorization Bahi, or it is also called 'Daily Bahi'. Due to the mobilization of business custmers, the connection to each transtion can not be written immediately. According to his spare time, he completed it.

15. 'Krishna Paksh' and 'Shukla Paksh' : In India each month is divided into two parts one is Krishna Paksh (Which is known asVadi) and other is Shukla Paksh (It is called Sudhi). Each Paksh has fifteen days.

16. Miti : Indian way the dates are called 'Miti'. This word is used before the name of the month as Miti Kartik Vadi Samwat 2058. Here Samwat shows the number of years. Numbers are also written in Hindi instead of English.

17. Mel : In Indian book keeping system the traders writes the date, the month and Samwat of the day before writing the deal. And also writes the name of the favourate God and the name of Bahi for example- If trader writes chatra shukla Samwat 2058 date 5 April 2001 but in Indian Bahi trader writes. Shri Ganeshay Namo, Subh Miti Chatra shukla 1 Samwat 2015 date (Miti) 5 April 2001. In This way Miti and date is called Mel.

Objective type Questions :

1. Which is highly scientific method in book keeping and Accounting-
   (a) Single entery system
   (b) Cash method
   (c) Mahajani system
   (d) Double entery system
2. Double entry system means any transtions -
   (a) One account and two side posting
   (b) Two accounts and Dr. side posting
   (c) Two accounts and Cr. side posting
   (d) One account Dr. side and second account Cr. side posting.
3. In which stage we can set the financial position of the business.
   (a) classification (b) Summary
   (c) Opening account (d) Posting
4. When Businessmen initally invested money in business is called-
   (a) Asset (b) Capital
   (c) Liabilites (d) Drawing
5. Mahajani account method on basis :-
   (a) Single account system
   (b) Cash method
   (c) Double entery system
   (d) None of above

Very Short Type Questions :

1. How many folds are there in Mahajani Bahi?
2. By which 'Pacca Cash Book' is made.
3. What is the meaning of Account in aAccount book?

Short Type Questions :

1. Explain the three advantage & two disadvantages of book keeping.
2. Give the name of the first stage of book keeping double entry system books (Bahis).
3. Explain definition of Accounting.
4. Explain any three objectives of Accounting.
5. Give defination of Accounting principle .

Essay Type Question :

1. What is Accounting ? Explain its main objectives?
2. According to the principle of double accounting system the selunity for each name is below.
3. Explain the merits and demerits of double entry system.
4. What do you mean by book keeping and accountancy? Explain the difference between them.
5. Explain the role of accounting in detail.
6. What is the Mahajani Book keeping system. What are its characterstics?
7. Mahajani Book keeping system is complete and scientific method. Explain your views on it?

Answer of Objective Type Questions :

1. (d) 2. (d) 3. (b) 4. (c) 5. (c)

Chapter-20

Disasters and Management

On the basis of orgins, there are two types of disaster as is 1. Natual disasters and 2. human born disasters these two disasters have immense loss of public money. With the help of this desciption of both disaster from the safety and managment point view.

Natural disasters

Changes is continous process of nature. Such of chanrges found same time fruitful to the human but if the charges cause loss then it is called Natural disaster.

Natural disaster took places with in second in nature through which every one has to face may problem due to it.

Causes origin of Natural disaster

There are not one but many reasons for any natural disaster. The afluence of the internal and drahuas forces effect directly like eaithquale volcous etc.The in dis pensable in sulation of the continious human instance of human and the nature of land use in the growing population. As the result of desinclur of forest the refuge of last have put the environment in the jeopady this is causing the problem of global warning which is spreading progress in same places. Human horning human equbltion are indisectly inviting the natural disaster.

Classification of Natural Disasters

From the point of vief of origin, Natural disaster is classified as follow.

1. Topography disasters : Natural disaster are include is there which occure due to sudden changes into prograpical such as easthquarte, candslide volcano as etc. in india volcanoes ar not a active.

2. Seasonal disasters : There include natural calomitics which arise due to seas and charges such as tsunani cyclone, eathquale etc.

3. Disaster caused by organins : Generate by orginism disasters In fuis there disaster incluse whichis cased by organism some ain male live Malauia dead animal plaque etc.

Natural disaster and Management

Management mean the duty of everybody at every level is ensue relief of the crision & that two on time. introduction of the character of society in the counlry after the natuual disaster human sernce meets the work done by them following factore affect the managment.

1. Economic condition
2. Positive thinking of individual
3. Feeling of cooperation
4. Social intergrity fidelity
5. Geographical situations
6. Mode of transpart and communication
7. Population density

Following are the details of the major disaters of all three of the above natural calamities and management related to their coutemparts.

Earthquake

Whenthere is bibration in the earth in any event orcuring is the interior part of the earth that called it earthquake earthqualici desastating natural disester. Itbring devastating changes in a few nomenal Earthquaali is calculated by seismograph in rictar seale. This is developed by chales Rictor an his name only the instrument is called Rictor. The spale is measurned as 1 to 12 Rictor if earth qurte is measure 5 an rictor scale then he called earth qualke as mormal.As the scale risethe earthquake would take disaster shape.

Reasans for the earthquake origin

Earthquake is the result of the tectonic motic of the earth. Plato's effects in economic activities laeeses earthquake. Coutinious process of equilibruin on earth also resulth in earthquake. continious head

from the lead it antiaction. This process ouns for very longtime, but this conticuation also ciras the earthquake origin.

Earthquake area

In the view of the major earthquake in india, it is known that the orthern counteries region is the most innovative mountain of it foothll.The heimalyes are part of new bundle mountain which is stile in some meditaine state. There is still no balance of sistuation in the himalysn region this area has chance of more earthquake. peninsula plateu is conondaed as part of earthquake but after koyna latur earth quake it is also considaed a earthquake area. This happen with Gujrt kach & Bhuj.

Earthquake - A crisis

Earthquake is such a natural disaster that in a few moments such a form of destructive dhanges makes groups of common society hearts is dead. Thousands of people from the earthquake will become in at inadmissible times. Cracks on the surface of the earth traffic break down buildings rost like a pile of sand cannel, bridges and damage. This is synonumous with dangers in the future.

Earthquake Rescue and Management

1. At government and social level : After natural calamition like earth quake all governments provide immidiate relie ina arintis like india when the population density high the lost of life is more. It is necessary to spread the trap of earthquake writing measurement mentias in the country so that the knowledge of the is of earth quake know in advance whenever the possibelity of earthquake ereses then the people should made aware through by media.

2. **At the personal level :** If them is a feeling of an earthquake then persnaly make sem atecisur immeditely to go to the open space, with off the gose and lights free the pets. It is possible become as earthquake aise man realizes the thing.

Every persa should unite himself in this situation inrespection of caste a cread or relegin and help the needy people. People in india have presnted a unique example by helping vrictims logethan.

Landslide

Landslide

Sloping of clay sclify slopeing down from the slope is called landslide of muca layer scale starts slowly and make sound of sheezing and its sounds rises and gradnaly

Reason for landslide

There is no single cause for landslide. There are many casises which result in landslide.

1. Natrual reason : In this structure of rocks, shield of land Rocks wash, Heavy rainfall, Expansion of regetation are primary caeses. Landslide all high is the newbending mountain area because there are weak rocks due to continous procesing of gratuity.

2. Human causes : Natural disaster like mening due to in antrlled develometns of humans. In the rocks with forest destruction the root of the grassland leaves a strong hold, the end of soil erosion begins. Soil erosion gradually takes form of landslids. Road anstruction tunnel antruction lead to Human caise of landslide.

Landslide sesmic Zone

In indian landslide takes place in hemalyan region followed by western ghats region. Where river floe is high, there alsolandslide is moil. The construction of roades in North Eastern India and Jammu regin Landslide is mu sea share where errosias is more landslide is more.

Landslide : A crisis

Landslide blocked the rout of rivers so some where blocking the rout of the traffic with the blocking of the road like becomes busy. The balance of demand and fulfilment deteriorates landslides occur in populated areas so it is causes loss of both public and money. People are buried in a heap of debries. Even in Uttaranchal heavy lands were lost due to landslides. Due to the landslides the road are blocked and here a temporary lake becomes when this lake breaks then there is loss of money and people. An example is a flood a kedarnath.

Landslide and Management

1. At government and social level : Here than 90% of landslide happen due to rainfalld where as the transport routes have been constencted in the mountain area, there should propes arangment of both the routine and the rain wate draine. In the construction of the drains both the debris up to 45 dajra anyle should be removed dering construction if it is not possible to remove the strong wale it should suppert the role.

Flood

2. At the personal level : an going through by can if rain started in the landslide region then vehicle should be stopped by one side. Build the house in the mountainious are on the strong ground. Aftect people by landslip should be help fuly hearted.

Floods

Due to the contant rainfall the water of the river brerks their emsankmants & sprealsin to vary large area it is called flood.

The uneven distribution of rain is the main reason cause natural disaster in India. Every year in India there is flood in some areas. In India 4 crore hectare are considered as flood affected areas.

Due to its large size and mansoon climate, both natural disaster affect India. Due to their general attitude and passive mindset Indians have ever since accepted floods as an act of God.

Causes of flood

Due to no flow of water lable to the flowed area. In the raing leason, sitting with water, cateching the depressed route landed due to which the water rent fair outside the edyes & takes the shape of the flood. It is also responsible for the destruction of the fodder of the forest from the ground. on otherway population of upperroute, costruction of traffic routes in explicable and natural causes can be all the cause of flood.

Flood Affected areas in India

India's flood affected area due to distribution of raintael determines the 90% of flood in the north eastern Area. Floods flowing in the northwest of India satlag, vyas, Ravi, Chenab, Jhelum are less where is flood in the ganga, Jammuna, Ghagra flood is more. Flood in Damodar river and kosi are very devasting therefore kosi river is a curse in Bihar, Damodar river is said to bea curse in Bengal.

In the North East, the Brahmaputra flows through a valley. Every year this valley is flooded. In this area the average rainfall is more than 250 cm.

Flood-Problems and Disasters – From the year 2000 onwards, the occurrence of floods in India have become more frequent. Around 80 Lakhs hectare get affected from it. In about an area of 35 Lakhs hectare crops are destroyed. Life gets disrupted in about 3 crore hectare area. From an economic point of view there is a loss of about Rs. 1000 crore every year. Livestook are the most affected by the flood, and around 12 lakh livestock are lost, and upto 12 lakh houses are damaged.

In India More then 60% flood disaster happens in UP & Bihar, followed by West Bengal, Assam and Orissa.

Human life is inconvenienced, roads are heavily damaged and crops are damaged. Water sources get polluted, sources of communication break down. There is a fear of epidemic spreading. Dams, Lakes & canals are liable to be damaged.

Flood Management

1. At government and social level : In the water of flood measure are taken for its preventas on this derection the National flood control scheme was started is 1954. In this plan, it was started is 1954. in this plan it was decided to build water flow drains an the constraction of river embankment work of making dans under multipurpose scheme has also done in flood affected Area.

In this control the dams were build an Mahanandi Daroda, Sutlg, Vyas, Chamsal river.

It should be kept is mind that when its cuntructed it does not abstonct the natural flow of water.

Inrode to avoid the loss of food problem in 1954 flood fore asting againsation was established. Flood control room wsa established at each district headquarters. weather irrigation department observe the Amount of rainfull & Arrow of water flowing deeing it mansoon is the rain season.

2. Air ciraulation and weather partners also cause drought. Key events like E. nono or La nina help contribate to drought is aras.

2. Personal level : Individual should keep listening to one news in the raing reason on the Doordarshan channel. If thay an living in the flood pro one are should follow government instraction Turn of the power equipment. Precious term & cloths should be taken from house to the safe palce so that ehey can some other people also untill flurod water has not

seen down flow. Vehicles & pets should be placed at safe plce. If in the house, of they start moving ap from the danger make try to reacn in safe palce as early as possible.

Drought

When a region has lach of flora A drought is a period of below average precipitation in a given region, resulting in proloveged shortages in the water suppl. Whether atmospheric, Surface water or ground water. A drought can last for months or years, or may be declared after as few as 15 days.

Causes of drought

Mechanism of prodicuing precepitation include convective, stratiform and irgraphic rainfall convective process involve strong verticle motision that can cause the oveturning of the atmoshper in that location.

1. Land and water temperatuers causes drought As overall tempartures increaes more water evaporates and severe weather conditions increase. Landscafe and crops need more water to survive and overall the demand for water increases.

Drought affected areas in India. 30% area gets affected by drought and an average of 5 crore people are affected every year. The Irrigation department in India has divided the drought affected areas in two parts- **Firstly**, more than 25% land area is marked under uncertainty, which includes western Rajasthan and western Gujrat. **Secondly**, 25% land area is marked under uncertainties which includes eastern Gujrat, eartern Rajasthan, Punjab, Hariyana, Utrakhand, western MP, mid, Maharashtra, interior Karnataka, southern AP, mid Karnataka, North western Bihar, western Uttar Pradesh and Orissa.

In India around 77 districts have been declared drought prone, and among these most are in the western part of India.

Drought Problem and Difficulties-

Famine is the biggest problem caused by drought. The more there is a scarcity of water, the more violent is the affect of a famine. Due to drought, there are three types of famine First- Since there is shortage of rain, the crops are destroyed, and therefore the production of food grain is not sufficient which leads to a food grain famine.

Drought

Second:- Consequently due to a lack of rain, neither food grain or cattle-food is produced which once again leads to a food grain drought & cattle- food drought. **Third**- If there is scarcity of rainfall, food grain production, cattle-food and water, it will be an acute drought. The famine of Vikram Sawant 1956 (1900) is also called as the famine of 56, the worst famine to have ever occurred in India.

Drough Managment

(a) At government and Social level : Drough a eleated to low water gield. How the utilies of water can be disstributed depends the efforts of the societyfor this development of conservation rechique are to be etablished in the rural area & villages small are should be made acording to improve the planet condition Bhogirati like linking of river thas to be stuated. It has Duarl profit as it saves from flood to there are who are pure to glovels

(b) Personal level : For this it is necessarywe should understiond the importance of water people should take activitypartin saving of water people should make tanks in there house to save water. Use of that leeds & pectilizer in the field those used lesseal water provdie good gield. Through cummunication mode message should be spread for the sorry the water.

Marine Storm

Marine storm is also called cyclone in India.This cyclone variants in the tropical region, so they are called tropical cyclone. In India arise in the ocean area and inter India from the bay of Bangal and the Arabian sea. Tropical cyclone produced in the sea. So there is a lot of humidity in them. When entering the costral area, it does very rain. Their speed on the costral area is even faster. As the enter the inner parts their speed becomes relatively less in the quantity of rainfall. Due to excessive rainfall in their rapid pace, their is loss of public, money in costral areas.

Marine Storm : causes of origination

Under the intake of heat due to excessive heat over the oceans, the air rise up wards and their are for morefill. These atmospheric storms produce a cyclone or a storm of ocean storm. It will depend on how much the storing will penetrat in the inner parts of the country. It depends on how high the temperature in north western India is therefore how

A picture of Marine Storm

effective the center of low barrage is made cyclonic storms also occur in northern western India in the winter season. But this is the temperate tropicl cyclone. It enters west and north west direction in India. These include winter rain (MAUVTH) in northen western India. Which is very useful for Rabi crops.

Marine Storm : affected area

From the ocean storms to the western and eastern seaside they affect the interior areas they are facing sea storm of the Arabin sea are often born from April to June. Their paths are usually parallel to the cost from Gujrat cost, the inter India the cyclones arising in the bay of Bangal are born from October to December. This cyclone Andhra Pradesh Telangana affacts west Bangal.

Marine Storm : problem and crisis

At the time of the formation of the ocean storm they are reduced but the speed of air increaases in the size their size as the seamless. The speed of these chakrawat is about 15 kph. due to coming from the water area. They have very moistur. In the costral areas with strong winds. It rain at high speed rain is so heavy that the situation of the floods arises. Tremendous wind blows due to the speed of the wind the poles of communication instruments are damage in the crued houses collapse and the huts fall. Due to the strong wind sea waves enter the costral region. Their also a cause great destruction- boats goes back and life of the sailors falls in danger.

Marine Storm : management

1. At government and social level - Advance information must be developed in relation to marine storms in advance depending on the satellite images and the information recieved from it, their should be information about the quantity of wind speed system on the root of the storm. These information should be broadcasted to radio and other media. The citizen should be informed about the safe area so that they can get their, in this way casualties can be saved. To reduced to speed of the storm, intensive plantation campaigns should be started in costral areas. Fisherman should be advised.

2. At the personal level - Any arrangements made at the time of crisis can not be successsful without personal honestly and integrity. Individuals should reach the safe places on the basis of the information that is available about the storm, elderly, child and women reached the safe place. The government and the social institutions are being provided with the use of relif material.

Man made disaster

Fire - The fire is huma born disaster fire take the lives of mittroni of people annualy as a devasting castastrophe. In same movements life change into cashes. Natural disaster won't take so many life as fire takes. careless use of power tool & use of agraters etc. in rurl ara are responsible for fire. crackers are also responsible for fill both in rural and urban also.

Measures for safety

Elecricity foolsare mainly responsible for fire. inffeficinat errage carsed the fire. Also in kitchen if LPG are not properly used can cause fill in the house. More than the supply may also cause short circuitsin area it is also the main case of fill. Other cause of fill included Bonfite in unter gas cylinder, cracker, explosive use etc also may case fille.

Road Accident

Contruction of roads is the world for the better services as expansion of road neturs increased, the numberof raods accident also increased. In view of this the traffic rules were definmined but despite then efforts rash driving racking trafficrules, etc earsed huge road accident. Dut to there accident 125000 in india lost their left is road accident.

Safty Measure

To avoid accident follow the traffice rules. walk in lane. don not last your speed to be shap from procibed lemit. Run the vehicle with cautla in the night and rain. The children below the scheduled age dont Allowed driving.

Air Crash

Aeroplane has limit the geographical distance. All Tranvel facilities moves world small but Airoplane are fast than safety has to adovpted

that much. The few secreds neglegenc may take life of many thoursand. Peopl. aerephone is technical fault. At this time airports security, hijacked, terrorist attack have put human life at stake.

Safety measures

All force area aloway follow the healthy & feeding instrcution. Travelor should fighten the leat belt. As the emergency, emergency door an loot hope. ase of his pontiscan help to protect you. safety details are given at the staiting time of allowplan so it should be services listened & follwed.

Rail Accident

Rail ar become a very important of transpartation for people & good these day as it comes louyer distaster in butter fair and carries huge population at one time in the past decade Rail, also porn to Rail accident. It has been esimated that around 15000 road acident take thousand a life it is due to technical falt & carclesvers of the Railway staff. Also wrong shutting terrorist etc. all also lead road accident.

Safety measures

All cross railway crossing safely. Donot cross railways crossing from below. standan train gate. Always rules train when it.

Mass destruction weapons

There is dibalt in the first use of the man devesitng arnanents but in 1937 attack of japan an air and 1945 nuclear Attach in Japan it las been widely used. If take the paa of traditional war. After fieship with weapone it leads to dangerous wor. If doesnot destoring human race but who the whole curently into ashes. It takes time to stand it thing all again.

Nuclear accidents

Nuclear weapons explosives an the most destructive in human made modern weapons small nuclear weapon is more powerful that other large weapon and it deopy th city up to many kilometers was standing on the tracks. Don't make in have All and press emergancy of button during that time of emergancy.

Safety Measures;- At the time of attack one should retain one's patience and must not panic. At such moments people start feeling giddy, nausea and vomit. In a little while, their memory becomes weak. Radio activity causes blindness. In this situation we should immediately close all doors and windows to shut out radio-active waves. After an atomic explosion we should immediately cover food and drinking water to avoid it being contaminated by radio-active waves.

Chemical industrial accidents

A chemical accident is the unintertional relase of are on more kazaders susstanious which should have human health on the enviromanet. Chemical hazaeds all system whill chemical acidents could accues under certain cirunstaning. Such eventain eldue fins, exploseions, Leakoages or relases of foxic or hazardous material that can cause peoplaition injiry. desability or death.

While chemical accidents may occuse when ever toric mabeual are stored transparted or used. The more leve accidenty are industrial accident, envolving must sufificant chemical accident inrecorded history was 1984 Bhopal disaster in India in which mustthan 3000 people had dived after a highly force vapoun was realleased at union caibide pesticide factory.

Safety measures

In safety measure this type of chemical industry should be situated for porm residended Area. Effers to prevent accident range from improved safety system to fundamental change in the chemical use & maustecture recorded as primary orenation .

Biological Disaster

Biological disaster define the devastating effect cassed by an enomous spread of Querteen kind of king against mat may the yread a Desease wills a an epidenic. Diologic disaster can be also be simply iqudder growth in the population of cection kind of planth or animals eg lowest plague. It takes million of life of people due these disaster. Acording to the scientient 100 from anthsose can take life of 30 lake people.

Safety measures

As earrnas Biological disaster hit then give information to the goverment authouities. If Bioligical disaster can be formed therory mouth & none and through food also it can be transfered in

the body. use propely it can be tranfered in the body. Use propertly means of communication so that no remuis can be spread.

India weapans are of two type. First are aform ban and another all hydrogen bomb There are move destnicfive than their bombs.

Safety measures

Do not be afraid to be patient which attach. Through nucller attack cloud like Rightes are made people beign to feel live comit and slovely momory became wear. Alos people lottheir eyes. In such situation the window and door should be locked adirative don't enter an haid plra but fill maythier place in the house. Also food and water should be closed as radioactive way effect them fiest.

In dmain made disaster where railways. wad plance accidents are raining et also nuclear, Chemical industrial & Bilogical accidents are rising.

Important Point

1. Changes in nature are always there. The natural changes which affect the human society are called natural disaster, Disasters formed by human error are called human - born disasters.
2. Natural disasters are also called natural outbreak in India.
3. From those management decisions, those decisions are from responsibilities which can be helpful in reducing the disturbance of natural disasters. And successfully cop with the disasters.
4. The intensity of the earthquake is measured on the reactor scale.
5. Vibrantion of earth called earthquake.
6. Tsunami waves are prone to the imergence of an earthquake in the marine area when waves arise, they bring great fury in coastal areas.
7. Landslides come much more in the rainy season. The process of sliding down the slopes of clay and rocks is called landslide.
8. When the water of rain breaks the river embankment and spreads it into a very large area by sharing it is called flood.
9. Heavy (Musaladhar) rain is the main reason for the accumulation of depression and unplanned settlement flood in the river belt.
10. The river of kosi is called the mourning of the Bihar river, Damodar river of Bangal.
11. Development of forest for flood control should be strengthend and the embankments should be strengthened.
12. Due to drought rain fall or a uncertainty of rainfall is a main cause of drought.
13. When not enough food production and no fodder and not enough drinking water is available in the drought, it is called trikal.
14. Traditional water sources should be developed for drought and should be made in the each village and town to increase ground water level.
15. Tropical cyclones in India arise in the sea and enter the country on the behalf of the bay of Bangal and Arabian sea.
16. These coastal areas are affected more by sea storms when the ocean stroms is in high speed, in less time their is more destruction in the coastal areas.
17. Rail, road accidents are the major in the fire road air in the human born disaster. Mass destructive ordnance nuclear accidents are also human born disasters.

Objective type Questions :

1. India is not concerened with the natural disaster.
   (a) Earthquake (b) Flood
   (c) Landslide (d) Volcano
2. The area in which earthquakes occur most in India is that-
   (a) Pleateau of south (b) Himalayas
   (c) Middle India (d) Coastal india
3. In which of the following mountanous area in India there is high landslide.
   (a) Aravali (b) Himalayas
   (c) Satpura (d) Vindhyachal
4. Which river is said to be the bereaved of Bengal?
   (a) Kosi (b) Damodar
   (c) Ganga (d) Swarn Rekha
5. Which area of India is more prone to drought -
   (a) North side (b) North east region
   (c) western region (d) Coastal area

Very Short answer type questions

1. What is Natural disaster ?
2. What is earthquake ?

3. What do you mean by landslide ?
4. What is the flood ?
5. Which river is called bereavement of Bihar ?
6. What is the main reason for drought ?

Short answer type questions

1. What do you mean by Management ?
2. In which area of India there are more earthquakes and why ?
3. Which is the flood affected area in India ?
4. Explain 'TRICAL' .
5. In 1984 in which city of india a major gas leak was caused by chemical gas leakage.
6. Thing that happened in the country was death from anthrex ?

Eassy type questions

1. How to face earthquake a natural disaster ?
2. Categorize the major factors of landslide .
3. Discuss the reasons for flooding in India.
4. What kind of management should be done to counter the famine ?
5. Highlight the problem of flood affected arises and it solution.
6. Describe human born disasters.

Numerical maping

1. Show earthquake affected areas in map of India.
2. Blocks landslide in map of India.
3. Show flood affected areas on map of India.
4. Mark the areas drought in the map of India.

Answer of objective questions

1. (d) 2. (b) 3. (b)
4. (b) 5. (c)

Chapter-21

National Security and Heroic Tradition

For any nation-state national security occupies the topmost place in the list of national interests. For a layman national security is synonymous with national interest, the meaning of which he understands is, to keep national unity and integrity by protecting geographical boundaries of the country. But why this military and territorial security is considered so important and remains often overlooked.

In any territorial part a sovereign control is essential. Efforts to safeguard its economic, social and cultural interests through its military security is considered as of national interest. National values which are associated with its very existence is an essential part of the national identity.

Army or military is an organization with armed capacity to ensure and protect the aspirations and interests of the people, nation and its administrative system.

Indian Army:- The responsibility to protect the country from outside attacks and foreign invasions rests with the army. The Indian army is always ready for solutions to the problems arising from uncertainty, instability and turmoils. Keep the national security intact amid the challenges, strategic position and global security events has been a priority of the Indian army .

There are three organs of the Indian Army- (1) Army (2). Air force (3). Navy. The Indian army works under the defense ministry of the central government. Three armies have their chiefs who control them administratively.

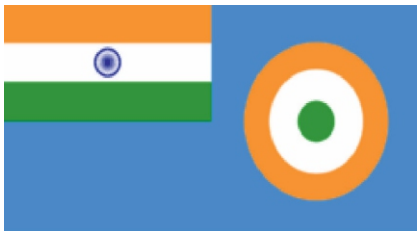
Besides, in war time the Indian army has contributes significantly in establishing peace and order in many countries of the world as peace army. The army has always contributed in assisting the citizens and the administration during natural calamities like earthquake, flood, storm and riots.

Recently after the pulnama terrorist attack on security forces, the Indian air force taking prompt action, crossing and advancing through border into Pakistan, attacked on terrorist camps in Balakot area by 12 miraj 2000 fighter planes on 26 Feb., 2019. The very next day a fighter plane F-16 of Pakistani air force, violating air Indian border, attempted to attack. Suspecting the attack, the Indian Air force commanded valiant pilot wing commander abhinandan, who was flying Mig 21 at that time, to take action. Wing commander Abhinandan by his sterling understanding and undaunted courage and to the best of his capacity acted and shot down the airo plane in the air. Due to frontal attack his own Mig plane suffered damage and he had to save his life by jumping down through parachute. By mistake wing commander Abhinandan landed on Pak occupied Kashmir territory where Pakistani army captured him. Due to Geneva commitment 1949 and international pressure he was released. He pursued his early education in Jodhpur. At that time his father was working at high post in Indian Air force.

Indian Army - With a view to safeguard India's unity and integrity, the constituted army protects, The Indian territorial border. This army is basically an infantry marching on land. 15th January is celebrated as Army day. The first commander in-chief in Indian army Mr. K.M. Kariappa and the hero Sem Manekshaw of 1971 Indo-Pak war were honoured with the title of field marshal.

Indian army is equipped with atomic and sophisticated weapons. Unfailing boforce of India in Kargil war and 155 mm indigenous 'Dhanush' Gun are always on the front for firing cannons in the enemies. Arjun and T-90 (Bhisma Tank) are capable in attacking at long range distance in enemy`s territory. Besides, it Agni, parthvi and Brahmos are highly sophisticated missiles with the Indian. Army which can attack the enemy anywhere on land.

Indian Air Force- It came in existence on 8 October, 1932. The chief responsibility of the Air Force is to protect Indian aerial border. Besides such protection it also performs the tasks such as providing



relief material, conducting search and save campaigns, and removing people from calamity affected areas with other branches of armed forces. During past years 'Garud' the special group of Indian army has been used as an anti terrorist squad.

In 2016 Mohana Singh, Avni Chaturvedi and Bhawna Kant joined as fighter plane pilots in the Indian Air force for the first time. Father of mohana - a resident of Jhunjhunu district has also served in Indian Air force and grandfather Ladu Ram Jat was also honoured by Veer Chakra.

The Indian Air force performed its work effectively from Goa liberation and Indo Pak war from 1965-1977 and in both the wars India was victorious. In Kargil war also, the Air force bombarded in impassable area of Jammu Kashmir and succeeded in pushing the enemy back.

In Kargil war two Mig 29 fighter planes of the Indian Air force flew into the sky to push back the Pakistani army. Squadron leader Ajay Ahuja of Kota district of Rajasthan got into Pakistani border to search for one of his separated companion. He had to jump down with the help of parachute after being

shot by Pakistani Army. Govt. of India honoured him with veer chakra for his gallantry.

Indian Air force is well equipped with Sukhoi-30, Jaguar, Miraj-2000, Mig-20 as ultramodern fighter planes and I.L-76, Herculus. A.N.- 32 as heavy cargo planes. Besides them air force possesses M.I-35, Cheeta, Chetak, Sarang named helicopters. Recently a light and high capacity fighter plane 'Tejas' manufactured by H.A.L (Hindustan Aero nautical limited) purely through indigenous technique, has been included in Indian Air force. Avox radar has been fixed on heavy planes to keep a watch on enemy. Indian air force has also established missiles like Akash and Prithvi with high striking capacity in various camps. India is an atomic rich country, but we have pledged never to initiate nuclear attack. Indian air force continues to be first choice of youth owing to its excellent life style.

Air Marshal Arjun singh leading Indian Air force in Indo-Pak war of 1965 has been awarded the rank of Marshal of the Air force.

Indian Navy-

Navy provides safety from dangers occurring in India's maritime border. Its main objective is to safeguard India's integrity, citizens and coastal estates from the dangers arising at sea. It also safeguards commerce connected with sea and sea business. After the terrorist attack in Mumbai on 26 November 2008, the total responsibility of coastal safety has been entrusted to Indian Navy which fulfils it through coordination with coastal defenders and the sea police of the state. In addition to this Indian navy also performs exceptionally well during natural calamities by providing humanitarian assistance, relief, conducting search and save drives, diving help and water survey.

Indian Navy played important role in the liberation of Goa from purtgalies in 1961. On 4 December 1971 during Indo Pak war, Indian Navy surrounded Pakistan on both sides, destroyed port of Karachi and played important role in establishing East Pakistan as Bangladesh. As a token of this victory 4th December is celebrated as navy day every year. Besides it, in an United Nations Organization attempt to establish peace, Indian army also contributes through various campaigns of peace.Indian Navy has Huge armed ships such as I.N.S. Vikrant, Virat and Vikramaditya. Submarines run by nuclear energy such as I.N.S. Chakra and Arihant are capable of taking counter action promptly to any attack by enemy.

Activity-

1. Find out the names of the present Chiefs of three armies of India.

2. Acquire knowledge of main weapons, fighter planes, tanks, missiles etc. used by Indian Army and collect their diagrams

Regional Army-

The regional army has been constituted under regional army (T.A) ordinance 1948,to avail short term services from military trained Indian citizens at the time of need. Every year through consistent practice such trained youth are made competent soldiers. Thus this army provides youth an opportunity to serve their country. At the time of need this army works with regular army. Regional Army Day is celebrated on 9th October. Star cricket players like Kapil Dev and Mahendra Singh Dhoni provide their services in Indian Regional Army on the posts of Lieutenant colonel.

National Cadet Core-

Besides Indian Army and Paramilitary force, National Cadet Core (NCC) also make efforts to provide opportunity for the development of character, leadership and selfless service and similar other qualities to help them become responsible citizens of the country.

Ideal Sentence "Unity and Discipline" -

This is open for the students of schools and colleges on voluntary basis. National Cadet Core is involved in shaping the youth of the patriotic citizens of the country for army and navy.

NCC is the main training organization to strengthen the youth of the country. This came into being under National Cadet Core Ordinance, 1948. The main objective of this organization is to make the youth aware of soldierly life style and to inculcate discipline, personality development and orderly values. Cadets of this organization also work for social service and community development.

Main Wars after Independence -

Indo-Pak War 1947-48 - Soon after independence in 1947 the Hindu ruler Maharaja Hari Singh of Muslim dominated Kashmir dreamt of Kashmir to be an independent state. At the time of partition riots also broke out in other parts of the country. To take advantage of it, Kabilai army of Pakistan attacked Kashmir. Due to this infiltration Maharaja sought help from India but India offered, Kashmir merger in India in lieu of help. After this proposal being signed by Maharaja, India pushed Pakistani army back. Soon the matter reached in United States Organization. The war ended on January 01, 1949. As the Indian Army had to retreat, some part of Kashmir fell in possession of Pakistan which is now called as Pak occupied Kashmir (POK). Presently this area is a bone of contention between two countries.

Indo-China War 1962 -

The main cause of Indo-China war was the disputed border in the Himalayan region. After the rebellious move in 1959, the asylum being sought to Tibetan religious Guru Dalai Lama in India contributed as another cause to the war. China opposed this incident and blamed India for running Anti-China activities in Tibetan region. The war began on 20th October 1962 with an attack by China army in Laddakh area. In this war 1383 Indian soldiers sacrificed their lives and 1700 soldiers were buried and never found in the snowy region. In this war Major Shaitan Singh, Major Dhan Singh Thapa, Subedar Jogendra Singh were awarded Param Veer Chakra for their bravery.

Indo-Pak War 1965 -

There were many causes of this war, out of which river water distribution and border dispute were the main. During the Operation Gibralter, Pakistani Army planned to rebel against India. Later in 1965, Pakistan initiated war by attacking in the Kutchh region of India. Indian army retaliated to this attack. The war lasted for 17 days and Pakistan

suffered a befitting defeat, ceasefire was declared after persuasion by Russia and America.

In 1971 war Colonel Adreshir Tarapor and Hawaldar Abdul Hamid were with awarded with Paramveer Chakra for their unprecedented courage and sacrifice.

Indo-Pak War 1971 - In 1971 Indo-Pak relations reached the point of termination. During this period in East Pakistan Civil War, the situation aggravated and further worsened as the military government of Pakistan did not pay proper attention. At the same time Pakistan army attacked the Indian airports in Kashmir. In retaliation India attacked both parts of Pakistan. India took possession of East Pakistan on 16th December 1971 and it emerged as a newly independent country (Bangladesh). The war lasted for 13 days.

In 1971, Jaisalmer region of Rajasthan on Longewala border post, Major Kuldeep Singh led army with only 120 Indian soldiers fought fiercely all night against 2000 soldiers and 45 military tanks. Major Kuldeep Singh was honoured with Mahaveer Chakra for his outstanding gallantry and leadership. To commemorate this war famous producer director J.P. Dutta made 'Border' film.

Kargil War 1999-

In 1999, taking another advantage of cold weather (winter season) in India, the Pakistani army and terrorists infiltrated into Kargil district and neighboring areas of Line of Control and took possession of its main peaks. Tiger Hill, the highest peak, of this area was the nodal point of this war.

Gauging the situation, Indian army with the help of Indian Air force launched 'Operation Victory' campaign and got victory by defeating the enemy fiercely. This war campaign lasted for 60 days in which many Indian heroic soldiers also lost their lives. On 26th July 1999, Indian army successfully triumphed and since then this day is celebrated as Victory Day. Grenadier Jogendra Singh Yadav, rifleman Sanjay Kumar, Lt. Manoj Pandey, Captain Vikram Batra were honoured with Param Veer Chakra for their sterling courage and bravery shown in Kargil war.

Mr. Digendra Kumar of Rajputana rifles, a resident of Sikar district of Rajasthan, displayed indomitable bravery in this war and despite being shot by five bullets, he shot down 48 Pakistani soldiers. He unfurled the tricolor of India, after beheading Major Anwar of Pakistani Army, later he was awarded with the Mahavir Chakra.

Ideals Set by Indian Army- The heroic epic stories of chivalry, courage, bravery and sacrifices of Indian soldiers have been echoing since ages. In Rajasthan the martyrs are worshipped as local Gods. The stories of indomitable courage and sacrifice of Indian soldiers have been an ideal for present youth. At the time of war like situations, it is delightful to notice the enthusiasm of youth to assist the army. A soldier deserves a just behavior in ordinary situations too.

Indian armies are known for good conduct and soldierly spirit. Soldiers help and safeguard the natives by contributing their services in inaccessible areas and in adverse circumstances. Their zeal and emotional attachment towards their country are symbolic of their strength. Self confidence of the soldiers of the Indian army is boosted to the brim. The army showcases high ideals of dutifulness and honesty towards its country. Discipline is a key to their success. Life style of the army attracts youth.

The motto of 'Service Before Self' decides their priority. The qualities like patience, courage and fearlessness in adverse situations, distincts them from the masses. Their love for country and selfless service creates respect in our hearts for them.

Soldiers rise and work beyond constraints religion, caste etc. Army teaches us to face all problems courageously. Our soldiers have earned laurels at every field successfully. Soldiers are justifying their role in the fields of education, games, sports, politics, defense, space and technology. The first space man of India Squadron Leader Rakesh Sharma,was an officer in Indian Air Force. With special reference to Rajasthan in games Lt. Colonel Rajyavardhan Singh (Olympic Medal Winner), Major Dr. Surendra Punia (Name recorded in Limca book of world record for highest medals in world medical games) and also Subedar Bajrang Takhar, Subedar Om prakash, Major Ankita Choudhary etc. have earned success in their respective fields. In the field of education, Dr. Surendra Bhaskar and Dasrath Singh have recorded their names in the Indian Book of Records.

Duties of Citizens for the Security of Country-

Both army and common citizens are responsible for the security of a country. Protection of our country is our topmost duty. We should be ready to safeguard our country, with willingness of body, mind and wealth. To fulfill ones duties, we should do the following -

1. All citizens should be respectful towards Army and Para military forces.

2. Youth should be inspired to join Army and Para military force.

3. Confidential documents or information should not be disclosed to foreigners

4. Police should be informed about any suspicious activity like spying etc.

4. At the time of war, morale of the army should be upheld by providing food, medicines and other essential things.

5. At the time of black out, accidents, fire etc, one should cooperate with administration towards making citizen security arrangements and providing first aid.

6. We should assist the army and the administration and follow their instructions.

7. Priority should be given to let first movement of army means.

Awards and Honours for Bravery -

In Indian army bravery award is given to those soldiers who have offered notable services with extraordinary bravery.

(1) Param Veer Chakra- This is the highest military honour which is provided for exemplary courage and sacrifice in combating against enemies. This award was started on 26th January 1950. Uptil now, 21 Param Veer Chakra have been awarded and most of them were posthumously. Flying officer Nirmal Jeet Singh Sekho is the only recipient of Param Veer Chakra from the Indian Air Force, rest all are from the Indian army.

Major Somnath Sharma

This honour is considered to be the most prestigious award after Bharat Ratna. Major Somnath Sharma was the first recipient of this honour posthumously for his extraordinary bravery against Pakistani army in Kashmir after independence.

(2) Mahaveer Chakra- In order of precedence, Mahaveer Chakra come after Param Veer Chakra, which is given to the soldiers for their outstanding bravery and courage.

(3) Veer Chakra- In order of precedence, **Veer Chakra** comes after Mahaveer Chakra. This is also awarded for bravery and extraordinary gallantry and sacrifice.

Besides war, at the time of peace, Indian army is awarded with the following medals for bravery and courageousness (1) Ashok Chakra (2) Kirti Chakra (3) Shourya Chakra

Contribution of Valiants **of Rajasthan in Heroic Tradition of Nation -** The land of Rajasthan is always known for selflessness and sacrifice. Many soldiers of Rajasthan have lost their lives for their nation. Inspired by the heroic tales of these brave soldiers, new soldiers are born on this land. After independence in 1947-48, Havaldar Major Piru Singh of Shekhawati region, of company battalion of Rajputana rifles was the first to fight against the Pakistani army with bravery and sacrificed his life.

Major Piru Singh

Major Saitan Singh

He was awarded with Param Veer Chakra posthumously, for his extra ordinary bravery and sacrifice. During China war in 1962, Major Shaitan Singh of Kumaun, a Jodhpur resident also sacrificed his life defending his mother land with exemplary bravery. He was awarded with Param Veer Chakra posthumously, by Government of India.

Rajasthan- Awards and Honours for Bravery-

Param Veer Chakra-

1. CHM Piru Singh Shekhawat (JhunJhunu)
2. Major Shaitan Singh Bhati

Mahaveer Chakra-

1. Brigadier Bhawani Singh of Jaipur
2. Lieutenant Colonel Kishan Singh, Ghadsisar, Bikaner
3. Naik Digendra Kumar
4. Lieutenant General Hanut Singh

Ashok Chakra-

1. Captain Mahendra Singh Tanwar, Rajasthan Rifle (Sikar)
2. Defender Sultan Singh Rathore, Mumdola- Didwana
3. Second Lieutenant Punit Nath Dutt, Jaipur

Kirti Chakra-

1. Captain karni Singh Rathore (later Colonel) Lakhau, Churu
2. Hawaldar Amar Singh Rathore, Ram Das, Jodhpur
3. Cononel Sourabh Singh Shekhawat (21 Para commando, Special force)

Shourya Chakra-

1. Cononel Sourabh Singh Shekhawat (21 Para commando, Special force) village- Dhani Daulat Singh, Alwar

Veer Chakra-

1. Squadron Leader Ajay Ahuja

2. Naiab Subedar Ram Pal Singh, Kotputli, Jaipur

Sena Medal-

1. Cononel Sourabh Singh Shekhawat (21 Para commando, Special force)

2. Major Bhanu Pratap Singh (8 Rajputana Rifles/43 national Rifles)

Special Service Medal-

1. Brigadier Govind Singh Rathore VSM

2. Major Surendra Punia (Rajpura, Sikar) Special force, body guard of president AMC, World Medical Games.

3. Cononel Sourabh Singh Shekhawat (21 Para commando, Special force)

Glossary-

Terrorism- Violent activities carried out for various selfish interests by anti-national elements.

Peace Army- The army of member countries constituted by UNO to restore order and stop war between two countries.

Black Out- Keeping public places and houses in dark (lights off) during war.

Practice Questions

1. Choose appropriate alternative-

(i) The supreme commander-in-chief of all three armies is-

(a) The Prime Minister of the country

(b) The Chief of the army

(c) The President of the country

(d) The Chief of the navy

(ii) When is army day celebrated -

(a) 1 April (b) 15 January

(c) 4 December (d) 26 January

(iii) Students can join .....for military education with-

(a) Regional army (b) Paramilitary force

(c) Special protection force (d) NCC

2. Complete the blank spaces-

(i) Indian army works under ..... of central government.

(ii) In India the highest bravery medal is ..... in army awards.

(iii) Kargil war between India and Pakistan took place in the year ..... .

3. What are the three organs of the Indian army?

4. What are the awards and honours for bravery in Indian army?

5. Write at least five duties of citizens for ensuring security of the country.

6. Briefly Introduce Indian air force and describe its functions.

7. Describe post independence wars of India with other countries.

Answer of objective questions

1. ( ) 2. ( ) 3. ( )

Chapter-22

Road Safety Education

1. Geography

Chapter - Drainage

Objective :

To acquire map reading and navigational skills.

Content :

In major capital cities like Delhi, Chennai or the financial capital Mumbai, traffic comes to a stand-still during monsoon season with waterlogging leading in massive jams and accidents, loss of valuable working hours, fue and cases of inadvert-ent electrocution etc. All these unwanted incidents take away the enjoyment factor of the season from commuters and turn it to a factor of stress, impatience and road rage. We as a responsible ditizen of India should come out with some effective solution rather than criticizing the system only.

On both sides of each and every road, following the normal slope of the land, shallow, narrow/ wide drains (depending upon the intensity of monsoon in the area) should be constructed between footpath and the main road. The depth of the drains should be such that it does not become life threatening for kids. Construction of such drains should be made mandatory along with roads of each and every size ranging from highways, ringroads to all types of arterial roads.

At the termination point of each and every road there should be a properly covered collection pit to actually make RAINWATER HARVESTING a sucess. Utilizing such collected water can solve water crisis in community work like watering greenery of that particular residential area, cummunity construction projects etc.

The incidences of road rage due to long wait factor across traffic signals because of their malfunction-ing can be reduced by introducing the system of playing soothing season specific positive emotional songs at such points automatically whenever signals start malfuncting.

Assignment :

Draw a map showing the route from your home to school. Identify specific problem area on that stretch during monsoon season and provide suggestions to improve the condition.

Activity :

Identify any three problem cases of yours city / town

/ village roads during monsoon season and come up with effective solutions in the form of class discussion or a write up.

2. Economics

Chapter - Poverty

Objective :

To become aware of the means availble to the society to reduce accidents or un wanted crime on roads.

Content :

Poverty leads to illiteracy, thereby leading to lack of awarences about road safety rules and regulations, exposing children and adults to accidents.

Poverty leads to lack of development of human resources and unemployment (where unemployment is both cause as well as consequence of poverty).

This compels a section of the poor, especially in urban areas, to send their young children for begging at the traffic signals at a very tender age ! This exposes them to the toxic fumes released by the vehicles all throughtout the day at traffic signals,

deteriorating their already frail health status. Moreover, it also exposes them to fatal accidents, verbal and sometimes physical abuses - thereby severly affecting their physical and mental health.

A government study, released in October 2012, has indicated that the biggest factor driving children to crime was poverty. The study - titles 'Children in India-2012' stated that around 57% of the 33,887 children involved in crime last year belonged to families with an annual income lower than Rs. 25,000. The data shows that a majority of the children bad committed the crime for money.

Poverty and related unemployment problems also leads to more incidences of criminal activities on the

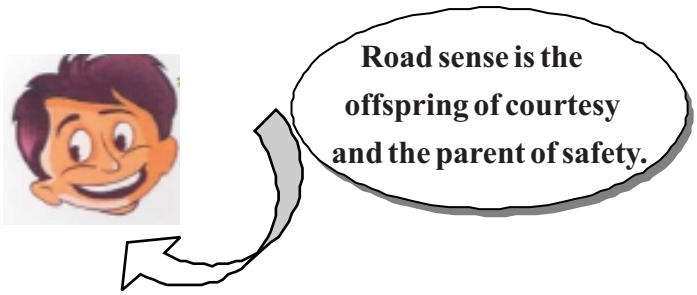
roads like chain / purse snatching, eve teasing, rapes etc. The same group can be effectively employed by the government, on contract basis, as a helper team of our inadequate police force in towns and cities to prevent such crimes.

Assignment :

Collect newspaper cutting or write down any five / ten accidents or crime, reported on road and provide case specific suggestions on how such incidents could have been averted.

Activity :

List out the local resources available or can be generated, in your locality to curb such crimes.



3. Civics

Chapter - Democratic Rights

Objective :

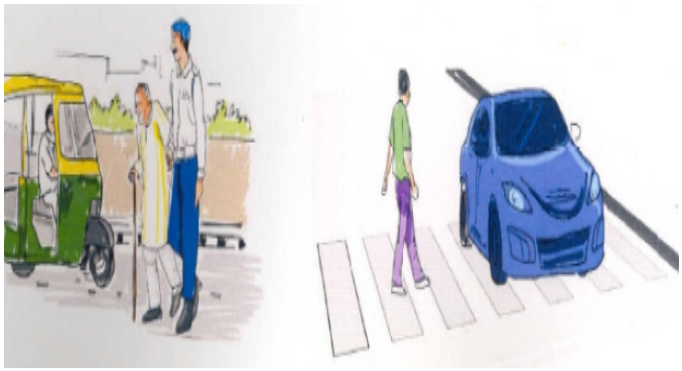
1. To make students realize the significance of other's Rights and their Duties as a responsible citizen.

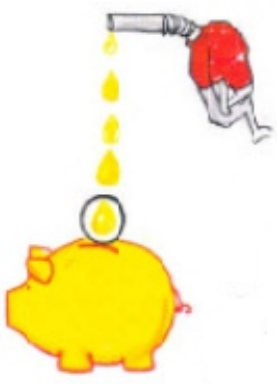
2. To help them imbibe traffic sense.

Content :

When we talk to Democratic Rights, we need to understand that Rights and Duties go hand in hand. One's Right is definitely another's Duty for instance, when we avail our Rights to drive on road, we must have a concern for pedestrians as well. We must have the countesy and civic sense to give way to others within traffic norms. We must also have a concern for needs of elderly, handicapped and very young on the road.

We must not be driven by arrogance and use the vehicle as a status symbol. We should not encourage irresponsible attitudes of driving, especially with high performance vehicles. Rather, we should behave as a responsible citizens. Concern for safety should be our almost priority. We must have social consideration of the system of carpooling.





SAVE

FUEL

SAVE

EARTH !!

Activity :

1. Set up a council of students, to educate the schoolmates about safety measures to be taken, while travelling through school bus / van, back home.
2. Find out the price of petrol in your city and discuss in groups about the ways to reduce the fuel expenditure, as well as, availability of this precious natural resource.
3. Concern for safety should be our ulmost proverity. Justify the statement with reference to the picture below.

Exercise :

1. Do you give way to your school mates and teachers, while moving in thecorridor ?
2. What do you understand by car pooling ?
3. What is the sub-way ?
4. How is the price of petrol determines ? Name the particular international economic factor.

We are unable to identity safe places to cross the road.

But we often think we can do it all by ourwishes.

our size makes it difficult for drive to see us.

We tend to act inconsistently in the traffic.

We land to focus on only one aspect of what is happening.

We are unable to judge speed and distance accuratley.

We are unable to accurately the origions of sound.

We are unable to cop with cotten change in traffic conditions.

We are unable to understand abstract ideas such as traffic safety.

We are easily distraced.

Chapter-23

Legal Awareness

Educate, awake and know your rights

Child is the future of our country. He is the future of the country. It is said that what child of today, will be the future of the country tomorrow. Therefore it is necessary that there should be all round development of child from physical, mental and intellectual point of veiw. It is becasue of this, that the constitution of india has given many important rights to the children and has given protection to the benefits of the children.

To make you familar with your rights and to get the legal help, many programmes are performed in the whole state and their monitering is also done by the legal service authority Act 1987 the basic system of this Act is as follows -

At National level - National legal service authority New Delhi.

At State Level - State legal service authority.

At District Level - District legal service authority.

At Block Level - Block legal service authority.

Important rights of children

Right to live -

In our Constitution in Article 21 every individual including children are given the right to live. Not only this they are given the right to live respectfully and with prestige. The child cannot be deprived of this right. It is the duty of the state to provide the neccessary requirements of life.

Free and compulsary education -

Each and every child from 6-14 yrs of age has the right of free and compulsory education. The state Govt has ensured to give free primary education according to the Act of 2009. It is the duty of parents also to get the admission of there children in school.

Right against exploitation -

Acc. to Article 23 to 24 it is said that there will be neither the exploitation of child nor he will be put on 'Force labour'. He cannot be molaced or harrased for immoral business. They cannot be made slave or forced for hard labour also.

Safety of life in factories -

Acc. to industrial the children less than 14yrs of age cannot be employed in factories, industries and other risky works. It clearly means that children should be put on hard work so that their physical, mental, moral and intellectual development takes place.

Right of livehood -

Every child has the right to get minimum requirements of life from their parents. Acc. to Act of 1973 in Article 125 it is said that it is the duty of parents to provide the means of livelihood for their legal or illegal children who are under age or cannot earn their livelihood. It is also mentioned that if the child is mentally retarded or handicapped such child whether legal or illegal should be looked after by their parent in the same way. The unmarried girl also comes in this category where parents have to bear this responsibility.

Right against child marriage-

The law of 2006 puts the ban on the activity of child marriage. All those children (boy) less than 21 yrs and girls less than18 years cannot be married. This law is made so that all round development of children be made.

Right of child (adolescence) justice many times it happens that child commits a crime but still he is not known as criminal. A special law is made for the children to look after and protect the children in Act of 2000. Acc. to this act instead of criminal the child is known as Jevinile child or Anti social child. Generally such children are not given the punishment instead they are sent to reformatories. They are neither put in chain nor in jail. These children are under the age of 18 they are the children of adolescent age.

Girl infanticide -

Girl infanticide is the social evil and to stop this the Act of 1994 is passed which prevents the sex determination of child before pregnancy and before delivery According to which sex determineration or examination is prohibited. Acc. to this act this crime is non -baleable, undignified and punishment from 3 to 5 can be given and penalty can be levelled from 10,000/- Rs. to 50,000 Rs.. Both the parties are said to be guilty. Due to the fall in the birth rate of a girl many social evils are taking place. It is the duty of every citizen to stop this activity.

Right to safeguard from Ragging -

Now a days there is a great trend of ragging in schools and colleges. By ragging we mean that some old students give physical and mental torture to new students. Many times it is seen that the old students ask the new students to kneel down and they are misbehaved. The ban has been put on such activities by supreme court and the state govt. and provision of punishment is also made.

Protection of children from sex crime through Act of 2017 (POCSO)

To stop the increased sex crime state govt has made strong and effective laws. It is applied on all those children who are sexually harrased and are below 18yrs the different activities given below are included in sex crime and are liable of punishment.

Any person who doubts the happening of a crime can inform the police. There is a provision of punishment from 6 month to one year and penalty.

Different Programmes of law service authority.

1. Free leagl help
2. Compromise
3. Lok Adalat
4. Victim retribution scheme, 2011
5. Para legal volunteer scheme
6. Legal service clinic
7. Rural legal service and help centres
8. website - www.rlsa.gov.in

   Email - rslsajp@gmail.com

   Helpline - 0141-2385877

   0141-2227481

   0141-2227602